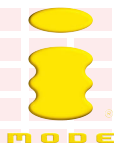


Manual for FOMA® D902i '05.10



- Quick Search/
Contents/Cautions
- Before Using D902i
- Making/
Receiving Calls
- Making/Receiving
Video-phone Calls
- PushTalk
- Phonebook
- Sounds/Displays/Lights
Settings
- Safety settings
- Camera
- i-mode/i-motion
- Mail
- i-appli
- i-channel
- Mobile Wallet/ToruCa
- Displaying/Editing/
Managing Data
- Other Convenient Functions
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Character Entry
- Appendix/Data Interchange/
Troubleshooting
- INDEX/
Quick Reference Manual



DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D902i.

Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D902i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D902i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving. When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others. Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise. Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.

DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betruusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.

The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.

The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using a FOMA terminal for the first time

When you use a FOMA terminal for the first time, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Install the battery pack and charge it. ◀P39
2. Turn the power on and make initial settings, and then confirm your phone number. ◀P44, P47
3. Understand the functions of keys on the terminal. ◀P26
4. Understand the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ◀P28
5. Understand how to use the menus. ◀P30
6. Understand how to make and receive calls. ◀P50, P60

In the manual for FOMA D902i, the FOMA D902i is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".

This manual explains functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is required separately.

miniSD memory card ◀P339

Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.

The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Refer to INDEX P488

Search for a function name or service name.

Use Quick Search P4

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

Use Front Cover Indexes Front Cover

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

[For details, see the next page.](#)

Use Contents P6

Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features P8

Search for the features using typical or new functions of D902i.

Use Menu List P446

Search using the menu of D902i.









Use Quick Reference Manual P492

This manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.




Explanatory note on procedures and keys



The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations. When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.

In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:



Description	Meaning
    Enter the terminal security code	Press   on the stand-by display and then press  . Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press  .



If there is especially no notice, the operation procedures from the stand-by display are mentioned.

In this manual, to place the cursor at an item with  (Easy Selector Plus) is referred to as "highlight". In addition, to select an item by placing the cursor with  (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing  (Enter key) is referred to as "select".

The step of pressing  which requires after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description. The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into the entry field). P436

In this manual, the keys are simplified.

Actual key	Description in this manual
	

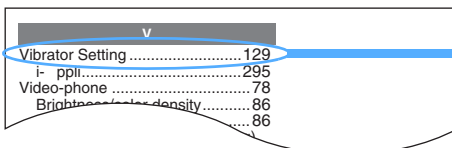
- The typestyle of key characters is different depending on the color of the terminal. (Example: , )

How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “Vibrator Setting” is described.

Searching on INDEX

Use INDEX if you have already known a function or service name.



Using Quick Search

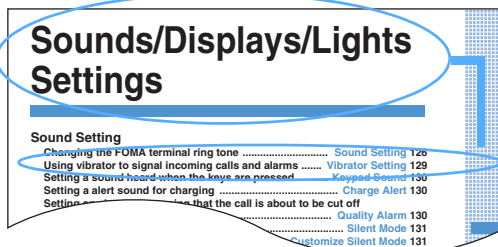
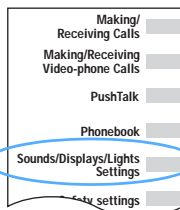
You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.

How to change melodies or lighting patterns

- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypads..... 130 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use your favorite ring tones..... 126 [Sound Setting](#)
- Adjust the volume of ring tones 66 [Ring Volume Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 131 [Silent Mode](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls 129 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Customize the call indicator's color and pattern 145 [Alert Lighting Setting](#)
- Customize the ring tone for each caller..... 107 [Phonebook New Entry](#)

Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.



Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms Vibrator Setting

The reception of call, PushTalk call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the schedule alarm notice is indicated by vibration.

- The settings in this function are reflected to the setting for the vibrator in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming PushTalk Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.
- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default: all OFF

1

2 Select an item

- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to *Same*: *Msg setting*, *ChatMail* cannot be set.
- As for the setting of alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in *Phone setting*.

about 0.7 second vibration about 0.7 (repeated)

Preventing making/receiving calls Menu 894
Self Mode

Disable all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls/PushTalk calls, Infrared data communication and infrared remote control are

When a calendar is set

The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, Saturdays are displayed in blue. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or the setting for holidays for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display. When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on. Each press of on the stand-by display switches between displaying and not displaying the calendar.

The day is displayed in yellow.

INFORMATION

An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when pressing after the playback is stopped or paused.

129

- Title & Function name: Function names are listed on INDEX.
- Functional overview and notes for operation
- Default setting
- Operation procedure
- Supplement to the operation
- Shortcut operation
- Column: Useful information
- INFORMATION: Details of functions

Index

INFORMATION

The page shown above is an example. It may be different from the actual page. The displays or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.

In this manual, "Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli supporting the IC card function" is described as "Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli".

The design of the screen which appears on the display have been initialized according to the color of FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in FOMA terminal (Style Theme).

In this manual, it is explaining mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *LusterWhite*.

Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or buttons may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to look for the frequently-used or convenient functions directly.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 46 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Talk facing the phone screen 79 [Speakerphone function](#)
- Adjust the volume of caller's voice 66 [Volume Setting](#)
- Put the current call on hold..... 51 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to video-phone call during voice call 53 [Switch to video-phone](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Record caller's messages 73 [Answer Machine](#)
- Use Voice Mail Service..... 392 [Voice Mail](#)
- Put the incoming call on hold..... 69 [Response and Hold](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypads..... 130 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use your favorite ring tones..... 126 [Sound Setting](#)
- Adjust the volume of ring tones 66 [Ring Volume Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 131 [Silent Mode](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls 129 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Customize the call indicator's color and pattern 145 [Alert Lighting Setting](#)
- Use a personal ring tone for each caller..... 107 [Phonebook New Entry](#)

How to change the screen display



- Customize the stand-by display (wallpaper)..... 132 [Stand-by Display Setting](#)
- Show a calendar on the stand-by display 136 [Stand-by calendar](#)
- Adjust the date and time..... 45 [Date and Time Setting](#)
- Change the size of characters..... 146 [Font Size](#)
- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen 28 [Reading display](#)



Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 235 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail..... 241 [Attachment](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically..... 269 [Sort Criteria](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot..... 180 [Image size](#)
- Change the shutter sound 180 [Shutter sound](#)
- Turn the compact light on when shooting..... 173 [Compact light](#)
- Save data into the miniSD memory card..... 180 [Save to](#)
- Display the shot images 320 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 123 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 163 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook 165 [Reject non-Reg. Caller](#)
- Lock your phone when you don't carry it..... 155 [Remote Lock](#)
- Disable the key operation 160 [Key Lock](#)

Other useful functions



- Call up function menus simply..... 32 [Shortcut operations](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator 384 [Calculator](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode..... 189 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication..... 351 [Infrared communication](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock 369 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use the miniSD memory card..... 339 [miniSD memory card](#)
- Update software 478 [Software Update](#)
- Update the security..... 483 [Virus Scan Function](#)

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal Inside front cover
 Using a FOMA terminal for the first time..... Inside front cover
 How to use and refer to this manual 1
 Quick Search..... 4
 Features of FOMA D902i 8
 Making full use of D902i 10
 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions) 12
 Handling instructions 19
 About intellectual property rights 21
 Basic package and optional accessories 23

Before Using D902i

25

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Menu selection
 Using the UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing the battery pack
 Charging Battery Level Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting
 Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls

49

Making calls Redial 186/184 Call WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
 Open Answer Close Setting Received Calls Volume Setting Ring Volume Setting
 Response and Hold Public mode (Driving mode/power off) Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

77

Making video-phone calls Receiving video-phone calls Using Chara-den
 Setting images to send Customizing video-phone call display Videophone Settings etc.

PushTalk

93

PushTalk Making PushTalk calls Receiving PushTalk calls
 PushTalk Phonebook etc.

Phonebook

105

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
 Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

125

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Stand-by Display Setting
 Mail/Call Image Setting Alert Lighting Setting Clock Display Format
 Style Theme etc.

Safety settings

149

Security Code Change Terminal Security Code PIN code All Lock Remote Lock
 Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting
 Key Lock Secret Mode etc.

Camera

167

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion

193

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
 Bookmark Screen Memo Save Image i-melody Downloading PDF data i-mode Setting
 Message R/F Certificate i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting etc.

Mail**227**

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Saving i-mode Mail
Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message Display/Save Image i-motion Mail
Play/Save Melody Mail Setting Chat Mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i- ppli**289**

Downloading Starting i- ppli i- ppli To i- ppli Stand-by Display etc.

i-channel**307**

i-channel Displaying i-channel Ticker Setting

Mobile Wallet/ToruCa**311**

Mobile Wallet Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli ToruCa
Obtaining ToruCa Displaying ToruCa ToruCa Setting IC Card Lock

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data**319**

Displaying/Editing images Playing/Editing video/i-motion Chara-den Playing melodies
miniSD memory card Managing data Infrared communication
Sound Recorder Displaying PDF data Music Player etc.

Other Convenient Functions**365**

Multiaccess Multitask Edit by Slide Auto Power ON/OFF Alarm Clock
Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Call Duration/Call Cost
Rest Call Cost Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad
Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch Quick Start-up Reset Delete All Data etc.

Network Services**391**

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking
Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number
Arrival Call Act Remote Control Multi Number etc.

Data Communication**403**

Data communication Connecting PC Installing communication configuration file
Using FOMA PC configuration software AT command etc.

Character Entry**435**

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character
KUTEN Code Input Save Word Slot Input Method Input Method Setting

Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting**445**

Menu list List of dial keys and character assignments Play Sound
Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service
Software Update Virus Scan Function etc.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual**487**

INDEX Quick Reference Manual

Features of FOMA D902i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet websites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

Main functions of FOMA D902i

PushTalk

You can talk with multiple persons (up to 5 persons including yourself) by easy operation of selecting a partner from the PushTalk phonebook and pressing the PushTalk button (P). You can use conveniently in connection within a group or a short call which tells business. ●P95

i-channel

This allows you to receive graphical information about news and weather conditions. You can get information on a regular basis and the latest information is run on the stand-by display as tickers. Also, the information can be displayed in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key (CH/227). Furthermore, you can get rich, detailed information by selecting your desired channel in the i-channel list. ●P308 In addition, our free trial service is available over the fixed period of time for customers who have not applied to i-channel service.

- i-channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.

PDF compatible viewer

Allows you to view PDF. You can check easily useful information such as maps, catalogs and schedules on your i-mode terminal. You don't need to bring books. ●P210, P359

High-capacity i- ppli/i- ppli DX

Downloading i- ppli from sites allows you to enjoy various games and automatically review stock prices and weather information on your phone. In addition, the 3D graphics and 3D sounds allow you to enjoy realistic i- ppli games such as car race games in the contents compatible to 3D x 3D. i- ppli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as the phonebook and mail. ●P290

Mobile Wallet i-mode FeliCa

Downloading the Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal or check the balance and usage history. Also you can use it as an airplane ticket or a reward point card. The Mobile Wallet makes your phone more convenient in daily life. ●P312

ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card obtained by Mobile Wallet, and you can use conveniently as a flier, a restaurant card, a coupon, etc. ToruCa can be obtained from the reader/writer or sites and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared rays or the miniSD memory card. ●P314

Video-phone

Allows you to see and talk with the partner in the distance place and show the surrounding scenery to the other party by switching to the out-camera. This function also supports Chara-den which displays a character instead of your self image. In addition, you can switch to a video-phone call without disconnecting the call even while making a usual voice call. At the time of purchase, you can begin to talk immediately because the partner's voice is set to be heard from the speaker. ●P78

Deco-mail

Allows you to compose and send your original messages. Enjoy expressive decorated mail by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text. Using templates, you can also create Deco-mail in the same style as for Deco-mail you have received or downloaded from Internet websites. ●P235

Wide array of network services

- | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 ●P392 | Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 ●P394 |
| Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 ●P395 | Dual Network Service (charged)*1 ●P398 |
| SMS (Short Message Service) (free of charge) ●P283 | *1 Separate application is required. |

Useful functions

One-push open

You can quickly slide and open your FOMA terminal with one hand at the touch of the one-push open button on the side of the terminal.

Functions working with slide operation

To receive an incoming call, open FOMA terminal by slide operation. ●P63
To put the call on hold or end the conversation, close it. ●P63
The reply screen or the edit screen can be displayed by only opening FOMA terminal while a received mail or schedule is displayed. ●P368

Built-in camera

FOMA terminal contains an out-camera and in-camera, which allow you to take images while viewing the large display. You can shoot a still image of up to 4M pixels using auto focus. In addition to Max 28 x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including close-up, framed shooting and continuous shooting. You can activate or deactivate Camera by opening/closing the lens cover. ●P168

Out-camera : Effective pixels: 2M
(Max record pixels: 4M)

In-camera : Effective pixels: 320K
(Max record pixels: 310K)

Allows you to record or play video with smooth motion and high quality. ●P178, P327

Multiaccess/Multitask

Multiaccess which can use voice call and packet communication simultaneously is supported, allowing you to talk during an i-mode connection. In addition, Multiaccess which can execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen is supported. For example, you can read received mail or register phonebook entries while making a call. ●P366, P367

Safety settings

You can use FOMA terminal safely by various lock functions.

Key Lock ●P160 Secret Mode ●P161
Privacy Mode ●P159

For details on other Safety settings ●P149

Simple menu

In addition to the normal menu, you can use another menu to display frequently-used functions such as かんわ(phone), メール(mail), カメラ(camera) and iモード(i-mode) in large size of characters. ●P31

More usable mail functions

When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area, unsent mail set to auto-send is sent automatically. ●P247

If the text of reply mail is registered beforehand, you can reply mail easily (Quick Reply). ●P274

You can search mail from the phonebook or the calendar easily. ●P114, P376

The characters are efficiently convertible with ATOK+APOT provided.

High-definition large display

The 2.8-inch large TFT LCD (240 x 400 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters on the large screen.

High-quality melody playback

FOMA terminal also supports ring tones such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects (ADPCM sounds), etc.

Automatic time correction

The time in FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by the information from DoCoMo network. Also you can set the time on your phone ahead or back, if you want. ●P45

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned with the built-in camera. Using scan results, you can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail. ●P189

Infrared communication/infrared remote control

Exchange data between two FOMA terminals using infrared communication. Also, you can operate devices that support TV infrared remote control from your FOMA terminal. ●P351, P355

Support for miniSD memory card

A miniSD memory card enables you to back up data stored in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook entries and mail messages. ●P339

You can save video files and music data (i-motion with no image) created by external devices to the miniSD memory card and play them on your FOMA terminal. (Some files may not be played.) ●P466, P467

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional), the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of a PC. ●P406

Music Player

It becomes easier to play the music data (i-motion without image) in the miniSD memory card. Shuffle play, intro play, etc. can also be performed. ●P363

Animation Menu

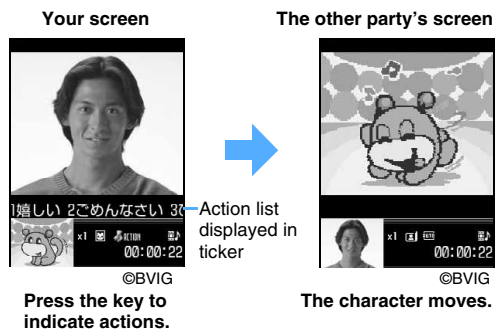
The menu of the animation by Flash movie (Flash™ menu) is provided. ●P30

Making full use of D902i

A variety of functions of D902i visual communications are explained here.

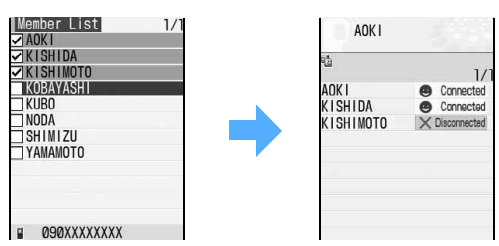
Telling feelings by Chara-den

When talking by video-phone, a character can be displayed on the other party's screen instead of your self image. If the action (movement or expression) is put by the key operation, your feeling can also be expressed. ●P83, P334



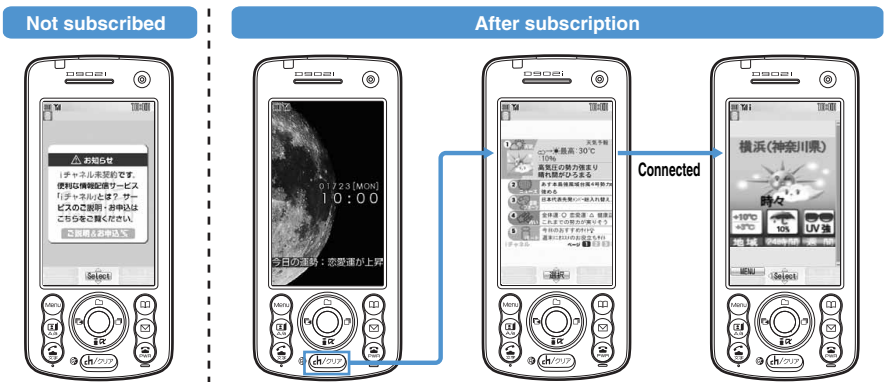
PushTalk

You can talk with multiple persons (up to 5 persons including yourself) by easy operations of only pressing the PushTalk button (P) for over a second to activate PushTalk Phonebook and pressing P after selecting a partner. ●P95



i-channel

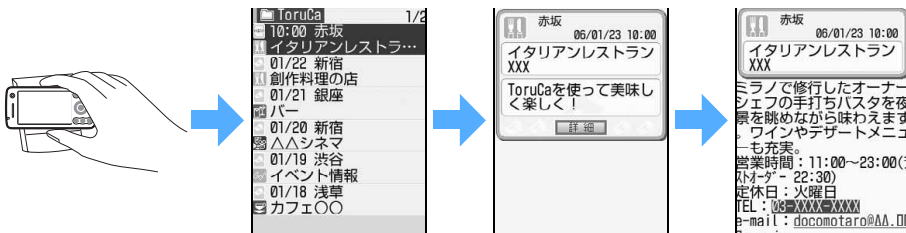
You can receive a variety of information on a regular basis without additional operations. In addition, press the i-channel compatible key (ch/クラブ) to display the channel list so that you can get more richly detailed information. ●P308



ToruCa

ToruCa can be obtained from the reader/writer or sites and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared rays or the miniSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa** in **Tools** menu. ◀P314



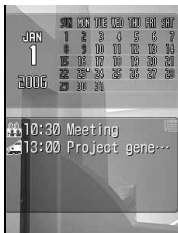
Obtain ToruCa by holding up Mobile Wallet to the reader/writer.

Select obtained ToruCa from the ToruCa list. Press **詳細**(Details) button to view more detailed information.

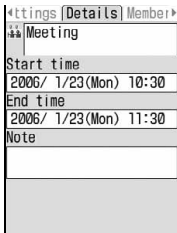
Customizing the screen

- You can display new arrived information such as unread mail, missed call, calendar or schedule on the stand-by display and check the contents by simple operations (Custom stand-by display). In addition, images in the folder you have selected can also be displayed at random on the stand-by display. ◀P137, P135
- By Style Theme, the stand-by display or color scheme suitable for the color of FOMA terminal can be set in total. ◀P148

Custom stand-by display



Press to select.



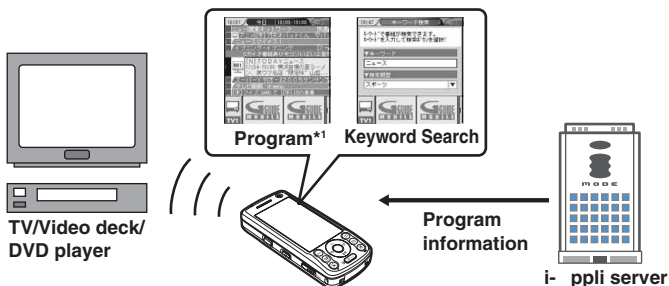
You can check the contents.

Example of Style Theme (Luster White)



G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

The FOMA terminal is equipped with an i- ppli "G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller" for operating the TV, video deck and DVD player remotely while viewing the TV program information. You can search for TV programs using keywords such as the program category or your favorite entertainer. In addition, it allows to register a TV program in the FOMA terminal's Scheduler and sound an alarm when the TV program starts. ◀P297






*1 The screen shown here is for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The actual screen displays the program in your area.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)







Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.

It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.

The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.

 DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.

		This indicates the action is prohibited.	
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.		This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.		
		This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.	
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.		

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into six categories.

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information)P13

Handling the FOMA terminal..... P14

Handling the battery pack P15

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder) P17

Handling the UIM (FOMA card) P18

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices P18

DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D06

Desktop holder: D06

Rear cover: D06

FOMA AC adapter: 01

FOMA DC adapter: 01

• For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



Do not disassemble or remodel the components. Also, do not solder them.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.



Do not use or leave the components in a place near fire or heaters. Also avoid a high-temperature place exposed to direct sunlight or a car under the scorching sun.

Otherwise, your equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite. Other possible problems include a reduction in performance and life. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not expose the components to water.

The components may overheat, cause electric shock, fire or damage if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.

WARNING



Be sure to turn off the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station that is subject to flammable gases. Do not charge in such a place. Charging could cause fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai inside a gas station, make sure to turn off the FOMA terminal in advance. (If IC Card Lock is set, cancel the lock and then turn the power off.)



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) with the components while you are using or charging them or when they are being stored, you should take the following steps immediately.

1. Remove the power plug from the outlet.
2. Turn off your FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from your FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause its battery pack to leak.



Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



CAUTION



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.
Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.
Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Keep out of the reach of small children.
The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.
Doing so could damage the equipment.



The temperature of FOMA terminal or the battery pack adapter (and charger) may become high during charging the battery, recording a video, playing it, repeating of making video-phone calls, performing i-mode or i-ppli, or using it continuously for a long time.
If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long time, redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may arise in your skin depending on your constitution or condition.
Especially note that if you use it continuously for a long time while FOMA terminal is connected to an adapter (and charger).

Handling the FOMA terminal



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.
The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.
If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.
Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment.
Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.
The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.
The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.

**Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.**

Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.

**When you talk under hands-free settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between FOMA terminal and your ear.**

Doing so could cause the hearing loss.

**Do not place your FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.**

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.

**Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.**

From November 1, 2004, using mobile phones while driving is set as the object of penal regulations. Even if you use the handsfree device, park the car in a safe place before using the phone. Set Public mode (Driving mode/power off) or Voice Mail Service while driving.

**Do not turn on the compact light toward eyes at close range.**

Taking a look at the light directly affects eyes damage. He or she may be blinded by it and injury could result.

**If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.**



Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION

**Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.**

Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
Easy Selector Plus (the center key),  ,  , One-push open button	Chromium plating
The side of the display side case	Magnesium alloy MD1D (JIS) equivalents*1

*1 Although painted, the skin may be touched if it separates.

**Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.**

Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.

**Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.**

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.

**Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.**

Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.

**Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.**

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.

Handling the battery pack

Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.
Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.
Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.
Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.
Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

WARNING



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overhear or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.
Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.
Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and AC/DC adapter when hearing thunder.
Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.
Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using your FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: 100V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter:
100V to 240V AC
(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)
DC adapter: 12V DC, 24V DC
(specific for negative ground vehicle)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.
Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Do not use it with positive ground cars.
Doing so could result in fire.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.
Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.
Doing so could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.
Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Take care when removing the UIM (the IC).
Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.

In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.

- Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with a temperature of 5-35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.

If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damage may result.

Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap held inside.

Malfunction or damage may result.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

Battery pack

The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C. When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.

The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not expose to the direct sunlight and high temperature. Please keep your battery in an airy and cool place.

When you do not use your phone for a long time, please detach the battery from the FOMA terminal in the state where it used up and put into a plastic bag etc. and keep it.

Adapter (and charger)

Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C. Do not recharge in the following locations:

- Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
- Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios

It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.

When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.

Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.

When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.

Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

Do not use excessive force to remove the UIM.

Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.

The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.

Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.

Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the UIM.

It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.

If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.

Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.

Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.

Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.

Camera

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights


Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.

Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.


In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-motion”, “i-mode”, “i- ppli”, “i- ppli search”, “i-motion mail”, “i-shot”, “i-melody”, “i-anime”, “DoPa”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “WORLD CALL”, “WORLD WING”, “Short Mail”, “QUICKCAST”, “Chaku-motion”, “Deco-mail”, “V-Live”, “i-area”, “Mobile Wallet” “Chara-den”, “i- ppli DX”, “i-channel”, “Dual Network”, “FirstPass”, “sigmarion”, “Security Scan”, “musea”, “visualnet”, “Public mode”, “ToruCa”, “Push Talk”, “PushTalkPlus” and FOMA, i-mode, Mobile Wallet and PushTalk logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
 - “キャッチホン (Call Waiting)” is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
 - Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
 - Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
 - Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2005 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logs are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
 - “Multitask” is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
 - F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
 -  is a trademark of FeliCa Networks Inc.
 - NetFront and **NetFront** are registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
 - Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc. Copyright© 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
 - McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners. ©2005 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



- Contains Adobe Reader of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Copyright© 2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
- miniSD™ and  are trademarks of the SD Card Association.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- “ATOK” and “APOT” (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology) are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- “G-GUIDE Mobile”, the G-GUIDE Mobile logo, “G-GUIDE” and the G-GUIDE logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the US or the affiliated company in Japan.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- “Privacy Mode” is a registered trademark of FUJITSU.
- **symbian**
This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.
‘Symbian’, ‘Symbian OS’ and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2005 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

- F e l i c a is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- “Edy” is a brand of the prepaid type electronic money service provided by bitWallet, Inc.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG LA
 For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

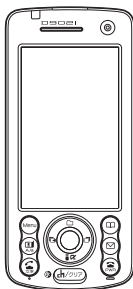
4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	
- This product contains NetFront of ACCESS CO.,LTD. to provide Internet function.
NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO.,LTD. in Japan and other countries.
Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:
 - Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
 - Windows Me is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
 - Windows 98 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
 - Windows 98SE is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system SECOND EDITION.

- Windows NT Server is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows NT® Server Network operating system Version 4.0.
- It may describe like Windows XP, 2000, Me, 98 in parallel.
- Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are described as Windows 98 in all.

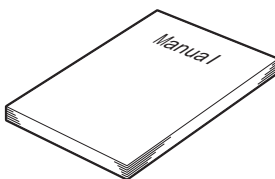
Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

FOMA D902i
(including the written warranty and the rear cover D06)

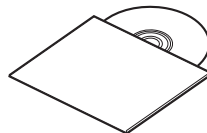


Instruction manual
(this book)



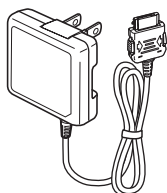
Quick Reference Manual P492

CD-ROM for FOMA
D902i

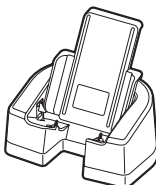


Optional accessories

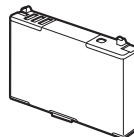
FOMA AC adapter 01
(including the written warranty and the instruction manual)



Desktop holder D06
(including the instruction manual)



Battery pack D06
(including the instruction manual)



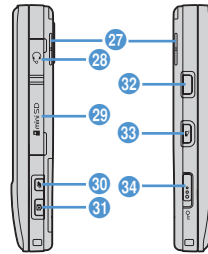
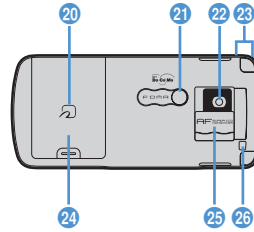
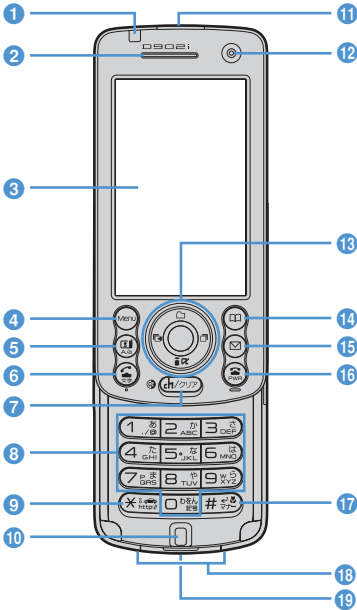
- Other optional accessories ◀P465

MEMO

Before Using D902i

Names and functions of parts	26
Reading the display	28
Selecting the menu	30
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal	36
Using the UIM (FOMA card)	36
Attaching/removing the battery pack	39
Charging the battery of FOMA terminal	40
Checking the remaining battery level	Battery Level 43
Turning the power on/off	Power ON/OFF 44
Switching to English display	Select Language 45
Setting the date and time	Date and Time Setting 45
Notifying your phone number to the other party.....	Caller ID Notification 46
Checking your own phone number.....	Own Number 47

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm) : 109 (H) x 50 (W) x 19.5 (D)
(when closed)

Weight (g) : Approx. 116 (with battery pack)

1 Call indicator

Lights or flashes when a call or mail is received, FOMA terminal is opened/closed, shooting with the camera, etc. The lighting color and pattern can be set (P145). Lights or flashes for new information. Lights in red during charging.

2 Earpiece

Caller's voice comes out of here.

3 Display P28

4 MENU/upper left soft/Silent Mode key

Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Silent Mode, etc.

5 Start video-phone/scroll/lower left soft key

Use this key to make/answer video-phone calls, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

6 Start voice call/speakerphone/character key

Use this key to make/answer voice calls, switch between ordinary and speakerphone calls, switch input modes for entering characters, etc.

7 i-channel/Clear key

Use this key to display the i-channel list, delete entry, return to the previous screen, set/cancel Self Mode, etc. On the i-channel stand-by display, press this key to start i-channel.

8 Dial keys*1

Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.

9 * /Public mode (Driving mode) key*1

Use this key to enter " * ", set/cancel Public mode (Driving mode), switch screen modes during the camera use, etc.

10 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

11 Infrared data port P352

Exchange data with the infrared communication.

12 In-camera P87, P168

Used to shoot yourself or send your image during a video-phone call.

13 Easy Selector Plus

Enter key

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i-channel set for One-touch Button, etc.

Data Box/ key

Use this key to display Data Box menu, activate Camera when shooting with the in-camera, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.

i-mode/i-channel key

Use this key to display i-mode menu or i-channel folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.

Received Calls/ (previous) Key

Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.

⊙ Redial/ (next) key

Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward, set/cancel IC Card Lock etc.

14 ☎ Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key

Use this key to display the phonebook or schedule, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.

15 ✉ Mail/scroll/lower right soft key

Use this key to display Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.

16 ⏻ Power/End/Hold key

Use this key to turn the power on/off, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode, etc. Also, use this key to switch displaying/not displaying the custom stand-by display or calendar.

17 # #/Silent Mode/line-feed key*1

Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc. Switches between the standard mode and the macro mode during the out-camera use.

18 Charging terminals

Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder.

19 External connection terminals ◀P42, P407

Used to connect various optional accessories.

20 FeliCa mark

The mark means that a piece of IC card is mounted. Use IC card functions by placing the FeliCa mark over the external device (reader/writer). The IC card cannot be detached.

21 Compact light ◀P88, P173, P178

Used during the out-camera use. Lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos (however, when the compact light is turned on for shooting, the red light may be difficult to see).

22 Out-camera ◀P87, P168

Used to shoot still images or videos or send images during a video-phone call.

23 Antenna (built-in)

Take care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.

24 Rear cover

25 Lens cover ◀P169

26 Strap opening

27 Speaker

Ring tone and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the voice of the other party comes out.

28 Earphone/microphone jack

Used to connect a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).

29 miniSD memory card slot ◀P342

Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.

30 ⌨ TASK key

Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask.

31 📷 Answer Machine/shutter key

Use this key to display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu, start Quick Record Message, activate Camera and shoot images, stop ring tone/alarm sound, etc.

- 📷 has 2 positions: half press and full press for shooting images with auto focus, so the feel of pressing this key is different from other keys.

32 One-push open button



Use this button to open FOMA terminal.

33 🗨 PushTalk button ◀P95

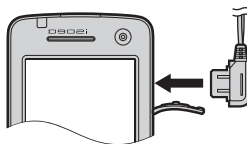
Use this button to display the PushTalk phonebook or make/answer PushTalk calls/speak to by PushTalk.

34 Keylock switch ◀P160

Use this key to set/cancel Key Lock.

*1: The style of the key character changes with the color of the terminal. (Example: , )

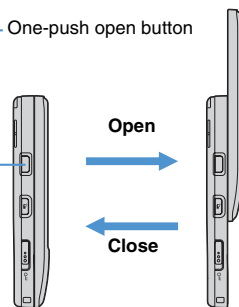
Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch



- You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone set.

Opening/closing FOMA terminal

To open FOMA terminal, press the one-push open button. To close it, slide the front face (with the display) downward.

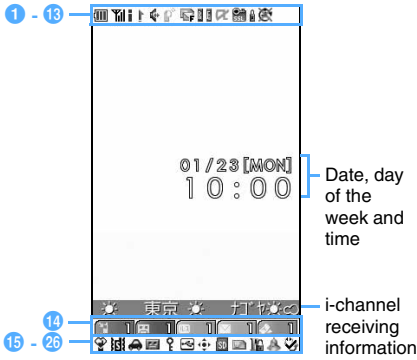


- Operations such as accessing the screen to reply to mail or to edit schedules or notes are made easily by opening FOMA terminal. ◀P252, P372, P385
- FOMA terminal allows you to make calls without opening it. You can also answer an incoming call by opening FOMA terminal and end or put on hold the call by closing it. ◀P63
- Please note that if you open the terminal by force without pressing the one-push open button or open and close it violently, it will cause the damage of the terminal.

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:

- When you use the i-channel service, if *Show ticker* is set to *Yes* in Ticker Setting, the i-channel received information is displayed as ticker on the stand-by display. ◀P309



- : Battery level ◀P43
漢/半加/半英/半数/全加/全英/全数/全勝
: Character input mode ◀P437
- : Received signal level ◀P44
国外 : Out of service area ◀P44
Self : Self Mode is set ◀P156
⇄ : During data transfer ◀P339, P351
In the miniSD mode ◀P406
Data link software in progress ◀P466
- : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) ◀P198
 : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) ◀P216, P249
- : Infrared communication in progress ◀P351
Infrared remote control function in operation ◀P355
- : Speakerphone function in operation ◀P51
*1 : Communication USB by hands-free compatible equipment in progress ◀P60
 : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ◀P383
- : During PushTalk calls ◀P94
*1 : During accessing the phonebook data on the network ◀P94
 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center *2 ◀P250, P217
 / / : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ◀P250, P217
 : Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F in the Center ◀P250, P217

- / / : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F in the Center ◀P250, P217
- : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full and SMS storage space is full on UIM ◀P285
*1 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full ◀P250, P285
 : SMS full on UIM ◀P285
 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist ◀P249, P284
 : Unread i-mode Mail exists ◀P249
 : Unread SMS exists ◀P284
- / (blue/red)
: Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full ◀P216
- / (green/red)
: Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full ◀P216
- : i- ppli running ◀P293
 : i- ppli stand-by display on ◀P136
 : Starting i- ppli from the i- ppli stand-by display ◀P302
 : i- ppli DX running ◀P293
 : i- ppli DX stand-by display on ◀P136
 : Starting i- ppli from the i- ppli DX stand-by display ◀P302
- : Displaying SSL page, using i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i- ppli ◀P199
*1 : Auto-send mail failed exists ◀P247
 : Auto-send mail exists ◀P247
- : Secret Mode is set ◀P161
- : i- ppli auto start failed ◀P301
- : Focus Mode icon ◀P35
- : Silent Mode is set ◀P131
- : Personalized silent mode is set ◀P131
- : Ring alert volume is silent ◀P67
- : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ◀P129
- : Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set ◀P67, P129
- : Public mode (Driving mode) is set ◀P71
- : Answer Machine is set ◀P74
- : Recorded messages full ◀P74
- : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) ◀P160

- 20 : Connecting to the external devices by the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) P92, P407
- 21 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode P35
- 22 : miniSD memory card inserted P342
- 23 : Reading the UIM P44
- *1 : IC Card Lock is set P318

- 24 : PIM Lock is set P157
- *1 : Keypad Dial Lock is set P158
- 25 : Alarm Clock is set P369
- : Schedule alarm is set P372
- : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 26 : Software Update reserved P481
- *1 : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is failed P484
- : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded P484

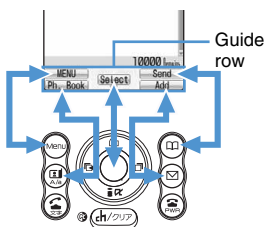
*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and other unreceived mail/messages exist.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen



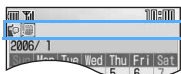
Display positions and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys ().

The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the used function or site).



Reading the task bar





The icon for the function (task) in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons). You can confirm functions being used and run. In addition, when receiving mails/messages, the reception result is scrolled.





Task bar (Example when schedule calendar is displayed during a voice call)

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| : Voice call | : Bookmark/Internet | : Redial |
| : Video-phone (64 K/32 K) | : Connection/Last Visited | : Answer Machine/Voice Memo |
| : Video-phone call through external device | : URL/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut | : Own Number |
| : PushTalk | : i- ppli | : Setting an alarm/alarm sounding |
| : 64K data communication | : ToruCa | : Scheduler |
| : Originating/communicating/sending/receiving packet via USB | : My Picture (<i>Image</i>) | : Schedule alarm sounding |
| : Mail | : i-motion | : Notepad |
| : Receiving i-mode Mail | : Melody | : Calculator |
| : Receiving SMS | : Chara-den | : Data exchanging with external device |
| : Chat Mail | : My Document | : Saving to INBOX/setting reception method for infrared communication |
| : Message R/F | : Camera | : Accessing/waiting for access to the miniSD memory card |
| : Checking for i-mode Mail/SMS | : Movie Camera | |
| : i-mode/i-channel | : Sound Recorder | |
| | : Bar Code Reader | |
| | : Music Player | |
| | : Phonebook | |
| | : Received Calls | |

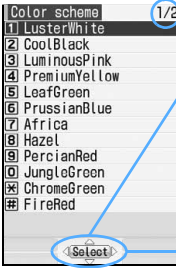
 /  (dark blue/gray)
 : In the miniSD mode
 (communication is possible)/
 (USB cable unconnected/no
 miniSD memory card inserted)

 /  (dark blue/gray)
 : Setting/holding each function
 : Software Update activated
 : Software Update notified

 : Update Definition activated/
 version display
 : Setting each network service


Reading the list screen



Example *Color scheme* screen




The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

△ indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the selected item.

-  to move the cursor

- If you press  on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press  on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

◀ ▶ indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

-  to switch between pages

- (You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.)

- Color scheme names are named based on imagery.


INFORMATION

Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.

- FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
- When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen with some operations performed, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

Selecting the menu

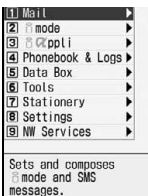
In addition to the normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features is provided. (You can switch to the simple menu only when *Japanese* is set in Select Language.)

In the simple menu, the menu items are displayed in large letters. Also, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu .

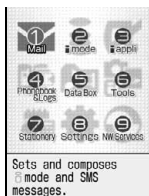
Display format for the normal menu and the custom menu

“Animation” in the normal menu is set by default. Select from the following types (Menu Setting .

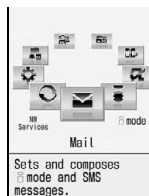
- The screen is the display example of the normal menu.



List view



Tile display



3D display




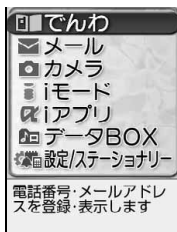
Animation
 (Only the normal menu)

Switching to the simple menu

1 

The normal menu is displayed.

- When the custom menu is displayed: 

2 Press 































The simple menu is displayed.

Switching to the normal menu:   on the stand-by display

- To switch the custom menu:   on the stand-by display

Functions available on the simple menu

Some menu items cannot be accessed from the simple menu.

	Menu Item	Shortcut		Menu Item	Shortcut
でんわ	電話帳検索	 1 1	i モード	iMenu	 4 1
	電話帳登録	 1 2		Bookmark	 4 2
	リダイヤル	 1 3		ラスト URL	 4 3
	着信履歴	 1 4		画面メモ	 4 4
	伝言メモ一覧	 1 5	i アプリ	ソフト一覧	 5 1
	自局番号	 1 6 /  0		待受画面設定	 5 2
メール	受信メール	 2 1	i アプリ設定	 5 3	
	送信メール	 2 2	データ BOX	 6	
	未送信メール	 2 3	設定 / ステー ショナ リー	音 / バイブ	 7 1
	新規メール	 2 4		ディスプレイ	 7 2
	i モード問合せ	 2 5		アラーム	 7 3
カメラ	カメラ	 3 1		電卓	 7 4
	マイピクチャ	 3 2		伝言メモ設定	 7 5
	待受画面設定	 3 3	情報表示 / リセット	 7 6	
				留守番電話	 7 7

When the simple menu is set

During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of caller's voice.

In stand-by display, enter the phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered names and telephone numbers. Key operations for making voice calls/video-phone calls are also shown. During voice calls, you can also press **Menu**, select **ダイヤルルカ** (Dial up) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.

INFORMATION

You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when **English** is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.

Even if you selected the simple menu before turning your FOMA terminal off, the menu will change to the normal one when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language and then turn the power on again.

Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select menu items.

- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by **Lock** or dimmed, and cannot be selected.

Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

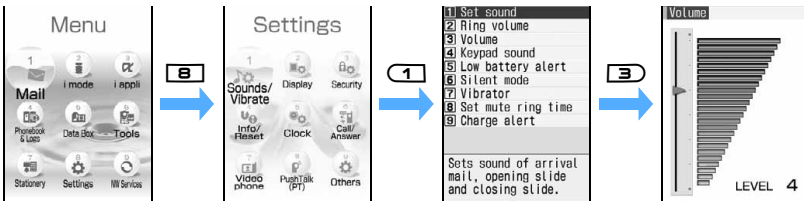
Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key.

- In this manual, the operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations of the normal menu.

Example Executing **Volume** from the normal menu

1 **Menu** **8** **1** **3**

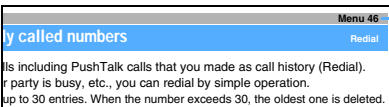
The screen for adjusting the volume is displayed.



When several shortcuts are available

When there are multiple shortcut operations, the shortcut operations other than the operation described in the operating procedure are shown at the far right of the title in the body text.

Example For redialing



Press **Menu** to show the menu, then press **4** then **6** to show the redial list.

- means pressing **Menu**, and **↓** means pressing **↓**.


Selecting menu items with Easy Selector Plus

- The menu selecting method in the tile icon display is the same as the method of the animation display (*Type1*).





Example Executing *Volume* from the normal menu (*Type1* of animation display)

1 



- Select the desired menu item when other than displaying animations to display the description of the item's function.
- In case of the animation display,  in the guide row is not displayed.

2  to highlight *Settings* ▶ 

- In the simple menu:  to highlight the desired item ▶  or 
- In case of the animation display, the operations of  differ depending on the animation design.

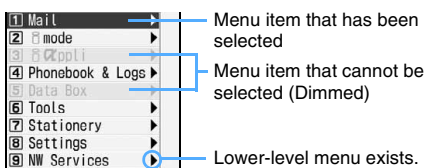
3  to highlight *Sounds/Vibrate* ▶ 

4  to highlight *Volume* ▶ 






The screen for adjusting the volume is displayed.

- The menus after the 3rd class are displayed in a list. The operation method is the same as the selecting method in the list view.

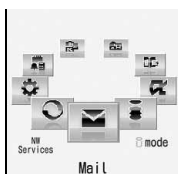
Selecting menu items (List view)






- Menu item that has been selected
- Menu item that cannot be selected (Dimmed)
- Lower-level menu exists.



-  to highlight a menu item and press  or .
- You can also select an item by the dial key for the item number.
- To return to the previous menu:  or 

Selecting menu items (3D display)



-  to move the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press .
-  to move the the icon at the rear to the front.
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in the tile display or list view menu.

Returning to the stand-by display or previous screen

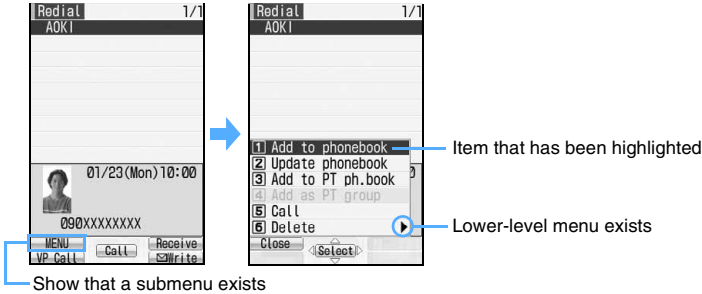
- : Returns to the stand-by display.
- : Returns to the previous screen.

Selecting functions from the submenu




When **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

Example Displaying the Redial submenu

1 in the redial list



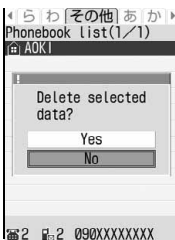
2 to highlight a submenu item ▶ or

- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number. Even for the same function, the item numbers may differ depending on the screen.
- To return to the previous menu:  or 
- To close the submenu: 

Setting each item on the screen

Selecting *Yes* or *No* on the confirmation screen

1 to highlight *Yes* or *No* ▶

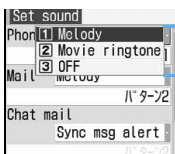


- For some functions, items other than *Yes* and *No* may appear.

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 to highlight an item

2 to display the pulldown menu ▶ to highlight an item



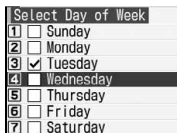
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

→ Pulldown menu


3 Press

Selecting an item from the check box

1 to highlight a check box







The check box changes from to , and is selected.

- Select the selected item () to cancel the selection ()
- Depending on the function, select/cancel all items by pressing .
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

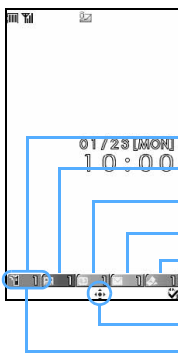
Displaying information quickly



Focus Mode


When the icons such as  1 or  1 are displayed on the stand-by display, you can quickly display the information.

- You can also perform the same operation when the icon  or  indicating that auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded or it is failed is displayed.

1 to highlight an icon



- The number of stored items is displayed at the right of each icon.
- To cancel Focus Mode:  or 


 01 / 23 [MON] Missed call (unanswered call) exists.

 10:00 Unplayed recorded message exists.

 Voice mail message exists.

 Unread received mail exists.

 Unread ToruCa exists.


 Data updated automatically of the pattern definition exists.

 Effective Easy Selector Plus keys


The color of the selected icon changes.

2 Press

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.



 1 : The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time, the caller information, etc.

 1 : The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages.


 1 : The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages.

 1 : The Inbox folder list is displayed. You can display unread mail.

 1 : The folder list of ToruCa is displayed and unread ToruCa can be checked.

 /  : The data updated automatically of the pattern definition can be checked.

INFORMATION

When you select an icon and hold down  for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when information is viewed and the number of items changes.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal

Type		Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items	Type	Maximum number of saved/registered items	Maximum number of protected items
Mail	Received mail*1,*2	1000	500	i- ppli*4	100	100
	Sent mail*1,*2	200	100	Image*1	1000	-
	Unsent mail*1,*2	200	100	Melody*1	500	-
	Template*1	100	-	PDF data*1	100	-
SMS in the UIM*3		20	-	Video/i-motion/ sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1	100	-
Message R*1		100	50			
Message F*1		50	25			
Bookmark		100	-	Chara-den*1	50	-
Screen memo*1		100	50	ToruCa*1	100	50

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivery report is not included.

*4 Up to 5 items of Message i- ppli (as part of the 100 items, maximum number of i- ppli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i- ppli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

INFORMATION

Because the data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data in FOMA terminal. Please note that we are not responsible for any lost data.

It is recommended that you save the data stored in FOMA terminal such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies or video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card. Exchangeable data ●P343

If you have a PC, you can use the FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.

Depending on the function, the displayed file size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.

Insert the UIM into FOMA terminal to use it.

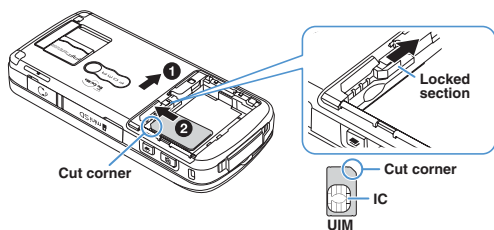
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

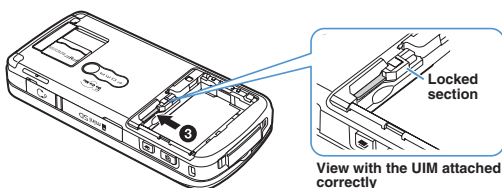
Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off and remove the rear cover and battery pack. Attaching/removing the rear cover and battery pack ●P39
- Insert or remove the UIM with FOMA terminal closed using both hands.

Inserting the UIM

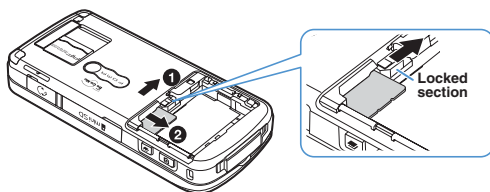


- 1 Slide the locked section in the direction of the arrow.
- 2 Insert the UIM into the slot in the direction shown in the figure with the IC side of the UIM facing down.



- 3 Push the UIM fully until it is locked after the locked section is returned to its original position.

Removing the UIM



- 1 Slide the locked section in the direction of the arrow.
The UIM comes out of the slot.
- 2 Pull the UIM out of the slot straightly.

INFORMATION

Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.

Carefully handle the removed UIM so that it does not become lost.

Please note that the UIM might be darted out of the slot when removing the UIM.

When you remove the UIM, if you cannot remove it easily because the UIM dashed out only a few, insert the UIM into deep again and remove it.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

The both codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ◀P152

UIM operation restriction function

FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.


- When the data or files downloaded from sites or the data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction function is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be displayed or played.

- The data or files with the UIM operation restriction function set cannot be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card or cannot be exchanged by infrared communication.
- The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - Screen memo
 - Image inserted in the Deco-mail text
 - i- ppli (including the i- ppli stand-by display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Melody
 - Recorded message for video-phone
 - Image of ToruCa (details)
 - Message R/F
 - File attached to i-mode Mail
 - i-motion
 - Chara-den
 - PDF data
 - Movie memo
- For i- ppli with the UIM operation restriction set, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:
 - Start
 - Operation setting for i- ppli
 - Changing the auto start function
 - Upgrade
 - Displaying the detail information of i- ppli
 - Automatic start
 - Setting the i- ppli stand-by display

INFORMATION

When the data with the UIM operation restriction function enabled is set for the stand-by display, call image or ring tone, the settings for the image and sound return to the default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the sound and image that are actually generated/displayed may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction of the data and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting may be canceled if the data was used for Random Display Image.)

The UIM operation restriction function is not set to the data obtained via infrared communication, the miniSD memory card or data link software or to the still images videos taken with the built-in camera.

When the UIM is replaced to the other i-channel compatible terminal, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the stand-by display. After that, the information is updated automatically or if you press  on the stand-by display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the stand-by display.

When the UIM is not inserted, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the stand-by display.

The settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. If the UIM is replaced, the settings saved in the replaced UIM become available.

- *Font type, Keep in SMS center, SMSC, Address and Type of Number* of SMS Setting
- *DoCoMo Cert, User Certificate* of Certificate Setting • *My phone number* of Own number • Select Language
- The PIN1/PIN2 cord of the UIM, PIN1 Cord ON/OFF
- The phone number setting of Multi Number (the phone number of basic contract number)

Functional differences between the UIM types

There are two types of the UIM: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P110
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P221
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P39
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries available • Connecting to DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo Information Center	Unavailable	P399

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into FOMA terminal corresponding to the service or an overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM handset), you can make/receive calls usually in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number.

You can use WORLD WING without subscription.

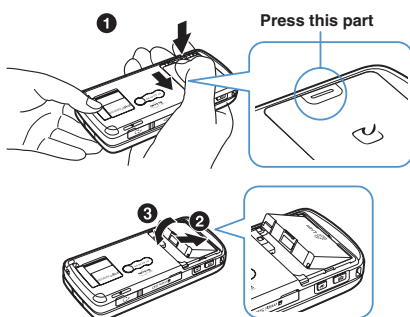
If you have not contracted WORLD WING for the FOMA service in the contract before August 31, 2005, a separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.

Some charge plan cannot be used in part.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Turn the power off and close FOMA terminal before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

Attaching the battery pack



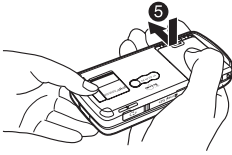
1 Remove the rear cover.

While pressing the top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.

2 With the surface with DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark of the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack terminal into FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack terminal into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage the battery pack terminal or the body connector.

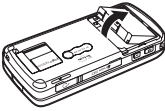
3 Push the battery pack in.



- ④ Place the rear cover plate so that it is shifted about 2 mm on from FOMA terminal.
- ⑤ Slide the rear cover in the direction of the arrow pushing its center by fingers so that FOMA terminal and the rear cover do not gap.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery pack



- ① Remove the rear cover.
- ② Lift the projection part of the battery pack with your finger and remove it.

Battery recycling

FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:

- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs



Li-ion

INFORMATION

The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of the active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery of FOMA terminal

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ➤P43

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous stand-by time
Approx. 120 minutes	During a voice call: Approx. 165 minutes During a video-phone call: Approx. 90 minutes	While standing still: Approx. 550 hours While moving: Approx. 380 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/stand-by time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/stand-by time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i- ppli software or the i- ppli stand-by display.
- Continuous stand-by time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.

- Continuous stand-by time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use Camera or play video/i-motion (including music data), the call (communication)/stand-by time will also be reduced.

Battery pack

Use the battery pack D06.


The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack's life is about one year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

- When charging starts, the call indicator lights in red.

When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Call indicator	Meaning
 (Charging: Blinks Charged: Lights)	Charging: Lights in red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

- The icon design can be changed in Battery Icon. [▶P144](#)
- If the call indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.
- When charging is completed, the call indicator goes off.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights. (If the battery level icon blinks, charging is not completed.)
- You can set the charge alert not to sound. [▶P130](#)
- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
 - Low battery level
 - Message appears indicating that the battery runs down.
 - FOMA terminal is operational for a short time.
- If the battery is sufficiently charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
- If you use FOMA terminal while charging the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, there is a case where it becomes impossible to charge temporarily by temperature rise.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it.
- Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

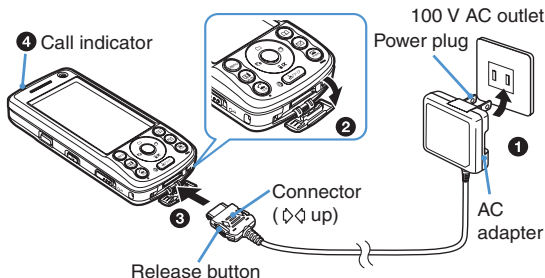
Charging from a wall outlet

Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the desktop holder D06 (optional).

You can charge the battery with FOMA terminal either closed or open.

- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the desktop holder.

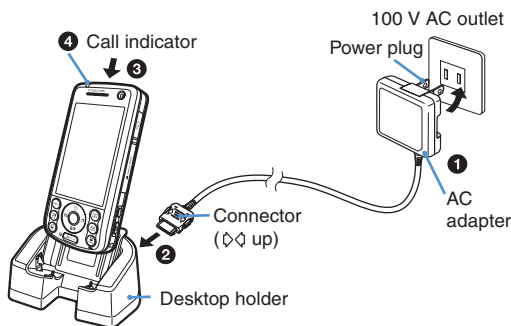
Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



- 1 **Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.**
- 2 **Open the external connection terminal cap of FOMA terminal.**
- 3 **Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

Check that the call indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then close the terminal cap.

Charging the battery in the desktop holder



- 1 **Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.**
- 2 **Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.**
- 3 **Along with the desktop holder, insert FOMA terminal at an angle as shown in the figure.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

Check that the call indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting it to the front while pressing the desktop holder by hand.

- When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery is not charged normally. Insert FOMA terminal until it is locked certainly.

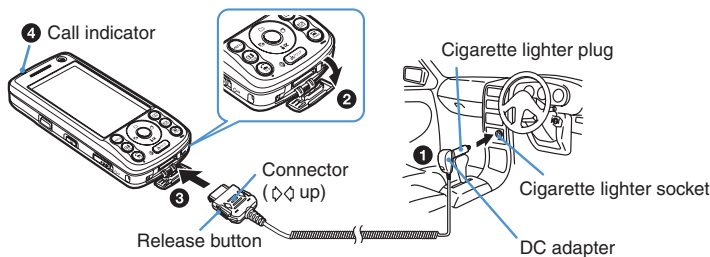
Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

- 1 **Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.**
- 2 **Turn off the power of FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.**
- 3 **Insert the DC adapter connector firmly until it clicks.**
- 4 **Check that charging starts.**

When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then, close the terminal cap.



INFORMATION

If you charge FOMA terminal with the car engine off, the car battery may be discharged. Charge the battery when the car engine is running.

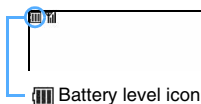
When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.

The DC adapter fuses (DC adapter: 2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.




Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

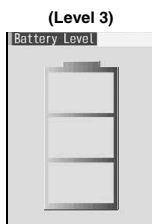
The display indicates rough standard of the remaining battery level in 3 levels.



Battery level icon

-  (Remaining battery level 3): Amply charged
 -  (Remaining battery level 2): Charging is decreased.
 -  (Remaining battery level 1): Recharging recommended
- The icon can be changed by Battery Icon. ◀P144

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display



Sounds 3 times.




Sounds twice.







Sounds once.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the sound set in Keypad Sound.

When the battery almost runs down

A message appears or a low battery alert sounds to indicate that the battery level is low. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. If you want to stop it immediately, press .

- In stand-by, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink and after approximately one minute, the power turns off automatically.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing ,  or . When approximately 20 seconds elapses after the low battery alert is heard, the call is cut off and the stand-by display reappears. Then, after approximately one minute, the power turns off automatically.

Default ON

- 1 **8** **1** **5**
- 2 Press **2**
 - To set the alert: **1**

INFORMATION

When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if *OFF* is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

Turning the power on/off

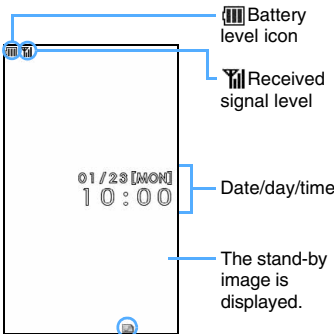
- If the power is turned on for the first time, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to perform Software Update. Note that the battery needs to be charged enough when performing. Please be sure to refer to “Updating Software” before performing. ◀P478

Turning the power on

- 1 (for over 2 seconds)

The wake-up screen appears and then the stand-by display is displayed. Displaying the wake-up screen may take some time.

- If Quick Start-up is set to *ON*, the time until the stand-by display is displayed becomes short.



is indicated while reading the UIM and disappears when reading is completed.

Display of received signal level				圏外
Status	Strong	Medium	Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message indicating that is displayed. Press to set the date and time.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message indicating that insertion of the UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and then turn the power back on.
- When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to *ON*, enter the PIN1 code.
- The following items can be changed:
 - Stand-by image ◀P132
 - Battery level icon ◀P144
 - Display format of the time ◀P147

Turning the power off

- 1 (for over 2 seconds)

INFORMATION

Calls may be cut off even when is indicated and you are not moving.

When Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, entry of the PIN2 code is required.

In the following cases, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears (except while shooting with the camera, etc.). It is the same also during a voice call. The display appears again if there is any key operation or incoming call.

- When **Turn light on** is set to other than **Always** in Display Light Setting
- During charging (when **Turn light on** is set to other than **Always**, and **AC adapter connected** is set to **Terminal settings** in Display Light setting)

Switching to English display

Select Language

Default Japanese

1  8 2 7 22 Press 

- To switch to Japanese display: 

INFORMATION

The setting is saved to the UIM.

In English display, the character input mode changes in the following order: 半英 (alphabet) 半数 (numeric) 漢 (hiragana/kanji) 半カナ (katakana)

Setting the date and time

Date and Time Setting

The time setting can be performed in two ways: obtaining the time information from DoCoMo network to adjust the time setting of your FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to your terminal.

Default Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1  8 5 1

2 Select each item to set





- When you set **Auto time adjust** to **ON**, **Offset** can be set. **Date** and **Time** cannot be set.

Auto time adjust: Set whether to perform the automatic time correction.

- To enter the date and time manually, set **Auto time adjust** to **OFF**.

Offset: Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from/delays to the time obtained for a given length of time.

- Enter the time between 00h00m and 23h59m.
- Prefix 0 if the time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).

- Date, Time** : Set the date and time.
- Enter the year by the last 2 digits of the year. From January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050 can be set.
 - Enter the time in the 24-hour clock (00h00m - 23h59m).
 - Prefix 0 if the month, date, time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).
- The entered numbers can also be increased or decreased by . Also,  to highlight the number to change to enter it.

3 Press






When the automatic time correction is set

The automatic time correction takes place when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- Even if the time information is received while i- ppli is running, the time may not be able to be corrected depending on i- ppli.
- When *Auto time adjust* is set to *ON*, the time may not be corrected for a while. To enable the automatic time correction, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic time correction is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.







INFORMATION

You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Random Display Image (When the timing switch is set to other than *Open slide*)
- Auto Power ON/OFF
 - Alarm Clock
- Scheduler
 - Certificate Download 
- i- ppli auto start function P300
 - i- ppli DX requiring the time setting 
- Downloading i-motion with replay restrictions set P329
- Data (schedule) transfer P352, P353
 - Software Update
- Update Definition
 - SSL communication (authentication)

If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and

“---/--/--” or “-----” is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.

- Redial/Received Calls
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
 - Notepad
- Date and time of the still image/video shot with the camera P171
- Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail P260
- Date and time in the file name of the data scanned by Bar Code Reader P190
- Date and time of downloaded i- ppli P294
 - Date and time of receiving ToruCa 
- Date and time of downloaded still image, melody, Chara-den, i-motion or mail template P349, P246

The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In that case, set the date and time again.

When Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, entry of the terminal security code is required.

Notifying your phone number to the other party





Caller ID Notification


Set FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.


- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display the caller ID.

- Caller ID Notification cannot be set in a location outside the service area. Set it in a location with good radio wave condition.
- For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

1    

- To check the current setting:     ▶ Select *Yes*

2 Enter the network security code ▶ 

- The network security code entered is masked with “*”.
- To hide the caller ID: 

INFORMATION

You can use the following ways to show/hide the caller ID.

- Setting to show/hide the caller ID for each phonebook entry ◀P121
- Setting to show/hide the caller ID when making a call ◀P56

If you hear a guidance to request to show your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.

When setting/operating the multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the setting of showing/hiding the caller ID shown on the display may be different from the actual setting.

- ① When you set the caller ID notification method in the dialing condition when making a call ◀P56
- ② When “186”/“184” is appended before the other party’s phone number
- ③ When Caller ID Setting is set to the phonebook data
- ④ When Caller ID Notification is set

Set Caller ID Notification for PushTalk calls in PT Caller ID Notification.

Menu 48





Checking your own phone number

Own Number



Check your phone number (*My phone number*), name, mail address, etc.

 **Default**  *My phone number: Phone number by default*  *Other than that: Not recorded*

1  

- The phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal is displayed for *My phone number*.
- To check your i-mode Mail address:   to display iMenu ▶ Select *English*  *Options*
 *Mail Settings* *Confirm Mail Address*

INFORMATION

To check your phone number during a call:  

MEMO

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls	50
Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call.....	53
Calling back previously called numbers	Redial 54
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call ...	186/184 Call 56
Making calls by setting the conditions	56
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 57
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 59
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 59
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality	Noise Reduction 59
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 60

Receiving calls

Receiving calls	60
Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a video-phone call	62
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 63
Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal	Open Answer 63
Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call by closing FOMA terminal	Close Setting 63
Using Received Calls	Received Calls 64
Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice	Volume Setting 66
Adjusting the ring volume	Ring Volume Setting 66
Setting operations for incoming voice/video-phone/PushTalk calls	Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming PushTalk Setting 67
Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 68

When you can/could not answer a call

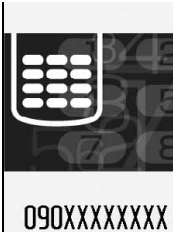
Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 69
Setting a response hold guidance	Status Message 69
Setting an on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 70
Using Public mode (Driving mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 71
Using Public mode (power off)	72
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 73

Making calls



The procedures for making voice calls and the common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call.

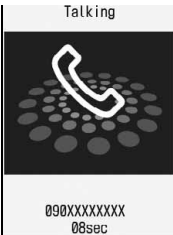
1 Enter a phone number




Calling general subscriber phone	Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phone	090 - XXXX - XXXX, 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phone	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- You can enter up to 80 digits for the phone number. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number: 
- To return to the stand-by display:  (for over a second)

2




You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.


- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. Press  to end the call and make a call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the power of the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or the other party is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.

3 when you finish the call


- To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

INFORMATION

You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed  and entered the phone number.

When a call is made to the other party with a video/i-motion set for the image of the phonebook data, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed on the dialing screen. P108

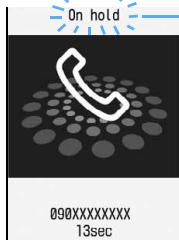
If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when a call is made, call again after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.

When you subscribe to the Multi Number service, you can call by specifying a registered multi number. P400

Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the caller hearing your voice.

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 during a call



On-hold during a voice call

Flashes



On-hold during a video-phone call

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is played. For video-phone calls, the on-hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

On-hold image

- Press or while a voice call is on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press while a video-phone call is on hold to cancel the hold and send the image that has been sent before the hold. Press or to cancel the hold and send your image to the other party and press to cancel the hold and send a substitute image.

INFORMATION

To put the call on hold by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker.

- When you make a video-phone call, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on. To make a video-phone call without turning on the speakerphone function, change the setting in Videophone Settings.

1 Enter a phone number (for over a second) or

- To make a video-phone call with the speakerphone function on when *Speakerphone* is set to *OFF* in Videophone Settings, press for over a second.
- You can turn on/off the speakerphone function by pressing while dialing or or during a call.
- is displayed while the speakerphone function is on.
- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages and voice memos.
- To make a PushTalk call: Enter a phone number (for over a second)

INFORMATION

When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.

If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function.

Talk to FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.

The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected to FOMA terminal, use the connected device to communicate.







Operation during voice calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 <i>Switch to V-phone</i>	Switches from a voice call to a video-phone call.	P53
2 <i>Received calls</i>	Displays received calls.	P64
3 <i>Redial</i>	Displays redials.	P54
4 <i>Set time</i>	Sets the date and time.	P45
5 <i>Reconnect alarm</i> *1	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P59
6 <i>Quality alarm</i> *1	Sets whether to sound an alarm when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P130
7 <i>Terminal close</i>	Sets the operations (whether the call is disconnected, continued or held) when FOMA terminal is closed during a call.	P63
8 <i>Dial up</i>	Allows making a call to another party during a call using Call Waiting Service.	P395
9 <i>Volume</i>	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P66

*1 The setting can be changed while an alarm sounds. It becomes effective when the alarm is stopped.

• The following key operations are available during a call:

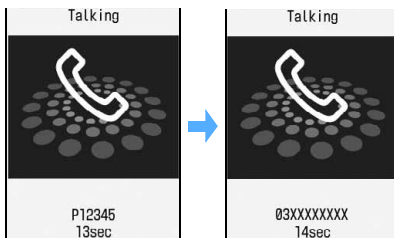
- : Start the phonebook
-  (for over a second): Record the other party's voice (Talking Voice Memo)
- : Adjust the volume
- : Display received calls
- : Display redials
- : Activate Camera

Entering pauses or timed pauses

Pauses and timed pauses apply only to voice calls.


Example Calling to "03XXXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered pause)

When you press  after the call is connected, the numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and a tone signal (DTMF) is sent.

1  (for over a second)

- You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering a timed pause "T"

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter "T" between the outside line and extension number to dial the extension number after a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 **#** (for over a second)

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.

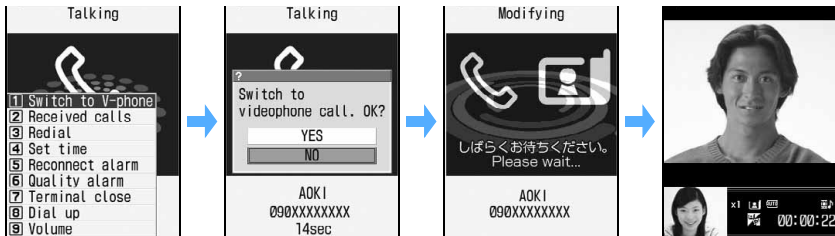
When it is necessary to send tone signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after switching to the speakerphone. You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).

Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

You can switch to a video-phone call by operating from the submenu during a voice call when the other terminal is compatible with switching calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call.

- This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/video-phone call.
- To switch to a video-phone call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ◀P91

1 **Menu** 1 during a voice call ▶ Select **YES**



- A guidance informing that the call is switched is played during switching.
- Select **NO** to return to the voice call talking screen.
- When **Speakerphone** is set to **ON** in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone function is automatically turned on when the call is switched to a video-phone call.

INFORMATION

During packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a video-phone call. When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a video-phone call. While talking on the phone using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a video-phone call. It takes about 5 seconds to switch. In addition, it may take time to switch depending on radio wave conditions. Depending on radio wave conditions, a voice call may not be switched to a video-phone call or may be disconnected.

* From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".

The call is not charged while *Modifying* is displayed.

Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call ◀P81

A second call received while switching calls is rejected.

The speakerphone function is turned off every time a voice call and video-phone call are switched.

The settings (such as switching the cameras or selecting the frame) during a video-phone call are canceled every time a voice call and video-phone call are switched.

According to the call duration of a voice call and video-phone call, the call charges are added, respectively.

Calling back previously called numbers

This function records the calls and PushTalk calls that you made as dialed calls (Redial). When the other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the redial data.
- When the same number is dialed, only the most recent call is recorded for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting.
- While not in Secret Mode, the phone numbers you dialed are displayed in the redial data even if they are registered in the phonebook with Secret Attribute.

1 Highlight a party in the redial list

The screenshot shows a list of redial entries. The top entry is highlighted. The list includes columns for phone numbers, names, dates, and call types. Call types are represented by various icons: a person for single-party PushTalk, a group of people for multi-party PushTalk, a person with a plus sign for PushTalkPlus, a video camera for video-phone calls, and a globe for international calls.

- Phone number, name*1, group name*2
- No. : Call with the caller ID set to show
- ☒ : Call with the caller ID set to hide
- Date and time of dialing, phone number, image*3 of the highlighted party
- Name of the multi number specified*4
- PushTalk type
- ☎ : PushTalk call (one party)
- ☎☎ : PushTalk call (more than one party)
- ☎+ : PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (one party) ◀P94
- ☎+☎+ : PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (more than one party) ◀P94
- 📹 : Video-phone call
- 🌐 : PushTalk call
- 🌐 : International call

*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook

*2 When a PushTalk call was made to a group (the first member's name when the call was made by selecting multiple parties)

*3 When the image is registered in the phonebook (the first member's image for PushTalk call)

*4 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of Basic Number or Additional Number specified for the call)

- To switch between the redial/received call list:
- To display the list of PushTalk call parties: Highlight a PushTalk redial
- You can also perform the following operations such as phonebook registration from the list of PushTalk call parties.

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- 1 Highlight a redial 1
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: 2

② **1** or **2** ▶ Register the name or address ◀P107, P110

- To add to an existing phonebook entry: **1** or **2** ▶ Select an entry ◀P118

Registering an entry in the PushTalk phonebook: Highlight a redial ▶ **3** ▶

Select Yes

- The party cannot be registered if not registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When a PushTalk redial made to multiple parties or a PushTalk group is highlighted, press **3**, select a party, press and then select *Yes*.

Registering entries in a group in the PushTalk phonebook:

When you made a PushTalk call to multiple parties who are registered in the PushTalk phonebook, you can register these parties as a PushTalk group from the redial data.

① **Highlight a redial** ▶ **4**

② **Enter a group name** ▶

Composing SMS: Highlight a redial ▶ (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.

- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the mail composition screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.
- For PushTalk redial, the above applies when there is only one party.

2 Press

A voice call is made.

- To make a video-phone call:
- To make a PushTalk call:

Press in the list of PushTalk call parties to make a PushTalk call to all the parties.

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted redial:
- The redial dialed by 32K video-phone call is dialed by 64K video-phone call.

INFORMATION

When you switch between a voice call and video-phone call during a call, the call type (voice call/video-phone call) that was specified when you dialed will be recorded in the redial data.

You can make calls by setting conditions. ◀P56

Selecting a multi number registered for the Multi Number service ◀P400

Deleting redials

Delete Redial

1

2 **Highlight a redial** ▶ **5** **1**

- To delete all: **5** **2**
- You can also perform the same operation from the list of PushTalk call parties.

3 **Select Yes**

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

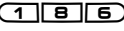


186/184 Call

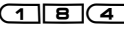


Set whether to make your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's terminal when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's terminal has the ability to display caller ID.

Making calls by adding "186"/"184" to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

Showing your caller ID:  ▶ Enter the other party's phone number ▶  (for voice call) or  (for video-phone call)

Hiding your caller ID:  ▶ Enter the other party's phone number ▶  (for voice call) or  (for video-phone call)

INFORMATION

You can make a call with the same setting by adding "✕ 31#" instead of "186" and "#31#" instead of "184". If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when you make a call, call again by adding "186" or "✕ 31#". When making an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even if "186" is added.

When making a call by adding "186"/"184" to the other party's phone number, the phone number with "186"/"184" added is recorded in the redial data.

Caller ID notification priority ◀P47

Making calls by setting the conditions

This function allows you to select the call type, show/hide your caller ID, select a multi number and append a prefix for each voice/video-phone call.

- When calling to a PushTalk group, you can set only the call type and whether to show/hide your caller ID.
- Setting Additional Numbers (multi number) ◀P400

1 Enter a phone number ▶

- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of recorded messages or voice memos.

2 Select each item to set the dialing conditions

Call Type : Select from *Voice call*, *64K V.phone*, *32K V.phone* or *PushTalk*.

- When *PushTalk* is selected, *Multi No.* and *Prefix* cannot be set.

Caller ID : Set to show/hide caller ID.

- Caller ID notification priority ◀P47, Caller ID notification priority for PushTalk ◀P101

Multi No. : Select from Basic Number and Additional Numbers. When *No specified* is selected, the Multi Number setting is used.

- When *Multi number call* is set to *Disable* in the phone number setting, *Multi No.* cannot be set.

Prefix : Select the number (prefix) appended before the phone number.


- Prefix ◀P58

3 Select Yes

A call is made by the settings.

- When you select **64K V.phone** or **32K V.phone** in *Call Type*, you can select *Chara-den call* to select Chara-den to be displayed during a video-phone call.

INFORMATION



In the redial list, the received call list, the list/details (*TOP/Phone*) screen of FOMA terminal phonebook, the list/details screen of UIM phonebook, the details screen of Own Number, the member list/group list screen of PushTalk phonebook or the member list screen for schedule, press  and select *Call* or *Phone/Msg Call*. In case of international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even when *Notify* is selected for *Caller ID*.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service "WORLD CALL"

- The international call service "WORLD CALL" is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

 Enter the other party's country code ▶ area code ▶ phone number ▶ 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the area code begins with "0", dial without "0". (When calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial "0".)

- You can call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to "WORLD CALL" as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).

- Changes in international call dial procedure

MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.

- Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
- Some billing plans are not available.

"International video-phone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the video-phone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international video-phone line.


Using "WORLD CALL" by simplified dialing


Auto Assist Setting



When *Auto* is set for this setting, entering "+" followed by a country code and phone number makes an international call easily by automatically appending "009130010" for international call.

- If "+" is prefixed to dial followed by the country code of Japan "81", "009130010" for international call is not appended even when *Auto* is set for this setting.

Default Auto

1     2 Press 

- To cancel the setting: 

Making a call using Auto Assist Setting:  (for over a second) ▶ Enter a country code
▶ phone number ▶ 

Setting numbers other than "WORLD CALL"

Prefix

By registering a number to add to the beginning of the phone number (prefix) in advance, you can add a prefix even after entering the phone number to make an international call easily.

- The default setting is "009130010" for international calls. "009130010" can be changed to another prefix.

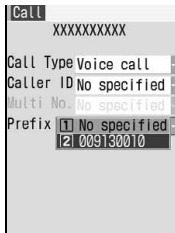
Default 009130010




1     2 Select *Prefix1* to 3 field ▶ Enter a number

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

3 Press 

Selecting a prefix when making a call:



- 1 Enter a country code ▶ phone number
- 2   ▶ Select *Prefix* field
- 3 Select a prefix number
- 4  ▶ Select *Yes*

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.




- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, "V-Live".

Default ON

1  **8** **6** **8** **4**

2 Press **1**

- To cancel the setting: **2**

Making a call by specifying a sub-address: Enter a phone number ▶  ▶ Enter a sub-address ▶  (for a voice call) or  (for a video-phone call)

- The sub-address needs to be set for the other party's terminal or communication device.

INFORMATION

Even when Sub Address is *ON*, if "✳" is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or "#", it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "✳".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting a voice call, video-phone call or PushTalk call interrupted by poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building when signal conditions improve.

- The other party's voice is not heard while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. (The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.)
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

Default High alarm

1  **8** **6** **9** **2** ▶ **1** to **3**

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function be usually set to *ON*.

Default ON

1  **8** **6** **9** **1**

2 Press **1**

- To cancel the setting: **2**

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device by connecting FOMA terminal via USB to such device as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

The display and ring tone for incoming calls follow the FOMA terminal settings.

If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring tone sounds from a handsfree device regardless of whether Silent Mode is on or the ring tone settings on FOMA terminal.

The operation during incoming calls in Public mode (Driving mode) follows the Public mode (Driving mode) settings.

If a video-phone call is made from a handsfree compatible device using the phonebook or redial data, the communication speed set from the handsfree compatible device is used. If it is not set, the video-phone call is made at fixed 64K.






When a video-phone call is made/received from a handsfree compatible device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.

The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.

If the setting is made to play sounds from FOMA terminal, the operation when FOMA terminal is closed during a call follows Close Setting. If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.


Receiving calls

The procedures for receiving voice calls and the common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

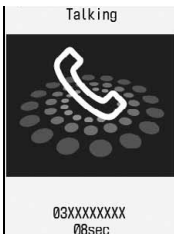
- For voice calls, calls can also be answered by pressing  to , , and  other than  (Any Key Answer). ●P63

1 A call is received




The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights/flashes.

- To put the call on hold (Response and Hold): 

2



You can talk. The call duration is displayed.

- To put the call on hold (On-hold): 
- To turn on the speakerphone function:  or 
- You can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ●P63

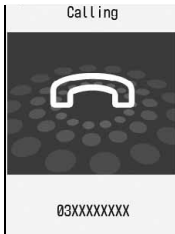
3 when you finish the call

- To end the call by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Display information

The caller's phone number, name, image or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller and the FOMA terminal settings. The name or phone number can be set not to be displayed. ●P141

When the other party has sent their caller ID



When the phone number of the other party is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number and the image set in Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting are displayed.



If the phone number of the other party is already registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. In addition, when Contact Image is *ON*, the image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. ●P140

When the other party's caller ID is not notified

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
<i>User unset</i>	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
<i>Payphone</i>	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
<i>Not support</i>	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on connecting phone companies.)

When a voice call arrives, an incoming operation or image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized. When a video-phone call comes in, an incoming image operates according to Incoming Videophone Setting.

Operations while receiving calls

When there is an incoming voice call, you can perform the following operations from the submenu. (When you set Arrival Call Act to *Answer*, the same operation can also work when there is another incoming call during a call.)

Submenu item	Description
① <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
② <i>Voice Mail</i> ^{*1}	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
③ <i>Call Forwarding</i> ^{*2}	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.

*2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

- (for over a second): Answer by Answer Machine (Quick Record Message)
- : Stop the ring tone/vibrator
- : Adjust the ring volume

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service *1	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P392
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.	P394
Call Forwarding Service *1	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.	P395

- *1 This service can be selected when you set Arrival Call Act to *Answer* and activate it in Arrival Act Setting.
- If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you cannot answer calls even if you hear beeps.

INFORMATION

For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ●P165, P164

Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ●P162

Telephones that do not support dialing out-of-town calls such as in-building phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.

When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.

Even if video/i-motion is set to the image for incoming calls in the phonebook or Incoming Call Setting, it is not played and the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during a voice call. When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.

Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the side which made the voice call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the voice call.
- To receive the request of switching to a video-phone call, set *Indication ON* of Notify Switchable Mode. ●P91

1 Receive the request of switching to a video-phone call during a voice call



- A guidance informing that the call is switched is played during switching.

2 Select YES

The call is switched to a video-phone call and your self image is sent to the other party.

- To send the substitute image to the other party: Select *NO*
- When you select *YES*, your self image is sent for the first time.

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing **[0]** to **[9]**, **[*]** or **[#]** other than **[☎]**.

- This function is available for voice calls and PushTalk calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default **ON**

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[5]**

2 Press **[1]**

- To cancel the setting: **[2]**

Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal

Open Answer

- This function is available only for voice calls (available even while Key Lock is on).

Default **OFF**

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[8]** **[5]**

2 Press **[1]**

- To cancel the setting: **[2]**

Disconnecting/continuing/holding a call by closing FOMA terminal

Close Setting

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.
- You can end a PushTalk call by closing FOMA terminal. Use PushTalk Close Setting to set it.

Default **Continue**

1 **[Menu]** **[8]** **[6]** **[9]** **[5]**

2 **[1]** to **[3]**

End the call : Ends the call.

Continue : Continues the call.

On hold : Puts the call on hold. The other party hears a guidance (on-hold tone).

INFORMATION

When **Continue** is set, the same image will be sent even if you close FOMA terminal.

When **On hold** is set, the operations are as follows:

- If you close FOMA terminal during a video-phone call while sending a still image or your image with frame on it, the still image or frame will be canceled after the hold is released.
- If you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF), the call is not put on hold.
- If you close FOMA terminal while switching between a voice call and video-phone call, the call is not put on hold.

When you close FOMA terminal during a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or other handsfree compatible devices (available in market) connected, the call continues regardless of this function's setting if the settings is made to play sounds from the connected device. Even if you remove the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or handsfree compatible device in this state, the call will continue.

When you close FOMA terminal while recording a message, the recording is continued regardless of this setting.

This setting is applied when FOMA terminal is closed while recording a talking voice memo/movie memo. When *On hold* is set, the contents which were being recorded by just before putting on hold are saved.

Using Received Calls

The calls and PushTalk calls that you received, and unanswered calls (missed calls) are recorded in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time are not recorded in the received call history.

Example Making a call from the received call history

1 Highlight a received call in the list

The screenshot shows a list of received calls. The first call is highlighted. The details for this call are: Phone number, name*1, reason for no caller ID (P61), Date and time of receiving, phone number (the ringing time is also displayed for missed calls), image*2 of the highlighted party, Name of the multi number specified*3, and PushTalk type. The PushTalk type is shown as a small icon. Below the list, a legend explains the icons: a person icon for Received PushTalk call (one party), a group of people icon for Received PushTalk call (more than one party), a person with a plus icon for Received PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (one party) (P94), a group of people with a plus icon for Received PushTalk call using PushTalkPlus (more than one party) (P94), a video camera icon for Received video-phone call, a person with a plus icon for Received PushTalk call, a data icon for Received 64K data communication, a globe icon for Received international call, a person with a checkmark icon for Missed call (unread), a person with a checkmark and a plus icon for Missed call (read), a document icon for Recorded message exists, and a document with a plus icon for Recorded message is deleted.

*1 When the phone number is registered in the phonebook

*2 When the image is registered in the phonebook (the first member's image for PushTalk call)

*3 When you subscribe to the Multi Number service (the name of Basic Number or Additional Number specified for the received call)




- To switch between the received call/redial list:
- To display the list of PushTalk call parties: Highlight a received PushTalk call
- You can also perform the following operations such as phonebook registration from the list of PushTalk call parties.

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- 1 Highlight a received call 1
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: 2
- 2 or 2 Register the name or address P107, P110
 - To add to an existing phonebook entry: 1 or 2 Select an entry P118






Registering an entry in the PushTalk phonebook: Highlight a received call

Select *Yes*

- The party cannot be registered if not registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When a received PushTalk call made to multiple parties is highlighted, press  , select a party, press  and then select *Yes*.


Registering entries in a group in the PushTalk phonebook:

When you received a PushTalk call made to multiple parties who are registered in the PushTalk phonebook, you can register these parties as a PushTalk group from the received call history.




- ① **Highlight a received call**   
- ② **Enter a group name**  

Composing SMS: Highlight a received call (for over a second)


The SMS composition screen with the phone number of the received call specified as the address appears.

- If the phone number of the received call is registered in the phonebook together with the mail address, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the mail composition screen is displayed with the phone number of the received call specified as the address.
- For received PushTalk call, the above applies when there is only one party.

2 or

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted received call: 
 - To make a PushTalk call: 
- Press  in the list of PushTalk call parties to make a PushTalk call to all the parties.


Unanswered calls including PushTalk calls (missed calls)







 with the number of missed calls is indicated and the call is recorded in the received call history.

☛P35

- When *Indicator light* in Alert Lighting Setting is set to *ON*, the call indicator flashes until the received calls are displayed.
- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving the phone number in the received call history.

INFORMATION

If only missed calls within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting are recorded as received calls, pressing  on the stand-by display displays a confirmation screen notifying you of received calls not displayed. When *Yes* is selected, the missed calls within the set delay time are displayed.

Press   on the received call list to display the missed calls within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting. To return to the previous received calls, press   and to display all the received calls, press  .

Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.

When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call history up to that point are deleted. However, the calls received after that are recorded in the received call history, and calls can be made using the received call history during PIM Lock.




When you switch between the voice call and video-phone call during a call, the call type (voice call/video-phone call) that was specified when you received it will be recorded in the received call history.




You can make calls by setting conditions. ☛P56

Selecting a multi number registered for the Multi Number service ☛P400

Deleting received calls

Delete Received Calls

1 2 Highlight a received call   

- To delete all:   
- You can also perform the same operation from the list of PushTalk call parties.

3 Select *Yes*

Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice

Volume Setting


The volume of the caller's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).







- The set volume is also reflected to the volume of keypad sounds and playback sounds of recorded messages and voice memos.
- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

Default LEVEL 4

Adjusting during a call

1  during a call

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- When the speakerphone function is on, the volume of the speakerphone is adjusted.
- To turn up the volume:  or 
- To turn down the volume:  or 
- To adjust the volume during a video-phone call:  

Adjusting in stand-by

1      to adjust the volume 

Adjusting the ring volume

Ring Volume Setting

Adjust the ring volume for call, mail and Message R/F, and the volume of alert that plays when ToruCa is received.


- The ring volume can be adjusted from 7 levels, *Silent* and level 1 to level 6. You can also set *STEPTONE* (the volume of ring tone changes into *Silent* level 1 ... level 6 about every 3 seconds) in stand-by.
- For the alert volume for ToruCa, *STEPTONE* cannot be set.
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when the call is ended.
- The ring volume changed while in stand-by is retained even if the power is turned off.





- The ring volume for calls is also reflected to the volume of the sound that plays when confirming the battery level, i- ppli sound and schedule alarm. Note that when **STEPTONE** is set, the volume of the battery level confirmation sound and i- ppli sound is level 4.

Default Ring alert: LEVEL 4 Msg. alert: LEVEL 4 ToruCa receive alert: LEVEL 4

Adjusting the ring volume while receiving a call

1 while receiving a call

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- To turn up the volume:  or 
- To turn down the volume:  or 


INFORMATION

To stop the ring tone and vibrator:  while receiving a call

If **STEPTONE** is set for the ring volume for calls, the change begins with level 6 when you adjust the volume while receiving a call.

Adjusting in stand-by





Example Adjusting the ring volume for calls

1  **8** **1** **2** **1**

Adjusting the ring volume for mail:  **8** **1** **2** **2**



Adjusting the alert volume for ToruCa:  **8** **1** **2** **3**

2

- To set to **STEPTONE**:  or 
- To set to **Silent**:  or 

3 Press

INFORMATION

 is indicated on the stand-by display when the ring volume for calls is set to **Silent**. If the vibrator for voice call is set at the same time,  is indicated.

When the alert volume for ToruCa is changed in this setting, the setting for **Receive alert volume** in ToruCa Setting is also changed.

Menu 8222 / Menu 8224

Setting operations for incoming voice/video-phone/PushTalk calls


Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming PushTalk Setting


- The settings of this function are also reflected to the voice/video-phone/PushTalk call in Sound Setting and Vibrator Setting, and the incoming voice/video-phone/PushTalk call in Alert Lighting Setting.
- For Incoming PushTalk Setting, **Show image** cannot be set.

Default Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) (Incoming Call Setting), Melody/ 電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) (Incoming Videophone Setting), Melody/ パターン 3(Pattern 3) (Incoming PushTalk Setting)
 Show image: Standard image Vibrator/Vibrate alert: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

1  **8** **6** **2**

Setting operations when receiving a video-phone call:  **8** **7** **2**

Setting operations when receiving a PushTalk call:  **8** **8** **1**

2 Select each item to set

Ring alert : Sets a ring tone for an incoming call.

- When you select **OFF**, no ring tone emits.
- When you select **Melody** or **Movie ringtone**, select a melody or video/i-motion.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call.

- When **Select image** is selected, select **Select image** in **List images** field to set an image.
- When **i-motion** is selected, select a video/i-motion from the folder list. If the folder list is not displayed, select **Select image** in **List images** field.

Vibrator/Vibrate alert :

Sets operation of the vibrator for an incoming call.

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting **▶P126**

3 Press

INFORMATION

Setting Created animation for the image displays the first frame.

When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for the ring alert, if the incoming image is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by **ノブターン 1** (for voice call) or **電話・メロディ A** (for video-phone call).

Some video/i-motion may be unable to be set for the image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set. Even if **Sync melody** is set for **Lighting**, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

For Incoming PushTalk Setting, only the video/i-motion with sound only can be set for the ring alert.

Setting the priority screen for incoming calls during a call or packet communication

Priority Comm Mode

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- A screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

Default **No Set Up**

1  **8** **6** **8** **1**

2 **1** to **3**

No Set Up : Displays the screen for the latest incoming call/communication without setting the priority.

Voice call : Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

Packet : Displays the packet communication screen by priority.

- When there is incoming packet communication in i-mode, the voice call talking screen is displayed by priority regardless of this setting.

Screen display

The following screen is displayed depending on the setting for Priority Comm Mode:

Setting	Incoming packet communication during voice call (other than i-mode)*1, *2	Incoming voice call during packet communication*3
No Set Up	Screen displayed during a voice call	Screen displayed during incoming voice call
Voice call		
Packet	Screen displayed during incoming packet communication	Screen displayed during i-mode communication

*1 The screen displayed during incoming calls depends on Arrival Call Act. ◀P399

*2 Packet communication in modes other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F.

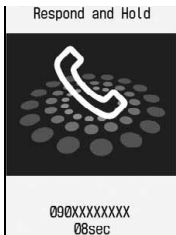
*3 Packet communications in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communication.
◀P461

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold







Incoming video-phone call on hold


The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance.

For video-phone calls, the response hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.

2 when you are ready to answer the call

- For a voice call, you can answer the call also by opening FOMA terminal. ◀P63
- Press  or  for a video-phone call. Press  to send the substitute image to the other party. ◀P90
- If  is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

When you use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can switch to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding by pressing  and selecting *Voice Mail* or *Call Forwarding* while receiving a call.

Setting a response hold guidance


Status Message

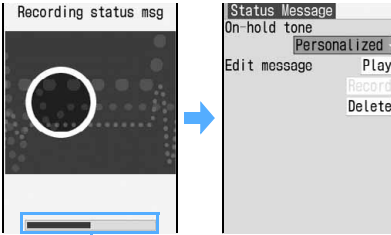
You can record your own voice as a response hold guidance.

- One guidance of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or video-phone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

Default Standard


Example Setting a recorded guidance

- 1  **8** **6** **4**
- 2 Select **On-hold tone** field ▶ **2**
 - To reset to the default guidance: **1** ▶ Go to Step 4
- 3 Select **Record in Edit message** field ▶ **Speak a response hold guidance after a start tone**



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop the recording: 
- To check the recorded guidance: Select **Play**
- **Record** cannot be selected when a recorded guidance has already been registered. Select **Delete**, select **Yes** and record after deleting the recorded guidance.

- 4 Press 

INFORMATION

If **Standard** is set, the guidance “I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)” is played for the other party during Response and Hold.

If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is returned.



Setting an on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

While a voice or video-phone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.

- The setting of this function is also reflected to the on-hold tone in Sound Setting.

Default 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)

- 1  **8** **6** **9** **3**
- 2 **2** or **3**
 - To reset to the default melody: **1**
 - To play a melody: 

INFORMATION


The volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.

The melody applicable to 3D sound set as on-hold tone may be heard deteriorated to the other party.

Using Public mode (Driving mode)


Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode (Driving mode) is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated and a call is received, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is driving or in an area (bus, train, movie theater, etc.) where use of the phone should be refrained and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode (Driving mode) can be activated/canceled only in stand-by (including when  is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode (Driving mode) you can make calls as normal.
- This function cannot be used during data communication.


Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1 (for over a second)


Public mode (Driving mode) is activated and  appears.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying “The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later”.

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence.

Canceling:  (for over a second)

When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated

No ring tone plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call.  appears on the screen and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained and the call is then ended.

- When a PushTalk call is received, FOMA terminal does not answer it and the connected members are informed that you are driving.

Receiving calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network services activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving video-phone calls
Voice Mail Service	The other party hears the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The other party hears the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance has been set to on, the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance is played. When the guidance has been set to off, no guidance is played.	The other party does not receive a message with image indicating that Public mode (Driving mode) is on and the call is forwarded to the specified destination. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with video-phone, the call is disconnected.
Call Waiting Service	The Public mode (Driving mode) guidance is played and the call is then disconnected.	The Public mode message with image is played and the call is then disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the other party is registered as nuisance caller, a guidance indicating that the call was not connected is played and the call is then disconnected.	If the other party is registered as nuisance caller, a message with image indicating that the call was not connected is played and the call is then disconnected.

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving video-phone calls
Caller ID Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the other party does not notify the caller ID, a guidance requesting caller ID is played and the call is then disconnected. If the other party notifies the caller ID, the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance is played and the call is then disconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the other party does not notify the caller ID, a message with image requesting caller ID is played and the call is then disconnected. If the other party notifies the caller ID, the Public mode (Driving mode) message with image is played and the call is then disconnected.

INFORMATION

In Public mode (Driving mode), the vibrator and call indicator operation are disabled as well as the following sounds:

- Ring tones
- Alarms
- Schedule alarms
- Low battery alert
- i - ppli sounds
- Charge alert
- Alarm for Call Cost Limit*1

* The sound that plays when data is obtained by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer*2

*1 Even if **Alert** for Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.

*2 When **IC card** in Alert Lighting Setting is set to **ON**, the call indicator lights.

The following sounds are played even in Public mode (Driving mode):

- Keypad sound
- Open slide/close slide sound when opening/closing FOMA terminal
- Shutter sound when shooting with the camera

In Public mode (Driving mode), the i-channel information does not scroll on the stand-by display.

Even if mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, the receiving screen or reception result screen is displayed. In addition, if mail or Message R/F is received at this time, the receiving screen is displayed and the reception result is updated when receiving is completed.

When FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the service area, the caller hears a guidance informing out-of-service area instead of the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance.

Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode (Driving mode) cancels Public mode (Driving mode). However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using video-phone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When Public mode (power off) is set and then a call is received with FOMA terminal switched off, a guidance is played and informs the caller that the called party is in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc) where the phone should be turned off and cannot answer the call. Then the call is disconnected.

Activating Public mode (power off)

1 

Public mode (power off) is set. (There will be no change on the display.)

When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.

In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

Canceling: 

Checking the setting: 

When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing “*25250”. The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.

The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

- When a PushTalk call is received, FOMA terminal does not answer it and the connected members are informed that you cannot be connected.

Receiving calls in Public mode (power off) with network services activated

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving video-phone calls
Voice Mail Service	The other party hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.	The call is disconnected without being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The other party hears the Public mode (power off) guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service. When the guidance has been set to on, the Public mode (Driving mode) guidance is played. When the guidance has been set to off, no guidance is played.	The other party does not receive a message with image indicating that Public mode (power off) is on and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with video-phone, the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the other party is registered as nuisance caller, a guidance indicating that the call was not connected is played and the call is then disconnected.	If the other party is registered as nuisance caller, he/she receives a message with image indicating that the call was not connected and the call is then disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the other party does not notify the caller ID, a guidance requesting caller ID is played and the call is then disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, the Public mode (power off) guidance is played and the call is then disconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the other party does not notify the caller ID, he/she receives a message with image requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, he/she receives a message with image indicating that Public mode (power off) is on and the call is then disconnected.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, the greeting will be played and the caller can leave a recorded message when you cannot answer the call.

- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice/video-phone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- For voice calls, the caller's voice is recorded. For video-phone calls, the caller's voice and image are recorded.
- The recording date and time and the phone number are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.
- The greeting in your own voice can be recorded.

- Incoming PushTalk calls cannot be answered by Answer Machine.
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate

1

appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling: while Answer Machine is set

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate this function only once by holding down for over a second while the phone is ringing. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

- For incoming PushTalk calls, you cannot activate Quick Record Message.

INFORMATION

When the number of recorded messages becomes 4, is indicated on the stand-by display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.

If there are already 4 recorded messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down for over a second while the phone is ringing, a warning tone (bleep) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

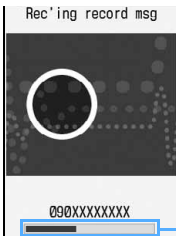
Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call is received

After the ring tone sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting screen is displayed.

- When the greeting message is set to *Preinstalled*, the caller hears the guidance “I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)”. Set *Personalized* to play a recorded guidance.

2 Recording the other party's message starts



Recording a message of voice call







Recording a message of video-phone call

- A beep announces the other party the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

with the number of recorded messages is indicated.

INFORMATION

You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Press  to answer a voice call. For a video-phone call, press  or  to answer by sending your image or  to answer by sending the substitute image. For a voice call, you can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ●P63

If the message is being recorded at this time, the contents before receiving the call will not be recorded. When you are outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service). Answer Machine cannot be started and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to start, each service starts its operation. Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.

The recording may be disrupted or the recording screen may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor. Another call received while recording a message is rejected and recording continues. In this case, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.

When **Indicator light** is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes until the unplayed recorded message is played.

Menu 4713


Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 008 Sec

1   

2 Enter the response time (between 0 and 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the entered values: 

INFORMATION

When Auto Answer (when a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, those priorities change with the ringing times set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.

The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine.

Menu 4714

Setting a greeting message

Greeting Setting

You can record your own voice as a greeting message.

- One greeting of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1   

2 Select **Set Greeting field** ▶

- To reset to the default greeting:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select **Record in Edit greeting field** ▶ **Speak a greeting message after a start tone**

- The operation procedure is the same as when recording a response hold guidance. ●P69

4 Press


INFORMATION

If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is returned.

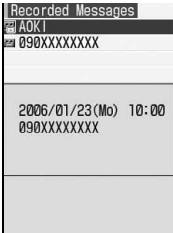
Menu 472

Playing recorded messages





You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

- Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the stand-by display.  P35

1



On the recorded message list screen, the date and time of recording and the other party's phone number appear.




- : Unplayed recorded message of a voice call
- : Unplayed recorded message of a video-phone call
- : Played recorded message of a voice call
- : Played recorded message of a video-phone call
- When the caller's phone number is notified, the phone number is displayed and when the caller's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed. When the caller is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play









Indication of the playing time

Playing a message of voice call

- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Stop
 - : Speakerphone on/off (for messages of voice calls only)

Deleting:



- 1 **Highlight a recorded message**    





- To delete all:   





- 2 **Select Yes**

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

- 1 **Highlight a recorded message**   

- To add to an existing phonebook entry:  




- 2  or   **Register the name or address**  P107, P110

- To add to an existing phonebook entry:  or   Select an caller  P118

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message

- To delete the recorded message: Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

Highlight an entry in the recorded message list, and press  to make a voice call or  to make a video-phone call. Also, you can make calls by setting conditions.  P56

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Video-phone	78
Making video-phone calls	78
Receiving video-phone calls	82
Using Chara-den	83
Setting images to be sent to the other party	84
Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call	88
Changing the video-phone settings	Videophone Settings 89
Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call	Notify Switchable Mode 91
Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device	External Device 92

Video-phone

The video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's video-phone. By using the video-phone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images. It is also possible to display a still image, substitute image, Chara-den, etc. instead of your self image.

DoCoMo video-phone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with the video-phones of different specifications can not be established.

- *1 3G-324M...An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile video-phone
- *2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)...Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following 2 communication speeds are provided for the video-phone:
 - 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps. • 32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a video-phone call



1	Main screen	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
2	Communication speed	: 64K : 32K
3	Speakerphone function	No icon: Off : On
4	Sub screen	Your image is displayed by default.
5	Zoom	to : Normal to 16 x (out-camera) to : Normal to 2 x (in-camera)
6	Status	: Sending your self image : Sending the camera-off image : Sending Chara-den : Sending a frame : Sending a still image : On-hold : On Response and Hold : Recording a message : Recording a movie memo
	Action mode	: Action : Action of parts
7	Scene mode/ effect	: Full auto, etc. The icons for other modes/effects P85
8	Compact light	No icon: Turn light off : Turn light on
9	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Normal : Prefer image quality : Prefer motion speed
10	Sound/image sending and receiving status	: Sending and receiving sound : Sending and receiving image : Sending and receiving sound/image
11	Macro mode	No icon: Off : On (out-camera)
12	Switch to v-phone	No icon: Switching is not available. : Switching is available.
13	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making video-phone calls

- International video-phone calls are available by using the DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". P57
- If the message indicating that the call cannot be connected is displayed when making a video-phone call, set Caller ID Notification on and dial again.



1 Enter a phone number

- Entering method is the same as for the voice calls.

2






Your image is displayed while being connected.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear a busy signal. The message, *Busy*, or *Connection failed*, is displayed on the screen. Press  to end the call and call again later. You can call back quickly by using Redial.
- When the substitute image is Chara-den, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.  P90
- The charging begins when *Connected to videophone* is displayed.

3 Talk with the other party




The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).











- To put the call on hold: 
- To turn on/off the speakerphone function:  or 
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, change the setting in Videophone Settings or activate Silent Mode.

4 when you finish the call


- To end the video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the settings in Close Setting.

Operations during video-phone calls

The following operations can be performed from the submenu. Hold down  for over a second during a video-phone call to record the other party's voice and image (Movie Memo).

Submenu item	Description	Page
 <i>Change to voice</i>	Switches from a video-phone call to a voice call.	P81
 <i>Camera settings</i>	Applies effects to the image to be sent and adjusts its brightness, color density and flicker.	P85 P86
 <i>Frame/ Subst. image</i>	Adds a frame on the image to be sent or sends Chara-den or a still image.	P83 P85 P86
 <i>Macro ON/ Macro OFF</i>	Switches between the macro mode and normal mode.	P87
 <i>Light ON/Light OFF</i>	Switches the compact light on/off.	P88
 <i>Switch camera view</i>	Switches between the in-camera and out-camera.	P87
 <i>Image quality</i>	Sets the quality of sent and received images.	P84
 <i>V. phone settings</i>	Changes settings for the screen to be displayed during video-phone calls.	P88
 <i>Send DTMF</i>	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during video-phone calls.	P81
 <i>Volume</i>	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	P66

INFORMATION

You can also make a video-phone call by performing in order of Steps 2, Step 1. When  is pressed and the phone number is entered, the video-phone call is made automatically after about 5 seconds.

When *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you make a video-phone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select *YES* or *NO*.

When you talk on a video-phone call while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of *Speakerphone* in Videophone Settings.

Please note that digital communication charges apply for video-phone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.

If a video-phone call cannot be made, the following message is displayed on the screen and then the stand-by display returns. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
<i>Check number, then redial.</i>	You dialed the phone number not used.
<i>Busy.</i>	The other party is busy or during a packet communication.
<i>Out of service area/power off.</i>	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
<i>Set caller ID to ON.</i>	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to V-Live or visualnet).
<i>Redial using voice call.</i>	This message is displayed when the other party sets Voice Mail Service or sets Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination is the terminal which is not compatible with video-phone.
<i>Connection failed.</i>	Set Caller ID Notification to <i>Notify</i> and dial again. • The message may appear in cases other than the above.

Video-phone via 32K line is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which video-phone calls via 64K line may not be available depending on the network condition. When a video-phone call is made via 64K line, the call type is automatically switched to via 32K for redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K area. When *ON* is set for *Auto redial as voice*, redialing via 32K line is also given priority. ●P89

• If a call is made via 32K line, the charge is the same as digital communication charge via 64K.

If a video-phone call made is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Auto redial as voice setting	Redialing operation
64K	ON	64K 32K Voice call
	OFF	64K 32K Disconnection
32K	ON	32K Voice call
	OFF	32K Disconnection

When a video-phone call has been made by specifying a multi number, redialing will be made with the specified number.



The auto redial as voice function is provided to ensure the connection to the other party. ●P89

• If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.

If a video-phone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call automatically switches to a voice call.

You can make video-phone calls by setting conditions. ●P56

When there is an incoming call during dialing or redialing a video-phone call, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring tone may sound.

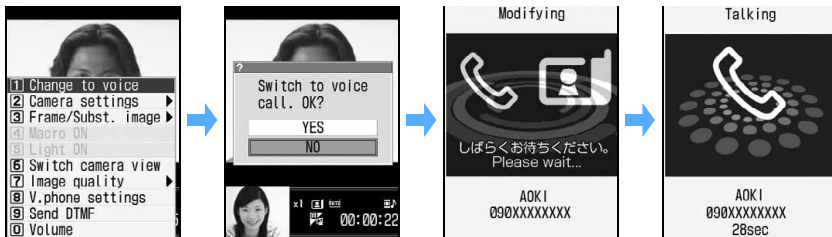
Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (only voice) or  (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.

Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

You can switch to a voice call by operating from the submenu during a video-phone call when the other terminal is compatible with switching calls. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the video-phone call.

- This operation can be performed between the terminals that support switching between voice call/video-phone call.
- To switch to a voice call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ●P91

1 1 during a video-phone call ▶ Select YES



- A guidance informing that the call is switched is played during switching.
- Select **NO** to return to the video-phone talking screen.




INFORMATION

For precautions when switching between a voice and video-phone call, see INFORMATION in “Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call”. ●P53

Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call ●P53

Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)



Send DTMF

You can input tone signals (DTMF) while sending your self image () , the camera-off image () or Chara-den () .



- The signals may not be received depending on the device of receiver side.

1 9 during a call ▶ Enter with dial keys

The entered number is displayed and the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF): 
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted by pressing dial keys only even without pressing  9 while your self image is being sent.
- When the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the set frame and still image are canceled.
- Because tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.


Receiving video-phone calls

- You cannot receive a video-phone call by pressing the keys other than  or  (Any Key Answer is unavailable).

1 A call is received



The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights/flashes.

- The other party's phone number, name, image or video/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller or the FOMA terminal settings.
- To put the incoming call on hold: 

2 or



Your image is displayed while being connected.

Receiving a video-phone call with the substitute image:




The substitute image is sent to the other party when the video-phone call is connected.

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image setting is sent to the other party.

3 Talk with the other party



The other party's voice comes out of the speaker (Speakerphone function).

- To put the call on hold: 
- To turn on/off the speakerphone function:  or 
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- To disable turning on the speakerphone function automatically, change the setting in Videophone Settings or activate Silent Mode.

4 when you finish the call




- To end the video-phone call by closing FOMA terminal, change the settings in Close Setting.

Operations while receiving calls

You can perform the following operations from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description
1 <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
2 <i>Call Forwarding*1</i>	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding phone number has been set.

- You can operate FOMA terminal with the following keys while receiving a call:
 -  (for over a second): Record a message (Quick Record Message)
 - : Stop the ring tone/vibrator
 - : Adjust the ring volume

INFORMATION

When *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings and Silent Mode is active, if you receive a video-phone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select *YES* or *NO*.

When a video-phone call arrives while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting for *Speakerphone* in Videophone Settings.

When a video-phone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to a video-phone terminal compliant with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.

Changing the operation when a video-phone call arrives ◀P67

Receiving a call by switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

- The switching operation can be performed only from the side which made the video-phone call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the video-phone call.
- To receive the request of switching to a voice call, set *Indication ON* of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ▶P91

1 Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a video-phone call



The video-phone call is switched to a voice call automatically.

- A guidance informing that the call is switched is played during switching.

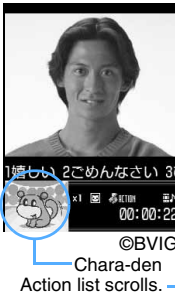
Menu 54

Using Chara-den

A character can be sent instead of your image when making a video-phone call. The character can be moved by pressing dial keys during a video-phone call. Some characters move their mouth in time with the sounds picked up by the microphone.

1 during a call

2 Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den



- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den as the substitute image, the character performs the action in accordance with the number of the keys. The following operations can also be performed:



: Cancel action



: Display the action list (Selecting action moves the character.)



(for over a second) : Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)

- The action list of Chara-den set by default ▶P335

INFORMATION

For details on making a video-phone call after displaying Chara-den or on setting Chara-den as the video-phone substitute image, see "Displaying Chara-den". ●P334
 Some Chara-den has no actions.

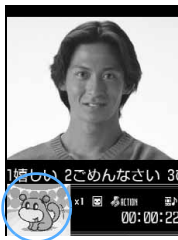
Setting images to be sent to the other party

The following items can be set:




Item	Page	Item	Page
Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image	P84	Sending the still image/camera-off image	P86
Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images	P84	Switching display magnifications	P87
Setting a frame on the outgoing image	P85	Switching the in-camera and out-camera	P87
Applying special effects to outgoing images	P85	Switching the camera to the macro mode	P87
Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing images	P86	Turning the compact light on	P88

Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image

1 during a call



©BVIIG
 The substitute image

- Each press switches the image between your self image() and the substitute image ( or ). ●P90
- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not be displayed. If this happens, the default image for the substitute image in Image Setting is sent to the other party. ●P90

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images




- Setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.
- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.

Default Normal

Example Setting the quality of outgoing image

1 during a call

- Pressing  during a call also switches the quality of outgoing images.

Setting the quality of incoming image:    during a call

2 to

Setting a frame on the outgoing image

Frame

The frame can be set while sending your self image.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller can be selected. As for the downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) can be selected.

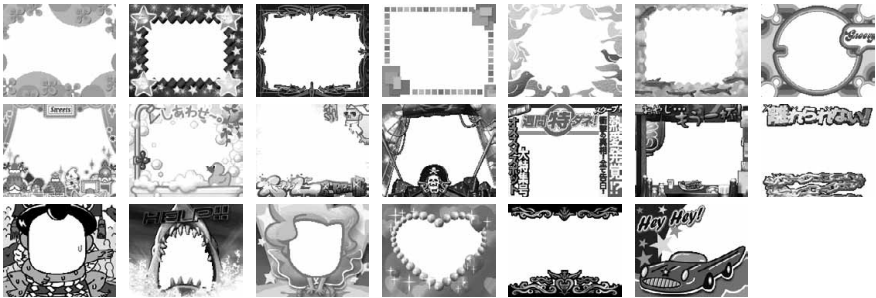
1 during a call

2 Select a frame



- While the in-camera is used, the mirror image (left-right reversed image) is displayed on the screen and the normal image (right directed image) is sent to the other party. While the out-camera is used, the same image as displayed on the screen is sent to the other party.
- To cancel sending the frame:

Frames set by default



- You can download the default frames from the i-mode site “My D-style”, if you have deleted them.
 P295

Applying special effects to outgoing images

Scene Mode/Effect

You can apply the following effects to outgoing images. These settings can be changed only while sending your self image.

Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon	Item	Icon
Full auto		Night		Letter		Soft touch	
Sensitivity up		Twilight		Color reversal		Mono tone (red)	
Super sensitivity up		Surf&Snow		Painting		Mono tone (green)	
Adjust backlight		Sport		Woodcut		Mono tone (blue)	
Spot photometry		Pet		Whiten		Monochrome	
Scenery		Gourmet		Suntan		Sepia	

- For details P185

[Default](#) [Full auto](#)

1 during a call

Next

2 [1] to [9], [0], [*] or [#]



• Press [↺] to switch the pages.

The effect currently applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing images Camera Settings

You can adjust the brightness and color density in 5 levels. Also, you may be able to control the flicker of images, if it occurs, by making settings according to the power supply frequency in your area.

- This setting can be changed only while sending your self image.
- The brightness and color density may be unable to be changed depending on the setting for Screen Mode/Effect.
- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Default Brightness: Level 3 Density: Level 3 Flicker adjustment: Auto

1 [Menu] [2] during a call ▶ Select an item Adjusting brightness and color density:



- 1 [2] ▶ Highlight *Brightness* slider ▶ [↺]
- 2 [↻] to highlight *Density* slider ▶ [↺] ▶ [↻]

- Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting. You can check the change of brightness or color density as you shift the slider's position.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

Adjusting flicker: [3] ▶ [1] to [3]

- The flicker adjustment setting for Camera will reflect changes in this setting.

Sending the still image/camera-off image

Select a still image or the image displayed as *Camera off* (camera-off image).

- This setting is not available while the frame is being sent (P85).
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from FOMA terminal can be set. Images prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) P350

1 [Menu] [3] during a call ▶ Select an item Sending the camera-off image: [3]

- When the camera-off image is set, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent. However, if Chara-den is set as the substitute image, the default image (camera-off image) is sent.

Sending a still image: 4 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a still image



- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶
- To display the previous image: while sending a still image

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default Normal

1 during a call

- Each press of switches the magnification of image as follows. Press to switch in the reverse order.

Out-camera: Normal () 2 x () 4 x () 6 x () 8 x ()
 10 x () 12 x () 16 x ()
 In-camera : Normal () 2 x ()

INFORMATION

Zooming will be canceled if you switch between the in-camera and out-camera.

Switching the in-camera and out-camera

- Available only while your self image is being sent.

Default In-camera

1 during a call

The image through the switched camera is sent.



In-camera selected



Out-camera selected


- Each press switches between the in-camera and out-camera.
- Even if you switch the cameras, the frame and the brightness/color density/flicker settings of outgoing image are kept.
- Open the lens cover when switching to the out-camera. If you close the lens cover while using the out-camera, the substitute image is sent to the other party. If you open the lens cover while *Open lens cover.* is being displayed, your self image is sent.

Switching the camera to the macro mode

You can switch to the macro mode and adjust the focus of the image when sending the image of objects about 7 to 11 cm away.

- You can switch the camera to the macro mode only when the out-camera is used.

Default Macro OFF

1  **4** during a call


- To turn off the macro mode:  **4**

INFORMATION


If you switch the camera to the in-camera in the macro mode, the camera returns to the normal mode.

Turning the compact light on

- You can switch the compact light on only when the out-camera is used.
- The compact light may go out temporarily depending on the setting operation while talking.

1  **5** during a call

The compact light is turned on. If the light has been turned on, it goes out.

- Each press switches the compact light between on () and off (no icon).

Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call**Switching between the main screen and sub screen**

- The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Main screen image: Other party's image Sub screen image: Your self image

1  during a call


- Each press switches the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen : Other party's image ↔ Main screen : Your self image
 Sub screen : Your self image ↔ Sub screen : Other party's image

Changing the main screen size

- The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Large


1  (for over a second) during a call

- Each press switches the screen size in the following order: Large standard small large ...

Setting the screen to be displayed during a call Videophone Settings during a call

- The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Display light: Always on (normal)

1  **8** during a call**2** Select each item to set

- For setting each item, follow Step 2 in "Changing the video-phone settings". ◀P89

3 Press 

Changing the video-phone settings

Video-phone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a video-phone call is not connected and the screen displayed during a video-phone call. You can also set whether to send your self image to the other party for outgoing calls.

- The auto redial as voice function is provided to make the access to the other party for sure. Setting this function on switches the call type to voice call by redialing automatically when the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or cannot receive a video-phone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing does not occur, however, if you call an ISDN-sync 64 kbps or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN video-phone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of October, 2005), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

Default Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size : Large
Send camera image: ON Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)
Speakerphone: ON



2 Select each item to set

- Auto redial as voice** : Sets whether to redial a voice call automatically when a video-phone call is not connected.
- Display setting** : Specifies whether to display either your self image or the other party's image or both images during a video-phone call.
- If you set other than **Both sides**, **Sub screen** cannot be set.
- Sub screen** : Specifies whether to display your self image or the other party's image on the sub screen during a video-phone call.
- Screen size** : Sets the main screen view size.
- Send camera image** : Specifies whether to send your self image to the other party for outgoing calls.
- When **OFF** is set, the image set in the substitute image setting will be sent.
- Visual preference** : Sets the image quality on the other party's screen.
- Display light** : Sets the display light during a video-phone call.
- When **Terminal settings** is set, it operates according to the setting for Display Light Setting (▶P141).
- Speakerphone** : Specifies whether to turn on the speakerphone function automatically once a video-phone call is connected.

3 Press

INFORMATION

Even when **Auto redial as voice** is set to **ON**, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or network.

When **Auto redial as voice** is set to **ON**, if you make a video-phone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to a video-phone call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a video-phone call and redialing is not performed, either. If redialing as voice call occurs with **Auto redial as voice** set to **ON**, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.

When **Speakerphone** is set to **ON** in this setting and Silent Mode is active, if you make a video-phone call, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to switch to the speakerphone call. Select **YES** or **NO**.

Setting the image to be displayed during video-phone calls

Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a video-phone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and movie memo image.

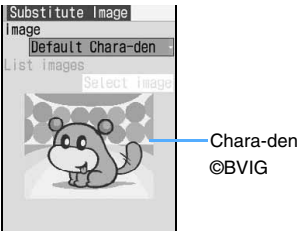
- You cannot set the following images:
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
 - Animation and Created animation
 - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF formats
 - Image that is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ▶P350

Setting the substitute image

Default Default Chara-den

1 (Menu) 8 7 4

2 1 ▶ Select Image field



Setting the default Chara-den: 1

Default Chara-den (ブンブン (Dimo)) is set.

Setting the default still image: 2

Default image (camera-off image) is set.

Setting other Chara-den:

① 3 ▶ Select Select image

② Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den

- To display Chara-den: Highlight Chara-den ▶ (Enter)

Setting other still images:

① 4 ▶ Select Select image

② Select a folder ▶ Select a still image

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶ (Enter)
- The selected image overlapped with text message is displayed on the other party's terminal.

3 Press (Enter)

INFORMATION

If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default Chara-den*. If the still image or the default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to *Default image*.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/movie memo images

Default Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default

1 (Menu) 8 7 4

2 2 to 5

3 Select *Image* field ▶ 2



In case of the answer machine image

- To reset to the default image: 1 ▶ Go to Step 5

4 Select *Select image* in *List images* field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

- The operation procedure is same as when setting other still images. ▶ P90, Step 2 in “Setting the substitute image”

5 Press M

Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a video-phone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or video-phone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Indication ON: active

1 M 8 7 6 1

Deactivating: M 8 7 6 2

Checking the current setting: M 8 7 6 3

2 Select *Yes*

Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device

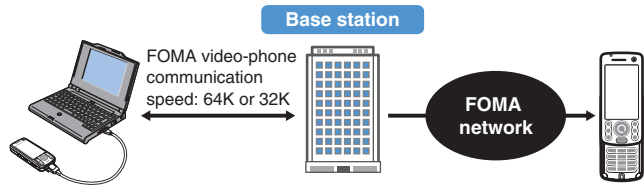
External Device

By connecting FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB cable (optional), you can make and receive video-phone calls from the external device.

If you want to use this function, install a video-phone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

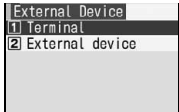
- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of video-phone applications.
- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo video-phone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo video-phone software website. Visit the site below and download it:
<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

Default Terminal



1 **Menu** **8** **7** **5**

2 **1** or **2**



INFORMATION

A video-phone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call. When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, if a video-phone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication is received during a video-phone call using an external device.

PushTalk

What's PushTalk?.....	94
Making PushTalk calls	94
Receiving PushTalk calls.....	96
Registering entries into the PushTalk phonebook	PushTalk Phonebook New Entry 97
Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook.....	99
Deleting members from the PushTalk phonebook	Delete PushTalk Phonebook 100
Setting for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls	101

What's PushTalk?

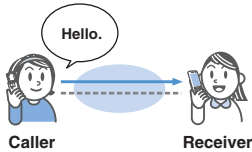
The PushTalk button (P) allows you to communicate with multiple people (up to 5 including yourself) by simple operation. Press the PushTalk button for over a second to make access to the PushTalk phonebook, highlight the parties to talk to and press P. PushTalk communication fee is charged every time you press P and speak.

Hold down P while you are speaking and the other parties only listen to you.

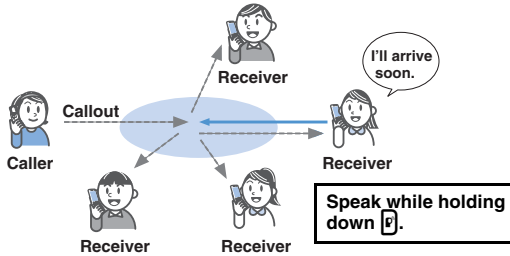
On the screen, you can see who is speaking and the states of the other members. This function is very useful for communication within a group or a brief conversation only to deliver a message.

- This function is only available between DoCoMo terminals that support PushTalk.
- For details about the PushTalk service, see the PushTalk booklet.

Talk between two persons



Talk among multiple persons



PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus is a service in which you can talk to up to 20 persons including you by using a phonebook on the network registered in advance. (P99) This service also provides some useful functions such as allowing you to check the member's state. Note that the optional subscription is needed if you use PushTalkPlus.

For details about how to operate PushTalkPlus, see the separately-provided booklet.

Making PushTalk calls

PushTalk communication screen

The screenshot shows a list of contacts under the heading 'Friends'. The list includes 'AOKI', 'AOKI', 'KISHIDA', and 'KISHIMOTO'. To the right of the list are status icons: a speaker for 'AOKI', a person with a checkmark for 'AOKI', 'KISHIDA', and 'KISHIMOTO', and a person with an 'X' for 'KISHIMOTO'. Below the list are status indicators: 'Calling', 'Connected', 'Disconnected', and 'Driving'. Blue lines connect these elements to explanatory text on the right.

- Member that is speaking now (a name*1, a phone number, *User unset*, *Myself*, a blank (when no party is speaking), or ? (when the speaking party cannot be identified))
- Group name (indicated only on the screen of the party who started group calling)
- The other party's status
 - Calling: Waiting for a response from the other party*2
 - Connected: Participating in PushTalk
 - Disconnected: Not answered during the ringing time/Disconnected PushTalk*2
 - Driving: No response due to Public mode (Driving mode)*2
- Member (a name*1, a phone number, *User unset*)

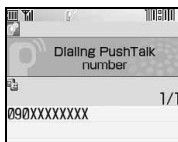
*1 When the member is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook (Name displays P107)

*2 Displayed when 3 or more parties are talking.

1 Enter a phone number

- Do the same as you enter a number for a voice call.

2



When the other party answers, the answering tone sounds like “pico-pico” and PushTalk starts.



PushTalk button

Making a call with the speakerphone function:  (for over a second)



3 Communicate on PushTalk

- When a member answers while 3 or more parties are talking, the connection tone sounds like “picop-pi”.
- When a member exits from PushTalk while 3 or more parties are talking, the disconnection tone sounds like “pipop-po”.


Switching to the speakerphone function:  or 

Speaking:

① Hold down and speak

- When you press , you hear the floor acquisition sound “pico-pico”.
- While another party is speaking, pressing  makes the floor acquisition failure sound “picou” and you cannot speak.

② Release when you finish speaking

- When you release , a tone sounds like “pico-pico” to indicate the end of floor acquisition.
- When the limit of time for the floor acquisition approaches, a tone sounds like “picot-picot” to indicate the floor acquisition is ending.

4 when you end PushTalk

- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

You can make a PushTalk call from the FOMA terminal phonebook, UIM phonebook, redial data, received call history, i- ppli, or scan result of Bar Code Reader. You can also make a PushTalk call from Phone To (AV Phone To) in mail, sites, or ToruCa.

You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication. During PushTalk, you cannot make a voice call or video-phone call to a different party.

When you make a PushTalk call during i-mode, i-mode is disconnected.


When you make a PushTalk call when i- ppli is running, i- ppli is suspended.

Speaking time with a single floor acquisition is limited. When the time limit arrives, the floor acquisition is canceled.


If no party acquires the floor for a certain period of time, PushTalk ends.

If you set *Answer* in PushTalk Arrival Act, a voice call coming in while you are speaking cancels the floor acquisition.

You cannot call an emergency number (110, 119, or 118) during PushTalk.

You can make a PushTalk call by setting conditions. P56







Operation during PushTalk

The following operations can be performed from the submenu. You can change the volume during PushTalk with .

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 Reconnect alarm *1	Set an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a PushTalk call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P59
2 Setting when folded	Set whether to end PushTalk by closing FOMA terminal.	P103
3 PushTalk arv. act	Set the action against an incoming voice call during PushTalk.	P102

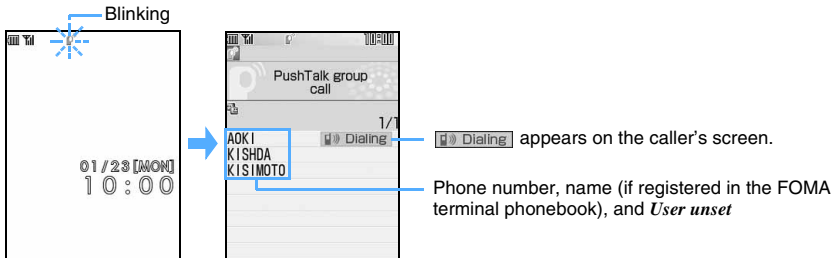
*1 You can change this setting even while the alarm is sounding. The new setting takes effect after the alarm stops.

Receiving PushTalk calls

- You can answer a PushTalk call by pressing  to , , or  as well as  or  (Any Key Answer). ➤P63




1 An incoming PushTalk call is received

The PushTalk ring tone sounds, the display lights, and the call indicator lights or blinks.



2 or

You can answer the PushTalk call and **Connected** is notified to the other party.

- Pressing  disconnects the call without answering it. For a group call, **Disconnected** is notified to each group member before disconnecting the call.
- When PushTalk Auto Answer is set to **ON**, incoming PushTalk calls are automatically answered. Your FOMA terminal is switched to the communication that uses the speakerphone function. In Silent Mode, however, the auto answering function does not work. Answer by pressing  or .

3 Communicate on PushTalk

- For details ➤P95, Step 3 of “Communicating on PushTalk”.

4 when you end PushTalk

- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

Even after you exit from the PushTalk communication, you can rejoin the communication from the received call history while the caller is communicating on PushTalk.


You cannot answer incoming calls during a video-phone call, video-phone call through an external device, data communication, software update, or pattern definition update. The missed calls are not registered in the received call history.


If you receive a PushTalk call during i-mode, the action will be subject to the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT. i-mode cannot be used during PushTalk.


Response and Hold is not possible for PushTalk. Pressing  disconnects the incoming call.

Even if there is a video-phone call, PushTalk call or incoming data communication during PushTalk, you cannot answer. They are registered in the received call list.

When no answer is received within the duration (in seconds) set in PushTalk Ring Time, *Disconnected* is notified to the caller and the incoming PushTalk call is terminated.

When PushTalk Arrival Act is set to *Answer*, and when an incoming voice call is received during PushTalk, the operation is the same as that for an incoming call during a voice call. 

When an incoming PushTalk call is received during Public mode (Driving mode), the ring alert does not sound and incoming call screen does not appear either.  is displayed on the screen and you cannot answer the call. In this case, *Driving* is notified to the caller.

Changing the operation when a PushTalk call arrives 

Menu 44

Registering entries into the PushTalk phonebook

PushTalk Phonebook New Entry







Register members to call on PushTalk. You can register them in different groups.

- Up to 700 entries can be registered (or fewer depending on the type of data registered).
- The phone numbers must be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook in advance to be registered in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If you delete or change a phone number in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the same phone number in the PushTalk phonebook is automatically changed in the same way. The setting for Secret Attribute will also be reflected.

Example Registering by searching the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 (for over a second)



- If the members are already registered, all the members are displayed in order of Japanese syllabary.
- Pressing  to  or  highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the character assigned to each dial key. Pressing  or  highlights *その他* (other) column.
- If there is more than one page, use  to change the page.

2

3 Select *View phonebook*

- When registering a phone number that is not registered in FOMA phonebook, select *Direct input*. The FOMA phonebook registration screen is displayed. Set the required items and save them. The phone number will be registered in both the PushTalk phonebook and the FOMA phonebook. If you register more than one phone number, select the phone numbers you want to register in the PushTalk phonebook. Then registration to the PushTalk phonebook is completed.

4 Search the phonebook ▶ Select the party ▶ Select a phone number

Next

5 Select Yes

- To register additional members: ▶ Repeat Steps 2 to 5.

INFORMATION

To register a member from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook, select a party from the phonebook list, press , and select *Yes*. When multiple phone numbers are registered, select the desired phone number and select *Yes*. You can also make the same registration by selecting a phone number on the phonebook details (Phone) screen, pressing , and selecting *Yes*. In this case the first phone number on the phonebook details (TOP) screen is registered.

When multiple phone numbers are registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, only one of them can be registered.

Registering members into groups

You can register members registered in the PushTalk phonebook into different groups.

- Up to 30 groups can be registered.
- Up to 19 members can be registered in one group. However, a PushTalk communication can include up to 5 members. When you make a PushTalk call, select up to 4 parties other than yourself.

1 (for over a second) ▶



- To register members in a registered group, go to Step 3.
- Changing the group name: Highlight the group ▶ ▶ Enter the group name ▶

2 ▶ Enter the group name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶

3 Select the group

- When the already registered group is selected, its members are displayed.

4

The members registered in the PushTalk phonebook are displayed in a list.

- Pressing to or highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the character assigned to each dial key. Pressing or highlights *その他* (other) column.
- If there is more than one page, use to change the page.

5 Select the member

- To switch selecting/canceling:

6 Press

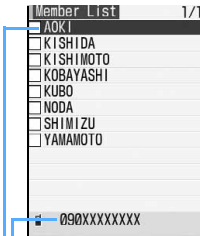
INFORMATION

The same member can be registered in different groups.

Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook

- To make a PushTalk call to multiple parties, their phone numbers must be registered in the PushTalk phonebook.










1 (for over a second)



Highlighted member's phone number
Name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook

Members are displayed in the following order of readings:

- ① Japanese syllabary order ② Alphabetical order ③ Numbers
- ④ Entries starting with a blank ⑤ Symbols ⑥ No reading


- Pressing  to  or  highlights the first member of the column corresponding to the character assigned to each dial key. Pressing  or  highlights *その他* (other) column.
- If there is more than one page, use  to change the page.
- When you press   on the member list, you will connect to the network and can use PushTalkPlus. 



2 Select members



Selected member

- Up to 5 members can make a PushTalk call including you.

- To switch selecting/canceling: 

- To check the selected members:  

Highlighted members


3 or

When the first member answers, the answering tone sounds like “pico-pico” and PushTalk starts.


- If you do not select any member, a PushTalk call is made to the highlighted member.

Making a call with the speakerphone function:  (for over a second)

4 Communicate on PushTalk

- For details , Step 3 of “Communicating on PushTalk”

5 when you end PushTalk

- When the caller presses , PushTalk communication of all present members comes to an end.
- To end a PushTalk call by closing the FOMA terminal, change the setting of PushTalk Close Setting.

INFORMATION

You can make a PushTalk call to multiple parties from the redial data, or received call history.



When you make a PushTalk call for multiple members and if some phone number is registered more than once with different names, the first name in the Japanese syllabary appears on the PushTalk communication screen. The phonebook data to which Secret Attribute is set is not displayed unless Secret Mode is on.

You can make a PushTalk call from the member list or group list by setting conditions. 

If you add “184” or “186” to a member’s phone number, it is ignored.




Making a PushTalk call from the PushTalk group

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the group

- To make a PushTalk call to all the members of a group:  (for over a second)  ▶ Highlight the group ▶ Go to Step 3

2 Select the member to make a PushTalk call



- All the members of the group are highlighted.
- Up to 5 members can communicate on PushTalk including yourself.
- To switch selecting/canceling: 
- To check the selected members:  

3 or

The PushTalk call is made.

- If you make a call from the group list, the PushTalk call is made to all the members of the highlighted group. When 5 or more members are registered, a message appears warning that the number of allowable parities is exceeded. Select up to 4 members and make a PushTalk call.
- Repeat the procedure from Step 4 in “Making a PushTalk call by using the PushTalk phonebook”.
◀P99

Making a call with the speakerphone function:  (for over a second)

INFORMATION

When you make a PushTalk call to a PushTalk group while Secret Mode is not set, the call is only made to members whose Secret Attribute is not set.

Deleting members from the PushTalk phonebook

Delete PushTalk Phonebook

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the member



- Selected member
- Highlighted member

- Not the member you selected but the highlighted member is deleted.

2 Select *Yes* ▶ Select *No*

- To also delete from the FOMA terminal phonebook: Select *Yes* ▶ Select *Yes*
- If you delete a member registered in a group, the member is also deleted from the group.

Deleting a Group

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the group

2 Select *Yes*

- Deleting a group does not delete its members from the PushTalk phonebook or the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Deleting a member registered in the group

1 (for over a second) ▶ ▶ Select the group ▶ Highlight the member ▶

2 Select *Yes*

- Deleting a group member does not delete the member from the PushTalk phonebook or the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Setting for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls

Set the operations for incoming/outgoing PushTalk calls. These settings are effective only for PushTalk calls. Available settings are as follows:

Item	Page	Item	Page
Notifying your and member's phone number	P101	Selecting how incoming voice calls are handled during PushTalk	P102
Setting ringing time for ring alert	P102	Setting operations for an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode	P103
Answering PushTalk calls automatically	P102	Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk	P103

Notifying your and member's phone number

PT Caller ID Notification

Your phone number and member's phone number (caller ID) are notified when you make a PushTalk call.

- When a caller make a PushTalk call notifying the caller ID, his or her phone number and the member's numbers are notified to all the members. Phone numbers are important information for customers. Take extreme care when you notify a caller ID.

Default Hide caller ID

1

- The same operation is possible by pressing in the member list.

2 Press

- Not to notify:

INFORMATION

Regardless of the setting of Caller ID Notification, the caller ID of each PushTalk member is notified according to the setting of PT Caller ID notification.

When setting/operating the multiple caller ID notification methods simultaneously if you make a PushTalk call, the caller ID is notified in the following preference order:

- ① Caller ID notification method set by the call conditions when making a call
- ② Caller ID setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (when you make only one call)
- ③ PT Caller ID Notification setting

Setting ringing time for ring alert




PushTalk Ring Time

Set the period of ringing time to keep the ring tone sounding. If you do not answer within this period, disconnection results.

- When *Delayed ring alert* in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to *ON*, this setting starts after the mute ring time elapses.
- This setting is impossible when PushTalk Auto Answer is set to *ON*.

Default 30 sec

1    

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.




2 Enter the ringing time (1 to 60 seconds)

3 Press 

Answering PushTalk calls automatically

PushTalk Auto Answer

You can automatically answer the received PushTalk call and your FOMA terminal automatically switches to communication via the speaker.


- This setting is invalid in Silent Mode. To answer an incoming PushTalk call, press  or .
- This setting is invalid in Public mode (Driving mode). The incoming screen is not displayed either.
- To communicate via a connected flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional), use .

Default OFF

1    

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.

2 Press 

- Not to answer automatically: 

Selecting how incoming voice calls are handled during PushTalk



PushTalk Arrival Act



Incoming voice calls during PushTalk are responded by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (incoming video-phone calls cannot be handled).

Default Call Rejection

1    

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.

2  to 

Answer : You can disconnect PushTalk and answer an incoming voice call. Pressing  while receiving the incoming call disconnects PushTalk and switches the terminal to the voice call. When you press , PushTalk is disconnected and incoming call indication still continues.

Call Rejection : Incoming voice calls are rejected.

Voice Mail : Incoming voice calls are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Call Forwarding : Incoming voice calls are forwarded to the forwarding destination.

INFORMATION

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services. Without subscription, if you set *Voice Mail* or *Call Forwarding*, action of *Answer* takes place.




Menu 294 / Menu 887



Setting operations for an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode

i-mode Arrival Act: PT

Default PushTalk preferred

1   

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.

2  or 

PushTalk preferred :

i-mode is terminated at the time when an incoming PushTalk call is received, and the incoming PushTalk call screen is displayed. When you end PushTalk, the i-mode screen returns.

i-mode preferred : Incoming PushTalk calls are not displayed on the screen and i-mode is continued. The missed incoming PushTalk calls are not recorded in the received call history.



Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed during PushTalk

PushTalk Close Setting

Default Continue

1    

- The same operation is possible by pressing    in the member list.

2  or 

End call : Ends PushTalk

Continue : Continues PushTalk.

INFORMATION

If a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) is connected to FOMA terminal, closing FOMA terminal during PushTalk does not end the call regardless of this setting.

MEMO

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	106
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	Phonebook New Entry 107
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	UIM Phonebook New Entry 110
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions.....	Group Setting 112
Making calls from the phonebook.....	Phonebook Search 113
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 118
Copying phonebook entries	120
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 121
Setting functions for phonebook entries	121
Protecting the secret phonebook entries.....	Secret Attribute 123
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	Check No. of Items 124
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 124

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D902i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook. Besides, the PushTalk phonebook can be used for exclusive use of PushTalk. ●P97

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows:

○ : Available × : Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte (16 two-byte) characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte (10 two-byte) characters for name and up to 25 one-byte (12 two-byte) characters for reading can be set.
Image/video	1 entry per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし (No group).
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Setting for incoming phone calls*2 *3		×
Settings for receiving mail*2		×
Other settings*4		×
Phonebook No.		×
Phonebook Search		
Show All Names		
Group Search		
Name Search		
Ranking Search		×
Ph Book No. Search		×
Number Search		
Secrecy Search		×
Various settings		
Secret Attribute		×
Caller ID Setting		×
Reject/Accept Call		×
Secret Code Setting		×
Video-phone Rate Setting		×
Others		
Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/switching phonebook Nos.		×
Quick Dial		×
Quick Mail		×
Site display		×
Send Ir Data		

*1 The number of items that can be registered may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 Ring alert, incoming vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color can be set. In addition, the settings for incoming calls by groups are available.

*3 The substitute image for video-phone can also be set.

*4 The following settings are available:

URL, note, postal code, address, company name, job title and birthday

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen displayed during making/receiving a call or talking. In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including “@docomo.ne.jp” exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that in case i-mode terminal is used for sender, even when the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name “@docomo.ne.jp”, the settings of the phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed.

When the mail address is “mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp”, register in the phonebook without “@docomo.ne.jp”.

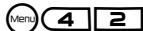
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.
- If there is an incoming mail from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker on the task bar. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed on the task bar.

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

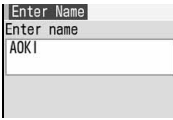
Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ➡P106
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
If you have a PC, you can use data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.
- The phonebook data that is saved in FOMA terminal can be backed up to a miniSD memory card. ➡P343
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1



2 Enter a name (Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)




- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3



Check the name and reading on *New* screen.


Correcting the name: Select the name field ▶ correct the name ▶ 

Correcting the reading: Select the reading field ▶ correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)

- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.


4 to select the item and enter

Image

- : Set an image or video/i-motion that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.
- To restore the default setting: 


Setting an image:  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image


- If an image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select *Yes* and set the image, the image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is saved.
- When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for Created animation, the first image is displayed.

Shooting a still image with Camera to set:  ▶ shoot the still image ▶ save

- The size of a still image is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.


Setting video/i-motion:  ▶ select the folder ▶ select video/i-motion


- You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144).
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion when selecting  P126

Recording video with Movie Camera to set:  ▶ Shoot video ▶ Save


- The size of a video is set to QCIF (176 x 144) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Group

- : Select a group from *グループ1* (Group 1) to *グループ30* (Group 30) and *グループなし* (No group). *グループなし* is set by default.
Group Setting  P112

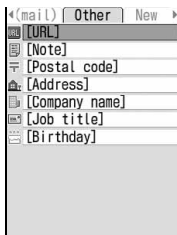
 **Phone number**: Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.








- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), “ + ”, “ # ” and sub-address delimiter (※) can be registered.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.

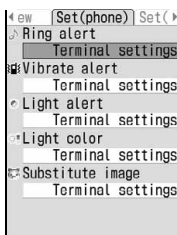
- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- When the other party has registered a secret code ●P122

5 to display *Other* screen ▶ Select each item to set

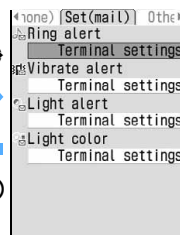


-  **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Note** : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Postal code** : Up to 7 digits can be entered.
-  **Address** : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Company name** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Job title** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Birthday** : Set *Set birthday* to *ON* and enter the birthday in *Birthday* field.

6 to display *Set* screen (*phone/mail*) ▶ Select each item to set










Set (phone) screen



Set (mail) screen

- In case the group is set to *グループなし*, all the items are set to *Terminal settings*. If you select a group, the video-phone substitute image is set to *Terminal settings* and the other items are set to *Group settings*.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting ●P122

-  /  **Ring alert** : Select *Movie ringtone* or *Melody* to select a video/i-motion or melody.
 - Only videos/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to *Available* can be set as ring alert.
 - To operate as set in the setting for phone/video-phone of Sound Setting, select *Terminal settings*.
-  /  **Vibrate alert** : Select *Yes* to set the vibrator for receiving a call or mail.
 - To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select *Terminal settings*.

-  **Light alert** : Select *Yes* to set the lighting pattern of the call indicator.
 - If *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, the lighting color cannot be set.
 - To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select *Terminal settings*.
 - If the lighting pattern is set to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set.
-  **Light color** : Select *Yes* to set the lighting color of the call indicator.
 - To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select *Terminal settings*.
-  **Substitute image (display only on Set (phone) screen)** :
 - Select *Yes* to set Chara-den (☛P334) displayed during a call.
 - To operate as set in Image Setting, select *Terminal settings*.

7

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

Entering the phonebook No. to register: Enter a number (0 to 699)

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select *New entry* not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

8 Press

INFORMATION

A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose mail address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp” is saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186, no i-mode Mail can be sent to the address.

For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name (“@docomo.ne.jp”) of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.

- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When receiving mail, if a mail address of incoming mail including “@docomo.ne.jp” does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook exactly, the settings specified for the phonebook data or group is not used. However, in case of a mail address of i-mode terminal, the settings specified is available without “@docomo.ne.jp”.

Even if *Sync melody* is set for the lighting pattern, it may not be synchronized depending on the melodies.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

UIM Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P106

1

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)


- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3

Name and reading 




You can confirm the name and reading on *Save To UIM* screen.

Correcting the name: Select the name field  correct the name 

Correcting the reading: Select the reading field  correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Select each item to enter

-  **Group** : Select a group from *グループ1* (Group 1) to *グループ10* (Group 10) and *グループなし* (No group). *グループなし* is set by default.
-  **Phone number** : Enter phone numbers including the area codes. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).
 - Only one phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
 - Pause (P), “ + ”, “ # ” and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.
-  **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.
 - Only one mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

5 Press



INFORMATION

For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name (“@docomo.ne.jp”) of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”. For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.

You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring tone by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- In Group Setting of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be modified.
- As for グループなし, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

1 4 1 2

- To change the UIM phonebook group names:  4 1 2 

2 Highlight the group 2




3 Set the group name

- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered. Go to Step 5.


4 Select each item to set

- The setting procedure of call images is the same as Step 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook” ●P108

The setting procedure of the other items is the same as Step 6 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook” ●P109.

Ring alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls and the call image and press .

- When *Movie ringtone* is selected for the ring tone, the call image is set to *Sync ring alert*. Note that when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to *Movie ringtone*, *Select image*, *Shoot still image* or *Back to default* can be selected.

Mail alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming mails and press .

5 Press

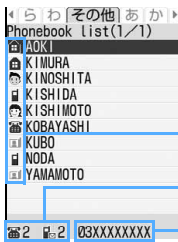
You can make a call easily by calling the other party's phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure. And the searching method can be specified by pressing on the stand-by display. ◀P117
- Show All Names ◀P114
- Group Search ◀P114
- Name Search ◀P115
- Ranking Search*1 ◀P115
- Ph book No. Search*1 ◀P116
- Number Search ◀P116
- Column Search ◀P116
- Secrecy Search*1 ◀P123

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- Also you can change the searching method by pressing and selecting *Search criteria* from the phonebook list.
- By the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook, each press switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates in front of each entry name.

1



The first time you use the search method, the phonebook list by showing all names is displayed. In case of specifying the searching method, the phonebook list is displayed by the specified method.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the selected entry

The first phone number registered in the selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

Show All Names

2 Highlight the party

- To make a video-phone call: Highlight the party
- To make a PushTalk call: highlight the party
- When several phone numbers are registered, select the phone number on the *Call to* screen.

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight the party

- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address on *Select Address* screen.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ◀P232
- You can also operate in the same way on details (*TOP*) screen. The mail address registered first is set as the address. In details (*Mail*) screen, select a mail address and press or .
- Operation is available in case the mail address is registered.

Composing SMS: Highlight the party (for over a second)

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number on *Select Address* screen.
- Composing and sending SMS ◀P283
- You can also operate in the same way on details (*TOP*) screen. The phone number registered first is set as the address. In details (*Phone*) screen, select a phone number and press .
- Operation is available in case the phone number is registered.
- You can also operate in the same way by pressing in case the mail address is not registered.

Displaying sites: Select the entry to display *Other* screen Highlight the URL

Searching Mail

Example When searching received mail

1

2 **Highlight the party** ▶ **1** **5** **1**



Received mail from the party highlighted are listed.

- For reading received/sent mail ▶ P259
- To return to the phonebook list: **4**/**2077** or **0**
- Operation is also available from details (*TOP/Mail/Phone*) screen.
- In case of the UIM phonebook, highlight the party and press **1** **3** **1** for received mail and for sent mail, press **1** **3** **2**.

To search sent mail: Highlight the party ▶ **1** **5** **2**

INFORMATION

You can make a call with conditions set. ▶ P56

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary (line a line ka line sa ... others (alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading)).

1 **4** **1** **1**

2 to select the line

- Pressing **0** to **9**, ***** or **#** instead of **0** displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing **1** displays line a. To display *その他* (other) line, press ***** or **#**.

Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under *グループなし*.






1 **4** **1** **2**

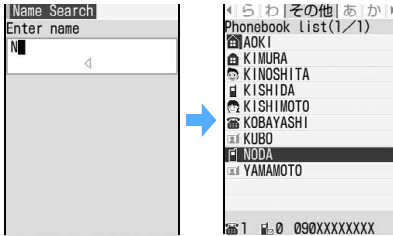
2 **Select a group**



- The entries in the group are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

- 1    
- 2 Enter a name 








- You can search the name by entering the first part of the name even if you do not enter the entire reading.

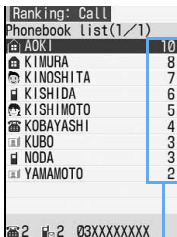
Searching the party frequently talked with or sent mail to/received mail from

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and messages are displayed up to 9999.
- Counting is also available in case a phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook is entered directly.

Example When displaying call frequency ranks

- 1     



- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

When displaying mail frequency ranks:     

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Total number of calls

INFORMATION

When the total number of multiple entries are the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blanks
5. Symbols
6. No reading

Resetting the number of calls/mails

- 1 Search the phonebook  Highlight the entry   

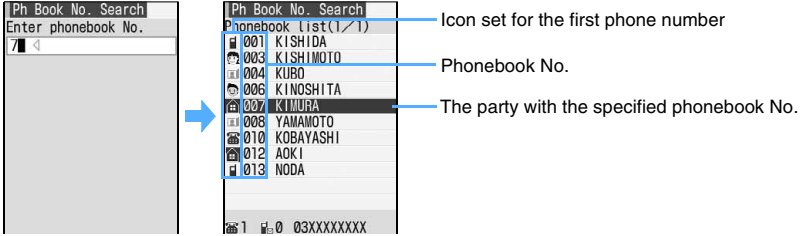
- 2 Select *Yes*

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

Enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 4 1 5

2 Enter a phonebook No.



- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

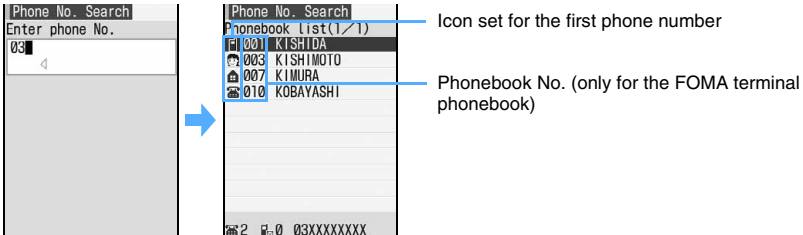
Phonebook

Phonebook Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 4 1 6

2 Enter a part of phone number



INFORMATION

When multiple phonebook entries are available with Number Search, the phonebook entries in FOMA terminal are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:

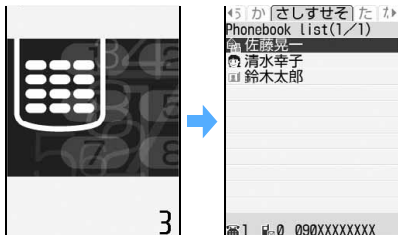
- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1. Japanese syllabary order | 2. Alphabetical order | 3. Numbers |
| 4. Entries starting with blanks | 5. Symbols | 6. No reading |

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key to .

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “佐藤” (Sato)

1



The phonebook list with readings starting with a kana character in the “さ (sa)” line

- In the search result screen, pressing to , , or switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method to display can be specified by pressing on the stand-by display.

- Secrety Search cannot be specified.

Default [Show all names](#)

1

- ✓ is attached on the specified item of searching method.

2 **Select the searching method**

- The searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be selected.

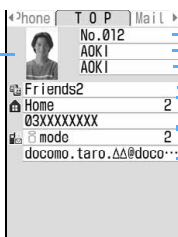
INFORMATION

In case of searching the UIM phonebook last time, the UIM phonebook is searched by the specified searching method. However, when specifying the method unavailable for the UIM phonebook, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

Checking phonebook entries

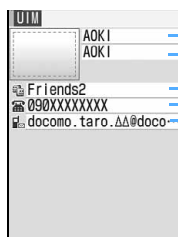
1 **Search the phonebook** **Select the phonebook data**

- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry:
- When Accept/Reject Call, Caller ID Setting or Secret Code is set, is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No.



FOMA terminal phonebook

- Phonebook No.
- Name and reading
- Group name
- First phone number, icon, type and number of registered phone numbers
- First mail address, icon, type and number of registered mail addresses



UIM phonebook

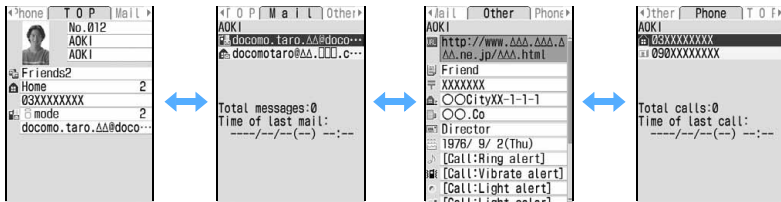
- Name and reading
- Group name
- Phone number
- Mail address

Image (If a video/i-motion is set for *Image*, the video/i-motion is played)

Displaying details of registered information (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook):



- Each time you press , the details screen switches as follows: **TOP** ▶ **Mail** ▶ **Other** ▶ **Phone**. Press to switch the screen in the reverse order.



- Mail** screen displays the total number of mails sent/received and the date and time of the last mail.
- Phone** screen displays the total number of calls made/received and the date and time of the last call.

Confirming registered information of the details screen:

- To return to the previous screen:

INFORMATION

The total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail are unavailable in case i-mode Mail could not be sent due to the radio wave conditions, etc.

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

You can edit or copy the phonebook data and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the data. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for the phonebook data can be switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

- Edited contents in the FOMA terminal phonebook entries registered in the PushTalk phonebook are also reflected to the PushTalk phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the entry ▶

2 Edit phonebook entries

- For details
 - ▶P108, Step 3 and following steps of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”;
 - ▶P111, Step 3 and following steps of “Registering entries into the UIM phonebook”.

3 Press

- In case of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed. A screen selecting registered method appears after entering the phonebook No. Select **Overwrite** or **New entry**. When **Overwrite** is selected, even if the number is changed in the phonebook No. entry screen, the previous phonebook data are discarded. When **New entry** is selected, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed again. Enter the number (0 to 699) if needed. ▶P110
- In case of the UIM phonebook, a screen selecting registering method appears. Select **Overwrite** or **New entry**.

- In case of deleting the phone number registered in the PushTalk phonebook from the FOMA terminal phonebook, when selecting *Overwrite* after entering the phonebook No., a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete from the PushTalk phonebook. When selecting *Yes*, the entry is deleted from the PushTalk phonebook.

INFORMATION

The data may not be overwritten when registering if “*” is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select *YES* to register as a new entry.



When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the first registered phone number or mail address is deleted, the second or after that are moved up and registered.

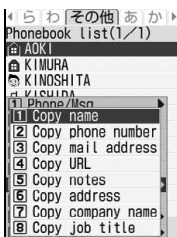
Copying registered information

Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screen such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Copied items remain recorded in FOMA terminal until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying new items overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the entry ▶  

2  to 




The data of appropriate items is recorded temporarily.

FOMA terminal
phonebook

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted ▶ Paste the characters

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, the UIM phonebook list/details screen or Own Number details screen, press  and select *Copy*.

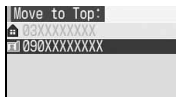
Copy phone number/Copy mail address copies the mail address registered as the first item. To copy the second or after phone number or mail address, select the phone number or mail address to copy on the FOMA terminal phonebook or Own Number details screen.

Changing the order of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed on the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order

Changing the order of phone numbers:



- 1 Highlight the entry ▶ 9 2 1
- 2 Select a phone number to register as the first phone number.
The position of the selected phone number and the first phone number are changed.

Changing the order of mail addresses:

- 1 Highlight the entry ▶ 9 2 2
- 2 Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.
The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are changed.

Switching the phonebook Nos:

- 1 Highlight the entry ▶ 9 2 3
- 2 Select the entry to replace the phonebook No. with

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Switch order Phone numbers, Mail addresses or Phonebook Nos.*

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	Copies the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters. Note that, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
Reading	Copies the reading (up to 25 one-byte (12 two-byte) characters, however in case of one and two-byte are mixed or containing one-byte katakana, up to 12 characters). One-byte katakana changes to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number (up to 26 digits (20 digits depending on the UIM types) P39. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons, is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM phonebook, for all icons, is set.

- Note that if the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	Copies the name.
Reading	Copies the reading. Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the phone number. For the icon, is set.
Mail address	Copies the mail address. For the icon, is set.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ 8 3

2 Select an entry



FOMA terminal
phonebook

3 Press

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM Copy to UIM* and on the UIM phonebook details screen, press  and select *IrDA/Phone mem Copy to phone*.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

Delete one phonebook entry.

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight the entry ► **4**

2 Select *Yes*

- In case of deleting the entry registered in the PushTalk phonebook from the FOMA terminal phonebook, the entry is deleted from the PushTalk phonebook as well.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set to show/hide caller ID or the video-phone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

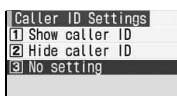
Caller ID Setting

Default No setting

1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight the entry ► **9** **1** **2**

2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select a phone number

3 **1** or **2**



- To cancel the setting: 

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Caller ID settings*.

When *No setting* is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.

For the entry with the caller ID set, is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on *TOP* screen. The priority of the way of sending your phone number

Setting the communication speed when making video-phone calls for each phone number Videophone Rate Setting

Default 64K

- 1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight the entry ►
- 2 Select a phone number
- 3 or

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings V.phone settings*.

When you specify the communication speed of the video-phone for each call you make, that setting takes precedence over this setting.

Setting a secret code for the mail address Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

- 1 Search the phonebook ► Highlight the entry ►
- 2 Enter the terminal security code ► Select a mail address
- 3 Enter a secret code of 4 digits
 - To cancel Secret Code Setting: Press for over a second to clear ►

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Secret code*. For the entry with a secret code set, is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on *TOP* screen. The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check it by the same operation as the setting of a secret code.

If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as “mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp”, you cannot reply to mail from the party. Delete “secret code” or “secret code@docomo.ne.jp” in the phonebook data before setting the secret code in the way mentioned above.

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code. To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the entry ▶ 9




 flashes when Secret Attribute is set.

Canceling:

Highlight the phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set ▶



INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select *Set/Check Settings Secrecy ON*. If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.

The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.

The setting of Secret Attribute is also reflected to the PushTalk phonebook.

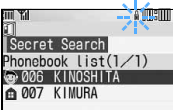
When Secret Mode is not set, the names of the phonebook data and registered images or video/i-motion for which Secret Attribute has been set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, Answer Machine, Talking Voice Memo and received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring tone or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.

Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 4



• The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method.

▶ P113

Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the selected entry.

INFORMATION

The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.

When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries


Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook

INFORMATION

In the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press  and select *Set/Check No. of items*.

When checking from the UIM phonebook, press  in the phonebook list screen or details screen and select *No. of items*.

Recorded items includes the number of phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

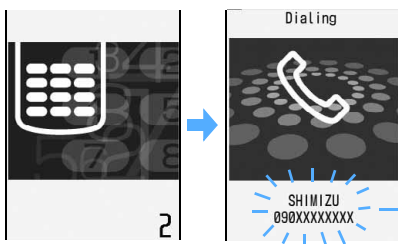
Quick Dial

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.



- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case)



The first phone number registered in the phonebook

- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- To make a video-phone call: Enter the phonebook No. 
- Make a PushTalk call: Enter the phonebook No. 

When the phone number of the entry of the entered phonebook No. is registered in the PushTalk Phonebook, a PushTalk call is made to the phone number.

In case the data is not registered in the PushTalk phonebook, a PushTalk call is made by the phone number of the first entry of the phonebook.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone	Sound Setting	126
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	Vibrator Setting	129
Setting a sound heard when the keys are pressed	Keypad Sound	130
Setting an alert sound for charging	Charge Alert	130
Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off	Quality Alarm	130
Making FOMA terminal silent	Silent Mode	131
Customizing Silent Mode	Customize Silent Mode	131

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the stand-by display	Stand-by Display Setting	132
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails	Mail/Call Image Setting	139
Setting the light for display and keys	Display Light Setting	141
Changing the display color	Color Scheme	142
Setting the menu display format or menu design	Menu Setting	143
Changing the battery level icon	Battery Icon	144
Setting the color and lighting pattern for the call indicator	Alert Lighting Setting	145
Changing the font size	Font Size	146
Setting the clock display	Clock Display Format	147
Coordinating according to the color of FOMA terminal	Style Theme	148

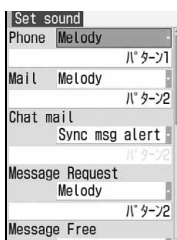
Set the sound to announce the reception of call, PushTalk call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the sound played while on hold or when opening/closing FOMA terminal can be set. If video/i-motion is set as a ring tone, an image and/or sound is played for incoming call or mail (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

- The settings in this function are reflected to the setting for the ring tone in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming PushTalk Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert, and also to On-hold Tone.

Default Phone: Melody/パターン1(Pattern1) Mail: Melody/パターン2(Pattern2) Chat mail: Sync msg alert
 Message Request, Message Free: Melody/パターン2(Pattern2)
 On-hold tone: 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)
 Videophone: Melody/電話・メロディA (Phone, melodyA) PushTalk: Melody/パターン3(Pattern3)
 Open slide: Melody/スライド・オープンスound1(Slide opening sound 1)
 Close slide: Melody/スライド・クローズ音1(Slide closing sound 1)



2 Set each item



Setting ring tones of phone call, mail, chat mail, Message R, Message F, video-phone call or PushTalk call: Select an item ▶
 (1) to (3) (1) to (4) for chat mail)

- When **Melody** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody. Viewing the melody list ◀P338
- When **Movie ringtone** is selected, select the melody field and select a video/i-motion file. Viewing the video/i-motion list ◀P327
- When **OFF** is set, the ring tone does not sound.
- If the ring tone for chat mail is set to **Sync msg alert**, the setting for the mail ring tone is used.

Setting an on-hold tone: Select an item ▶ (1) to (3)

Setting a beep sound of open slide/close slide: Select an item ▶ (1) or (2)

- When **Melody** is selected, select the melody field and select a melody. Viewing the melody list ◀P338
- When **OFF** is set, the beep sound does not sound.

3 Press (Call)

For playing and checking a melody or a video/i-motion file

Select a melody in the melody list and press (Call) to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.

- To adjust the volume: (Volume) • To play the previous/next melody: (Previous/Next) • To return to the melody list: (Call/End)
- To select a melody: (Select)

Select a video/i-motion file in the video/i-motion list and press (Call) to play it. The following operations can be performed during playing.

- To adjust the volume: (Volume) • To pause/play: (Pause/Play) • To stop (return to the video/i-motion list): (Call/End)
- To wind forward and play: (Next) • To rewind and play: (Previous)

3D Sound

The 3D sound function allows to create sounds, that is 3-dimensional and special sounds, using the stereo speakers or the flat type stereo earphones (optional), etc. Very realistic i- ppli games, ring alerts and i-motion can be enjoyed.

This function will become the most realistic when you have FOMA terminal in the front approximately 20 to 30 cm away (the distance may be different between individuals).

Note that 3D sound will become less realistic when FOMA terminal is positioned off the center rightward or leftward or at a distance more or less than 20 to 30 cm from the face.




By setting **Stereo/3D sound** on in Settings for melody, 3D sound can be replayed with the stereophonic effect from the stereo speakers. It is set to **ON** by default. ●P338

The stereophonic effect may be felt differently between individuals. If you felt it uncomfortable, set **Stereo/3D sound** to **OFF**.

The list of Melody which can be set as the ring tone

The following melodies are provided in *Preinstalled* folder of *Melody* by default.

- indicates that the melody is compatible with 3D sound.
- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (In [], is the composer)	Title (In [], is the composer)	Title (In [], is the composer)
パターン1 ~ 5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]
電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)	Rhapsody in Blue [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
電話・メロディ B (Phone, melody B)	アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)	四季~冬~ (The Four Seasons "Winter") [VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO]
電話・メロディ C (Phone, melody C)	スライド・オープン音1 ~ 3 (Slide opening sounds 1 to 3)	ツァラトウストラはかく語りき (Also Sprach Zarathustra) [STRAUSS RICHARD]
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	スライド・クローズ音1 ~ 3 (Slide closing sounds 1 to 3)	SUMMERTIME [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)	保留音・ボイス (On hold tone, voice)	ジムノペディ第1番 (1 ere Gymnopedie) [SATIE ERIK ALFRED LESLIE]
メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	交響曲第 25 番短調 K.183 より - 第 1 楽章 (The first from Symphony No.25 in G minor) [MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS]	Dreamland [BENNIE K] [MINE-CHANG]
メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	火星 (The Planets, Mars) [HOLST GUSTAV]	未来 (Mirai) [桜井和寿] (Kazutoshi Sakurai)
メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the wooden soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	
メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)	森のくまさん [アメリカ民謡] (The Bear) [American folk song]	

License number: T-0570339

- The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Ring tone priority

Ring tones set in multiple functions sound according to the following prioritization:

- ① Incoming setting for Multi Number
 - ② FOMA terminal phonebook setting
 - ③ Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Sound Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting/Incoming Chat Mail Setting/Incoming Msg. Alert
- The ring tone for PushTalk calls sounds as set in Sound Setting/Incoming PushTalk Setting.
 - When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring tone for incoming voice calls operates as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring tone for incoming video-phone calls sounds as set in Sound Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting. The ring tone for PushTalk calls sounds as set in Sound Setting/Incoming PushTalk Setting.
 - When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.
 - When the image is set in the phonebook and the ring tone is not set, if the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone* in Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting, the setting for *Movie ringtone* is given priority for the ring tone and incoming image. When the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for *Movie ringtone*, the video/i-motion with only sound set to *Movie ringtone* is used for the ring tone and the image set in the phonebook is used for the incoming image.

Other sound settings

- Setting the mail ring tone or lighting, etc. ◀P277
- Setting to sound the ring tone only from the earphone when connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) ◀P387

INFORMATION

The video/i-motion with only image cannot be set for the ring tone. Only the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) can be set for the ring tone for PushTalk calls.

The video/i-motion that is set to *Unavailable* for the ring tone of View/Edit Detail Info (▶P349) cannot be set to *Movie ringtone*.

If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set to *Movie ringtone*, the image of the video/i-motion is set as the incoming image. If the video/i-motion with only sound is set for *Movie ringtone*, the standard image is set as the incoming image, but the incoming image for a voice/video-phone call can be changed in Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting.

If the video/i-motion with only sound or a melody is set for the ring tone when the incoming image is set to *Sync ring alert*, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.

Even when the video/i-motion or Flash movie with only image is set for the incoming image, if the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring tone, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.

When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring tone, even if the animation (other than the standard image) is set for the incoming image, it does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

If you open/close FOMA terminal rapidly, the open slide/close slide sound may not be heard. During the following operations, there will be no beep sound even when opening/closing FOMA terminal.

- While dialing
- On Response and Hold
- During PushTalk calls
- While the alarm is sounding
- While the video/i-motion is playing
- While recording Chara-den
- While playing recorded messages/voice memos/movie memos
- While the greeting message is playing
- While recording with Sound Recorder
- While recording messages
- While recording video memos
- While receiving
- While talking
- During Silent Mode
- While the melody is playing
- While shooting video
- While i- ppli is activated
- While the alarm for Call Cost Limit is sounding
- While recording talking voice memos

The volume of open slide/close slide sound cannot be changed. The 3D sound compatible melody can be set for beep sounds, but 3D sound becomes unavailable.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of call, PushTalk call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the schedule alarm notice is indicated by vibration.

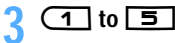
- The settings in this function are reflected to the setting for the vibrator in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming PushTalk Setting, Incoming Msg.Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.
- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

Default all OFF



2 Select an item

- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to *Same : Msg setting*, *ChatMail* cannot be set.
- As for a schedule alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in *Phone* setting.



- If you set to **Pattern A**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration about 0.7 second pause about 0.7 second vibration about 1.5 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern B**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 1 second vibration about 2 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to **Pattern C**, the terminal vibrates as follows: about 0.7 second vibration about 0.7 second pause (repeated)
- If you set to *Sync melody*, the terminal vibrates along with the melody selected in Sound Setting. Note that vibration may not synchronize depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.
- If you set to *OFF*, the terminal does not vibrate.
- The vibrator operates by the selected pattern. Note that the vibrator does not operate when *Sync melody* or *OFF* is selected.

4 Press

- When the vibrator for calls is set, (when Ring Volume Setting for calls is set to *Silent*,) is indicated on the stand-by display.

Priority of vibrator

When Vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by the following priority:

- ① The setting for the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Vibrator Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting/Incoming Chat Mail Setting/Incoming Msg. Alert
- The vibration when receiving a PushTalk call follows Vibrator Setting/Incoming PushTalk Setting.

INFORMATION

The vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.

Even when *OFF* is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.

Setting a sound heard when the keys are pressed Keypad Sound

- The confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound does not sound when pressing the following keys or sliding the keylock switch.
 - • • One-push open button

Default Keypad sound1

1

2 to

- The selected keypad sound sounds. Note that the keypad sound does not sound when **OFF** is set.
- To disable the keypad sound:

INFORMATION

- When **OFF** is set, the following sounds are not heard.
- The confirmation sound when the battery level is indicated
 - The end alert for infrared communication or data transmission
- In the following cases, the keypad sound is not heard even if this function is set to other than **OFF**.
- In Silent Mode (Note that in the personalized silent mode and when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than **OFF**, the keypad sound is heard.)
 - When i- ppli is running (Press to hear the keypad sound.)

Setting an alert sound for charging Charge Alert

Set whether to sound an alert sound for the start and completion of charging.

Default ON

1 ▶ or

INFORMATION

- Even when **ON** is set, the charge alert sound is not played in the following cases:
- In Silent Mode
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During a voice call
 - During a video-phone call
 - During a PushTalk call
 - During 64K data communication
 - During i-mode communication
 - During packet communication

Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off Quality Alarm

- When signal conditions deteriorate, an alarm sounds just before the voice call is cut off on the way.
- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
 - This function applies only to voice calls.

Default High alarm

1

2 or

- Not to set the alarm:



Making FOMA terminal silent

Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set

1 (for over a second) or (for over a second)

The silent mode that is specified in Customize Silent Mode is set,  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the stand-by display.

Canceling:  (for over a second) or  (for over a second)

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming call or mail is notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

The operations of the vibrator when receiving calls, PushTalk calls or mails are set to *Pattern A* regardless of the setting in Vibrator Setting.

The operations of the vibrator when the time set in Alarm Clock arrives are as set in Alarm Clock.

The operations of the vibrator when the date and time set in the schedule are set to *Pattern A*.

Melodies are not played automatically even if received mail or Message R/F is displayed with *Auto play* set for Attachment Auto-play.

When playing a melody, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the melody is displayed. When *Yes* is selected, the melody is played.

When playing the video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen asking whether to play the sound is displayed. When *Yes* is selected, the sound is played. When playing the video/i-motion with image, if *No* is selected, only the image is played.

INFORMATION

The following sounds except recording Chara-den are played even in Silent Mode.

- The shutter sound during shooting with Camera and Movie Camera
- The shutter sound during recording by Sound Recorder

In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to *ON* and the setting notified by alarm is made, only a message is displayed. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring volume for calls set in Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode


Customize Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Customize Silent Mode). Which mode is set can be selected from the general silent mode and the personalized silent mode.

Default General

1

2

- Pressing  sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set

- Vibrator alert** : Sets the operation of vibrator when receiving a call, PushTalk call or mail.
- When **ON** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (P129). Note that when **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates by **Pattern A**.
 - When **OFF** is set, the vibrator does not operate.
- Keypad sound** : Sets keypad sounds.
- Ring alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming call.
- The setting of **Ring alert volume** applies to the volume of i- ppli. Note that when **Step tone** is set, the i- ppli volume is set to level 4.
- Msg. alert volume** : Sets the ring volume for incoming mail.
- ToruCa alert volume** : Sets the volume of the sound which sounds when obtaining the ToruCa from the reader/writer.
- Low Battery Alert** : Specifies whether to sound an alarm when the battery becomes low.
- Alarm/Schedule sound** : Sets whether to sound an alarm or a schedule alarm.
- When **ON** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm sounds according to each setting. The setting of **Ring alert volume** in Customize Silent Mode applies to the volume of schedule alarm.
 - When **OFF** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm does not sound.
- Sensitize microphone** : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

4 Press

The personalized silent mode is set.

Changing the stand-by display

Stand-by Display Setting

You can change the stand-by display to your favorite image.

- Depending on the image, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli, settings for the stand-by display will be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used when downloading the data (the UIM operation restriction function).
- While All Lock or PIM Lock is on (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set to the stand-by display), the set stand-by image is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed temporarily. The set stand-by image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in **Preinstalled** folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- Setting the clock display P147
- Setting to display the i-channel ticker P309

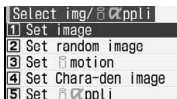
Setting images, video/i-motion or Chara-den as the stand-by display

The image, video/i-motion or Chara-den saved from an i-mode site or mail and the still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the stand-by display. Animation and Created animation can also be set.

- If you set a video/i-motion or Chara-den for the stand-by display when **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting is set to **Yes**, **Show ticker** is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and the i- ppli stand-by display, **Show ticker** in Ticker Setting returns to **Yes**.

1

2 , or



3 Select a folder ▶ Select the image, video/i-motion or Chara-den

- To check the image, highlight the image in the image list and press . The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - To display the previous/next screen: • To return to the image list:
 - To select a image:
- To check Chara-den, highlight Chara-den in the Chara-den list and press . The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
 - To switch between *Action* and *Action of Parts*:
 - To display the action list: • To switch between the large size and the same size:
 - To return to the Chara-den list: /
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion file when selecting
- The image or video/i-motion saved in the miniSD memory card cannot be selected. Select it after moving or copying it to FOMA terminal.

Setting action of Chara-den:

① Highlight Chara-den in the Chara-den list ▶

② Select *Stand-by field* ▶ to

- Set action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When *Action* or *Action of Parts* is selected, select an action from the action list.
- When *Input* is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action.
- When *OFF* is set, the preset action is played and another action cannot be set.

③ Select *Interval field* ▶ to

- When *OFF* is set, the selected action of Chara-den is played only once.

④

4 Select *Yes*

- The following items can be selected on the confirmation screen depending on the size of the selected image. The displayed items are different depending on the image size.

Item	Description
<i>Yes (Same size)</i>	Displays as the image size.
<i>Yes (Large size)</i>	Enlarges the image to the screen size.
<i>Yes (Fit length) *1</i>	Enlarges/reduces the size of the length of the image to the screen size.
<i>Yes (Fit width) *2</i>	Enlarges/reduces the size of the width of the image to the screen size.

*1 The right and left of the image may be cut depending on the image size.

*2 The top and bottom of the image may be cut depending on the image size.

- If the selected video/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, displaying at the same size or large size can be selected on the confirmation screen. Select *Yes (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is continuously displayed.

INFORMATION

The setting may not be available depending on the image.

The display of *Fit length* or *Fit width* can be set for, in case of JPEG format, only the image with the size of width and length (or length and width) of 8 x 8 to 640 x 480, 960 x 1280, 1200 x 1600 or 1728 x 2304, in case of GIF format, only the image with the size of width and length (or length and width) of 8 x 8 to 640 x 480.

When the action is set for multiple items for Chara-den, the action is played according to the following prioritization.

① Action set for *Missed call* or *Unread message*

② Action set for *Stand-by*

• When both action for missed calls and action for unread mail are set and there are both missed calls and unread mail, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns.

Playing the video/i-motion or animation set as the stand-by display

The following operations are available for video/i-motion.

- Play: /Open FOMA terminal. • Stop: /Close FOMA terminal/
- Adjust volume:

The following operations are available for animation, Created animation or Flash movie.

- Play: Open FOMA terminal/Return to the stand-by display/Turn the power on
- Pause/replay: • Stop: Close FOMA terminal

The following operations are available for Chara-den.

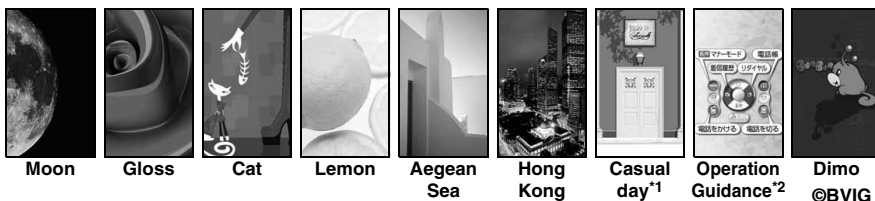
• Play (When the interval for the action is set, the action is played repeatedly at the set interval):

- /Open FOMA terminal
- Stop: /Close FOMA terminal/

Playing/stopping by opening/closing FOMA terminal can also be performed while Key Lock is on. Playing is stopped by Any Key Answer keys.

Images/i-motion/Chara-den preinstalled by default for the stand-by display

Image (The setting for Style Theme is applied by default.)



*1 It is Flash movie. The display changes with time.

*2 If *Style* is set to *Digital 1/Digital 2/Digital 4* and *Clock layout* is set to *Top* in Clock Display Format, the clock does not overlap with the operation guidance.

i-motion



Journey



The Ocean*1

*1 It can also be set to Movie ringtone.

Chara-den ◀ P334

INFORMATION

Some video/i-motion may not be able to be set for the stand-by display. The video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) cannot be set.

When Flash movie or Chara-den is set for the stand-by display, playing is stopped after a certain period of time. The melody of Flash movie set for the stand-by display is not played.

If an animation is set in zoom display, the display may be distorted.

The video/i-motion with restriction for the number of replay or replay period set cannot be set to the stand-by display. In addition, some video/i-motion may not be able to be set for the stand-by display.

Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of video/i-motion, these links cannot be available from the stand-by display.

When video/i-motion or Chara-den is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the screen.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the stand-by display every fixed time or each time you open FOMA terminal.



2 Select each item to set

- Folder** : Selects a folder in which the images are saved from the folders in **Image** (My Picture).
- The folder with no image which can be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image :

Sets the timing that the image is switched.

- When **Every 15 seconds** is set, images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the stand-by display.
- When **Every minute**, **Every 15 minutes** or **Every hour** is set, the image is switched according to the clock time. (For example, **Every minute** is set, the image is switched per minute at 0 second.)
- When **Every day** is set, the images are switched at 0:00 a.m. every day.
- When **Open slide** is set, the images are switched each time you open FOMA terminal.

3 Select Yes

- If **i- ppli Stand-by Display** is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

INFORMATION

The following images cannot be displayed.

- Created animation
- Animation
- Flash movie

If the date and time have not been set and the timing to switch is set to other than **Open slide**, the image is not switched.

Even if the still image currently displayed on the stand-by display is moved or Created animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image. After that, it is not displayed.

When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, moving or deleting still images in the folder or composing Created animation, the default image is displayed on the stand-by display and Random Display Image is canceled (if the still image is moved or Created animation is composed, the image is displayed until it switches to the next image).

Even when the timing to switch is set to **Open slide**, if you repeat opening/closing FOMA terminal quickly, the image may not be switched.

Setting i- ppli Stand-by Display

- i- ppli Stand-by Display can be set simultaneously with other settings for selecting the stand-by display, setting a calendar or customizing the screen. When they are set simultaneously, the i- ppli stand-by display is displayed by priority.
- Multiple i- ppli applications cannot be set on the i- ppli stand-by display.
- The following i- ppli preinstalled by default can be set as the i- ppli stand-by display:
 - ・ 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス
 - ・ i アニメっチャメーラー SuperDX500
- If you set i- ppli for the stand-by display when *Show ticker* in Ticker Setting is set to *Yes*, *Show ticker* is canceled. After that, if you set other than the video/i-motion, Chara-den and the i- ppli stand-by display, *Show ticker* in Ticker Setting returns to *Yes*.

1

A list of i- ppli compatible with i- ppli Stand-by Display appears.

2 Select i- ppli ▶ Select *Yes*

i- ppli Stand-by Display is set and or is indicated on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display ◀P302

While PIM Lock is on or Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *i- ppli*), the i- ppli stand-by display is not displayed but a stand-by image set previously is displayed. Note that while PIM Lock is on, the default stand-by display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set.

When i- ppli is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the display.

Setting a calendar on the stand-by display

1

2 Select *Yes*

- If the i- ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

When a calendar is set



The day is displayed in yellow.

Dot

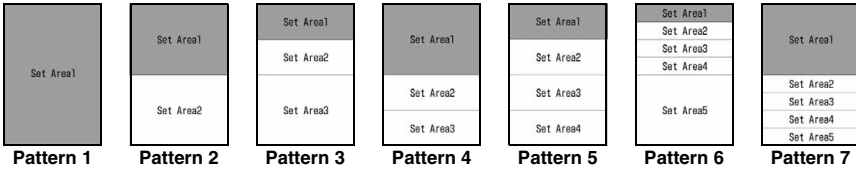
The days-off and holidays are displayed in red, Saturdays are displayed in blue. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or the setting for holidays for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display. When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on.

Each press of on the stand-by display switches between displaying and not displaying the calendar.

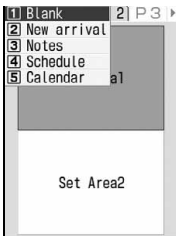
INFORMATION

An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when pressing after the playback is stopped or paused.

The stand-by display can be divided into several areas to display the latest information such as unread mail or missed calls, notes, calendar or schedule for each area. The pattern of dividing areas can be selected from the following 7 types:



- 1
- 2 Switch patterns by
- 3 Select an area to



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 3.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen. (e.g. *Set Area1* of pattern 3)

Setting new arrivals: Select information



Setting notes:

①

② Select a note

- Press to display the content of the note. Press to return to the note list. Also, press on the notepad view screen to set.


4 Select Yes

- If the i- ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen asking whether to cancel it is displayed continuously.

INFORMATION

If you change the setting for Style Theme, the custom stand-by display is not displayed, but the setting is saved. If you operate in order of Step 1, Step 4, the custom stand-by display set before is displayed.


Checking information on the custom stand-by display

- Each press of  on the stand-by display switches between displaying/not displaying the custom stand-by display. Display the custom stand-by display before operations.

1




The top area is displayed with a red frame.

- Press  to move the cursor frame.

2 Select an area

INFORMATION

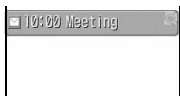
An image and a custom stand-by display can be set at the same time, but if an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set, press  after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information.

Displayed information

The custom stand-by display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information and lines displayed differ depending on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for other days.

New arrival



The items set in *New arrival* are listed starting with the most recent item. Select this area to display the list screen of the first item.

Unread messages :

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the Inbox folder list.

MessageR/ MessageF :

The reception date and time and the first part of title are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the Message R/F list.

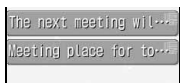
Missed calls :

The date and time of incoming call and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the received call list.

Recorded messages :

The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Select the area when this item is displayed at the beginning to display the recorded message list.

Notes



The first part of the contents recorded in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the details of notes.

Schedule



The scheduled entries are displayed in the order of the date and time.

Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.
- In case of the date-straddled long-term schedule, is indicated instead of the registered icon. The start date or start time (when it is before the start time on the current day) is displayed behind the icon. The date-straddled long-term schedule is displayed until the end date/time has elapsed.
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, *AllDay* is displayed instead of the start time.

Calendar



The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the schedule calendar screen of Scheduler.

- Viewing the calendar P136

Canceling the setting items other than images

Cancel the settings for the video/i-motion, Chara-den, i- ppli stand-by display, stand-by calendar or custom stand-by display and display an image on the stand-by display.



2 Select Yes

- If an image has been previously set before, the image is displayed. Otherwise, the default image is displayed on the stand-by display.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Mail/Call Image Setting

Set images to be displayed for outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval.

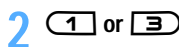
- Setting images to be displayed for incoming calls P67

Changing images for outgoing calls Outgoing Call Image/Videophone Dialing Image

Menu 861 / Menu 871

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice calls or video-phone calls.

Default **Default**



- To set an image for an outgoing voice call:
- To set an image for an outgoing video-phone call:

3 Select *Display image* field ▶ **2**



- To set the default image: **1** ▶ Go to Step 5

4 Select *Select image* in *Image list* field ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

5 Press **⏏**

INFORMATION

Setting Created animation displays the first frame.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls Contact Image

When a voice/video-phone call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default **ON**

1 **Ⓜ** **8** **2** **2** **5**

2 Press **1**

- Not to display a portrait image: **2**

Priority of outgoing images

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priorities given below:

- ① The setting for the FOMA terminal phonebook*1
- ② Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Outgoing Call Image/Videophone Dialing Image

*1 It is available when Contact Image is set to *ON*.

Priority of incoming images

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priorities given below:

- ① Incoming setting for Multi Number
- ② The setting for the FOMA terminal phonebook*2
- ③ Group Setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ④ Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting

*2 It is available when Contact Image is set to *ON*.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for the voice call follows Anonymous Caller. For the incoming image for the video-phone call, it follows Sound Setting/Incoming Videophone Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality.

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Outgoing Msg. Image/Incoming Msg. Image/Retrieving Image

- You cannot set Flash movie for the retrieving image.

Default **Default**

1 **Ⓜ** **8** **2** **2**

2 to

- To set an image to be displayed when sending i-mode Mail or SMS:
- To set an image to be displayed when receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F:
- To set an image to be displayed when performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS:

3 Select an image to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Changing images for outgoing calls". ◀P140

Displaying the other party's phone number and name when receiving a call Receive Display

Sets whether to display the phone number and name when a voice/video-phone call is received as well as setting the character size for the name.

In addition, sets whether to scroll the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- Name displays ◀P107

Default Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1

2 Select each item to set

Caller's phone number :

Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name : Sets whether to display the name in the normal size, in the small size or not to display the name when a call is received.

Receive mail/message :

Sets whether to display the reception result on the task bar when i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F is received.

- When *Display* is set, the reception result is scrolled on the task bar.

3 Press

Setting the light for display and keys

Display Light Setting

Default Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key
Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

1

2 Select each item to set

Lighting method : Sets whether to turn the lighting on or off.

- Setting *Turn light ON* maintains the lighting on the condition set in *Turn light on*, *Range* or *Brightness*.
- Setting *Turn light OFF* does not turn the lighting on. *Turn light on*, *Range* and *Brightness* cannot be set.

Turn light on : Sets the lighting time.

Range : Sets whether to light only the display or both the display and keys.

- The keys to be lit when *Display + Key* is set are as follows: , , , , , , , , to , , .

Brightness : Sets the brightness of the display to be lit.

AC adapter connected :

Sets how to light the display when connecting to the AC adapter (desktop holder) or to the DC adapter.


- Setting **Terminal settings** lights according to the settings of the above items.
- Setting **Always on** lights the display at **High**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the following cases, if you do not press any keys of FOMA terminal for approximately 90 seconds, the display disappears and the power is in the state of saving (except for when shooting with the camera). If there is any key operation or an incoming call, the display appears again.

- When **Turn light on** is set to other than **Always**
- During charging (when **Turn light on** is set to other than **Always**, and **AC adapter connected** is set to **Terminal settings**)

Even when **Lighting method** is set to **Turn light ON**, the display or keys do not light by pressing the keys while Key Lock is on. However, if you press , the display lights.

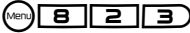
Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters on the screen is changed.


Default Use Style Theme setting

1




2



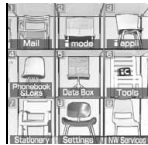
- You can select a color from 24 colors.
- Press  to switch pages.
- The screen is displayed in the selected color.
- The color names are for information purpose only.

The menu display format or the icon design can be changed.

- The design of the first-level menu that appears first when pressing  on the stand-by display can be changed.
- The type of tile icons for the normal menu can be selected from the following 5 types.



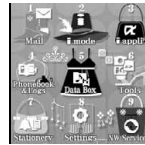
Type1



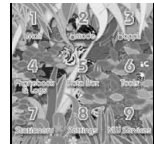
Type2



Type3

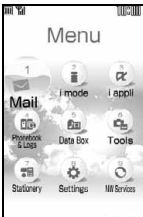


Type4



Type5

- The type of animation for the normal menu can be selected from the following 3 types:



Type1



Type2



Type3

Default Normal: Animation Custom: Tile display Type of animation: Use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF
Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom

1



2

Select each item to set

Normal : Sets the display format for the normal menu.

Custom : Sets the display format for the custom menu.


Type of tile icons : Sets the type of tile icons for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Tile display**.
- **Custom1** or **Custom2** is set when changing the menu icons or background images and creating the design of the original menu.

Type of animation : Sets the type of animation for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when **Normal** is set to **Animation**.


Icon display effect : Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting a menu.

Default MENU : Sets the menu which is displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.

Active shortcut : Sets the shortcut operations to be used for the custom menu.

- **Normal**: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
- **Custom**: The item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.












3

Press 

Creating the original menu design

Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

- 1   ▶ Select *Tile display* in *Normal* field
- 2 Select *Custom1* or *Custom2* in *Type of tile icons* field ▶ Select *Customize*
- 3 Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon ▶   ▶ Select *Yes*
 - To cancel all:   ▶ Select *Yes*
- 4  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
Canceling a background:   ▶ Select *Yes*
- 5  

INFORMATION

Created animation, Flash movie or the image in *Item* folder cannot be set. Also, if an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.




The settings for *Custom1* and *Custom2* of *Type of tile icons* cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

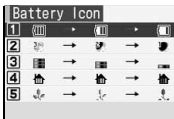
Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon




Default   

1    

2   to 



INFORMATION

If Style Theme is changed, this setting returns to   .

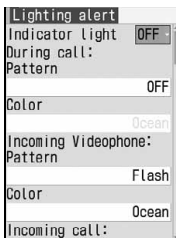
Set whether to flash the call indicator or not when there is the newly-arrived information such as missed calls or unread mail or whether to light the call indicator when the FeliCa mark is held up to the reader/writer. It also sets the lighting pattern and color for the call indicator during a call or when receiving a call/mail or opening/closing FOMA terminal.

- The settings in this function are reflected to the setting for the lighting in Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting, Incoming Msg. Alert, Settings (for melody), Incoming PushTalk Setting and ToruCa Setting.

Default Indicator light, During call: OFF Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: Flash/Ocean Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: Flash/Aqua Incoming PushTalk: Flash/Ocean ToruCa receive: ON/Aqua Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: Sync melody/Rainbow Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Melon IC card: ON



2 Set each item



Setting Indicator light: Select Indicator light field ▶ **1** or **2**


- When **ON** is set, the call indicator flashes at about 6-second interval in the lighting color for **Incoming call** when there is a missed call (voice call/video-phone call/PushTalk call/recorded message), in the lighting color for **Incoming Mail** when there is unread information (mail/chat mail/SMS) or in the lighting color for **Incoming Message R/Incoming Message F** when there is unread information (Message R/Message F). If the newly-arrived information is confirmed, the call indicator stops flashing.
- When **OFF** is set, the call indicator does not flash even if there is new

Setting During call, Incoming Videophone, Incoming call, Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail, Incoming PushTalk, Alarm, Schedule, Play melody, Open slide, Close slide:

① Select Pattern field ▶ **1** to **5**

- Sync melody* cannot be set in *During call*.
- The call indicator lights/flashes by the selected pattern. It flashes when *Sync melody* is selected. Note that the call indicator does not light/flash when **OFF** is selected.
- When *Sync melody* or **OFF** is set, the lighting color cannot be set. When *Sync melody* is set, the call indicator lights/flashes by *Rainbow*. However, for newly-arrived information, it flashes according to the set lighting color. In addition, when Sound Setting is set to *Movic ringtone* and Sound Setting is set to **OFF** in the items other than *Incoming Videophone*, *Incoming call* or *Incoming PushTalk*, the call indicator also flashes according to the set lighting color.
- When the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to *Same: Mrg setting*, *Incoming Chat Mail* cannot be set.

② Select Color field ▶ **1** to **9**, **0**, ***** or **#**

- Press  to switch the pages.
- The call indicator lights/flashes by the selected color.
- When the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to *Same: Mrg setting*, *Incoming Chat Mail* cannot be set.

Setting ToruCa receive:

① Select Lighting field ▶ **1** or **2**

- When **OFF** is set, the lighting color cannot be set.

② Select **Color field** ▶ **1** to **9**, **0**, ***** or **#**

- Press **⏪** to switch the pages.
- The call indicator flashes by the selected color.

Setting IC card: Select IC card field ▶ **1** or **2**

- When **ON** is set, the call indicator lights when holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer.

3 Press **⏪**

INFORMATION

The names of color are for information purpose only.

If there are multiple newly-arrived information, the call indicator flashes in the following priority when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**. However, even if unread ToruCa exists, the call indicator does not flash.

- ① Missed calls (voice call/video-phone call/PushTalk call/recorded message)
- ② Unread messages (mail/chat mail/SMS)
- ③ Unread messages (Message R)
- ④ Unread messages (Message F)

Even when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**, the call indicator does not flash in the following cases:

- During receiving a call
- During talking
- In Public mode (Driving mode)

Even when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**, if there have been no newly-arrived information for about 6 hours since there was the first arrival or if **1** **1** (with the number of newly-arrived information) on the display are deleted, the call indicator stops to flash even if the information are not confirmed.

Even if **Sync melody** is set for the lighting pattern, it may not be synchronized depending on the melodies.

When a call or mail is received from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the operation depends on the FOMA terminal phonebook setting. However, the operation of the call indicator when newly-arrived information arrives is not changed.

Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, the call indicator may not light while Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli is activated.

Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, if the power is turned off, the call indicator does not light.

When **IC card** is set to **ON**, the call indicator also lights when the IC card is held over the reader/writer that Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli is not registered.

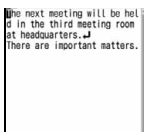
Changing the font size

Font Size

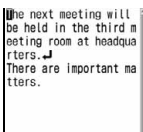
The character size can be changed from 5 types for entering characters by full-screen entry.



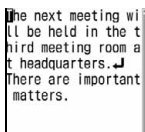
Minimum: 12 dots



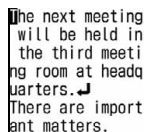
Small: 16 dots



Standard: 20 dots

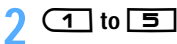


Large: 24 dots



Maximum: 28 dots

Default | **Standard**



- The example in the selected character size is displayed.

INFORMATION

The font size cannot be changed for entering mail messages or entering characters by in-line entry.

The character size is changed for displaying a site screen, screen memo and Message R/F. However, if set to **Minimum**, the **Small** character size is set. If set to **Maximum**, the **Large** character size is set.

Setting the clock display

Clock Display Format

Set whether to display the clock on the stand by display. The clock design, the time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format), the clock display position and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

Default Time format: 24 hour Day: English Other than that: Use Style Theme setting



Displaying Analog 1 at the center



Displaying Analog 2 at the top



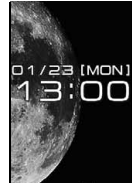
Displaying Digital 1 by 12 hour format at the center



Displaying Digital 2 by 24 hour format at the top



Displaying Digital 3 by 12 hour format at the bottom



Displaying Digital 4 by 24 hour format at the center



2 Select each item to set

Style : Sets whether to display the clock. Also, sets the displayed clock design.

- When **ON** is set, select the design.
- When **OFF** is set, **Clock layout** and **Day** cannot be set.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.

- The display of the analog clock is not changed.

Clock layout : Sets the position to display the clock.

Day : Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.

- When **Terminal settings** is set, the display depends on the setting for Select Language.

3 Press

INFORMATION

On the screen other than the stand-by display, the clock is displayed on the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows this function's setting.

In the following cases, the clock is displayed by the digital clock (the fixed design) on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for **Style** or **Clock layout**.

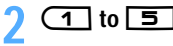
- When video/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the stand-by display
- When the i- ppli stand-by display is displayed

While ALL Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of this function's setting.

The stand-by display, the clock display, the color theme and the menu icon are coordinated in total by the color of FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to be coordinated corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated		Style Theme				
		<i>LusterWhite</i>	<i>CoolBlack</i>	<i>LuminousPink</i>	<i>PremiumYellow</i>	<i>BasicModern</i>
Stand-by Display Setting		<i>Moon</i>	<i>Gloss</i>	<i>Cat</i>	<i>Lemon</i>	<i>Aegean Sea</i>
Clock Display	<i>Style</i>	<i>ON/Digital 1</i>	<i>ON/Analog 1</i>	<i>ON/Digital 2</i>	<i>ON/Digital 3</i>	<i>ON/Digital 4</i>
Format	<i>Time format</i>	<i>24 hour</i>	<i>24 hour</i>	<i>24 hour</i>	<i>24 hour</i>	<i>12 hour</i>
	<i>Clock layout</i>	<i>Center</i>	<i>Bottom</i>	<i>Bottom</i>	<i>Center</i>	<i>Center</i>
	<i>Day</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Japanese</i>
Color Scheme		<i>LusterWhite</i>	<i>CoolBlack</i>	<i>LuminousPink</i>	<i>PremiumYellow</i>	<i>LusterWhite</i>
Menu Setting	<i>Normal</i>	<i>Animation</i>	<i>Animation</i>	<i>Animation</i>	<i>Animation</i>	<i>Tile display</i>
	<i>Type of tile icons</i>	-	-	-	-	<i>Type1</i>
	<i>Type of animation</i>	<i>Type1</i>	<i>Type2</i>	<i>Type3</i>	<i>Type3</i>	-

[Default](#) | [Terminal settings](#)



INFORMATION

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters on the screen is changed by Color Scheme.

Safety settings

Security code

Security codes available with FOMA terminal	150
Changing the terminal security code	Change Security Code 151
Setting the PIN code	151
Unlocking the PIN lock	153

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	153
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal	All Lock 154
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access	Remote Lock 155
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self Mode 156
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule	PIM Lock 157
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad Dial Lock 158
Preventing unauthorized use of the functions such as phonebook or mail	Privacy Mode Setting 159
Preventing inadvertent use of keys	Key Lock 160
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set	Secret Mode 161

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	Reject/Accept Call 162
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID	Anonymous Caller 163
Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook	Mute Ring Time Setting 164
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook	Reject non-Reg. Caller 165

Other “Safety settings”

Other “Safety settings”	166
-------------------------------	-----

Security codes available with FOMA terminal

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are the network security code for use in network services and DoCoMo e-site, password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the terminal security code, you need to bring FOMA terminal*1, the UIM (FOMA card) in use and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
*1 In case the terminal is not purchased by the subscriber, it may not be accepted.

Network security code

Network security code is the 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to FOMA terminal for usage of network services and various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site.

- If you forgot the network security code, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. DoCoMo Shops make subscription after confirming the subscriber's identification based on a certificate such as the driver's license. If you have "User ID" and "Password", you can make subscription by accessing to DoCoMo e-site from the PC.
- Please refer to the back of this manual for "DoCoMo e-site".

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code required when using or requesting the issue of a user certificate, resetting the total call cost or changing the setting of Reset Call Cost.

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store/delete sites in My Menu and apply to/cancel message services or i-mode pay sites. The default i-mode password is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).

- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

INFORMATION

To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the completion of the application for subscription. Be sure to remember the set security codes.

Be sure to avoid recognizable numbers such as the last 4 digits of the phone number and not to be revealed the security codes or password by others.

If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off.

Changing the terminal security code


Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the terminal security code.
- The entered terminal security code is masked with “*”.

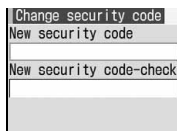
Default 0000

1    

2 Enter the current terminal security code

- If the entered terminal security code is not correct, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct terminal security code.

3 Select *New security code* field ▶ Enter a new terminal security code



4 Select *New security code-check* field ▶ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3

5 Press 

Setting the PIN code

- The PIN1/PIN2 code can be changed.
- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the PIN1/PIN2 code
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is masked with “*”.

Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Subscribed to FOMA OFF



1     

2 

- To cancel the setting: 


3 Enter the PIN1 code




- The PIN1 code is set to “0000” at the time of subscription.
- When the entered PIN1 code is not corrected, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct PIN1 code. If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  and cancel the PIN lock.
- The PIN1 code entry screen is displayed only when you change the current setting.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the stand-by display appears.

- Making/receiving calls or PushTalk calls or operating the communication functions is unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

If Alarm Auto Power ON has been set to *ON*, the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the power is turned on at the set time for an alarm or schedule. When pressing  to end the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. At this time, the alarm sounds by the melody preinstalled by default (アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm・analog clock) is for the alarm, アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm・Female voice) is for the schedule alarm) even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm sound.







The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF that you set previously can be used likewise.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

Subscribed to FOMA PIN1 code, PIN2 code: 0000

1     ▶  or 



2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Enter the current PIN1/PIN2 code

Change PIN code
Enter PIN code
Remaining entries: 3
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code* field ▶ Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code

4 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1/PIN2 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press 

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press  to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION


Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the FOMA terminal lock is activated, making/receiving calls, PushTalk calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and the FOMA terminal lock is activated, those operations become unavailable.

Unlocking the PIN lock

If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, unblock the lock and set a new PIN code.

- The user is notified of the PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) at the time of purchase.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or the PIN lock is blocked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK and PIN1/PIN2 code entered are masked with “*”.

Example Unlocking the PIN1 code's lock

1  on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock

2 Enter the 8-digit PUK

PUK
Enter PUK
Remaining entries: 10
New PIN code
New PIN code - check

3 Select *New PIN code* field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

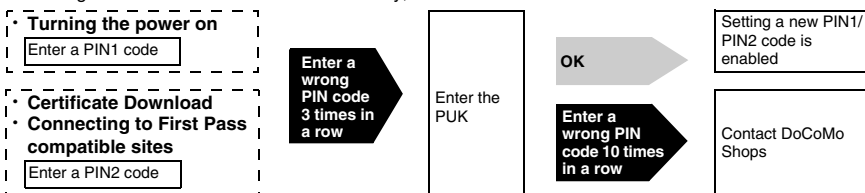
4 Select *New PIN code - check* field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3

5 Press 

The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

INFORMATION

If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available to prevent FOMA terminal from being used by others or to keep your private information and the phonebook entries confidential. You can choose the function to suit your needs.


- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.

- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions are set.

Item	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P154
Remote Lock	Prevents unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others by setting All Lock and IC Card Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P155
Self Mode	Disables the communication functions such as making/receiving of calls or PushTalk calls, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P156
PIM Lock	Disables using of private information functions such as Phonebook, PushTalk Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P157
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls or PushTalk calls.	P158
Privacy Mode Setting	Disables displaying the phonebook and logs, mail, My Picture, i-motion, schedule or i- ppli data and prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P159
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent inadvertent operations.	P160
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P161
IC Card Lock	Prevents from using the IC card function.	P318

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal All Lock

Disables operating the menu functions to prevent unauthorized use by others. Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is on.

To make emergency calls (110,119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press . The emergency call number is displayed as “ * ” in the entry field of the terminal security code.

- When All Lock is on, the set stand-by display is canceled and the default image is displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the set stand-by display reappears.
- Even when All Lock is set, IC Card Lock is not set. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, set All Lock after setting IC Card Lock.
Setting IC Card Lock ➔ P318

Default not set




2 Enter the terminal security code

All locked. is displayed.


Canceling: Enter the terminal security code on the stand-by display

INFORMATION

You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, it is executed.

The calls or PushTalk calls received during All Lock are rejected but, they are recorded as missed calls in the received call history. (The other party hears busy signals for the call, or is notified *Disconnected* for the PushTalk call.) When All Lock is canceled,  with the number of missed calls is displayed on the stand-by display.

i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can also be received when All Lock is on, but the receiving screen, icon for the received mail and reception result screen are not displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.

ToruCa can be obtained by holding up the FeliCa mark to the reader/writer even when All Lock is on, but it cannot be displayed. When All Lock is canceled,  with the number of the ToruCa data is displayed on the stand-by display.

When All Lock is on, the alarm or schedule alarm does not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.

When All Lock is on, the i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the stand-by display.

If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access

Remote Lock

If you make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the preset operating conditions in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, Auto Lock and IC Card Lock are set to prevent unauthorized use by others.

Default OFF

Setting Remote Lock operating conditions



1     


2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set

- Remote lock** : Sets whether to enable or disable Remote Lock.
 • When *OFF* is set, the following items cannot be set.
- Monitoring period** : Sets the time limit from the time of the first incoming call to the time until the specified number of calls will be received (in the 1 to 10 minutes range). Even after the time limit has expired, if the specified number of calls are not received, Remote Lock is not activated. In addition, the number of incoming calls that have been counted is reset.
- Received calls** : Sets the number of voice calls received before Remote Lock is activated (between 3 to 10 times).
- Sender1 to 3** : Sets the original phone number that activates Remote Lock. The number of payphone can also be set.

Setting the sender's information

① Select *Sender1 to 3* field:

② Select *Select sender field* ▶  or 

- When *Sender number* is set, enter a phone number in the entry field. Press  to enter from the phonebook.

③ 

3 Press 

INFORMATION

If the phonebook data in which a pause (P) or timed pause (T) has been set is registered to the sender's information, the information registered after the pause (P) and timed pause (T) is deleted.

Setting Remote Lock

Remote Lock is activated by making a voice call to FOMA terminal under the preset conditions.

- Send your caller ID and make a call to FOMA terminal.
- In the following cases, the counting of incoming calls is not started and Remote Lock is not set.
 - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
 - FOMA terminal is busy or a PushTalk call is being talked.
 - The call cannot be received because FOMA terminal is outside the service area, the power is turned off or Self Mode is on, etc.
- If the following states occur before making the specified number of calls, the time counting is reset.
 - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
 - The power of FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - The set monitoring period has passed.
- Even if All Lock or IC Card Lock is set, Remote Lock can be set.
- When Remote Lock is set while Key Lock is on (when Key Lock Setting is set to *Lock even slide open*), you can cancel All Lock, but you cannot make emergency calls.

1 Make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the conditions set

The guidance notifying that it is locked is played and Remote Lock is set for FOMA terminal.

Canceling:

Enter the terminal security code in FOMA terminal with Remote Lock set to cancel All Lock and then release IC Card Lock.

- Canceling IC Card Lock ➡P318

INFORMATION

The count of incoming calls is only effective for the first call made from the specified sender. After the counting has been initiated, additional received calls from other senders are not counted.

Even if a call is rejected, or transferred by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (excluding when the ringing time is 0 sec), that call is counted as an incoming call.

When Answer Machine or Auto Answer is set, end the call before Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts.

Even if a call or PushTalk call arrives while Remote Lock is on, the call is disconnected. If a call arrives from phone numbers that are set as sender, the guidance informing that Remote Lock is on is played and then the call is disconnected.


Menu 894

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode


Disable all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls/PushTalk calls or sending or receiving mails. Infrared data communication and infrared remote control are also disabled.

Default OFF

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select *Yes*

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

- When you use shortcut operations:  ▶ Select *Yes*

Canceling:  (for over a second)

- When you use shortcut operations: 

INFORMATION

If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.

The PushTalk call received in Self Mode is rejected, and the other party is notified of *Disconnected*.

i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent when Self Mode is set are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. When you receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.

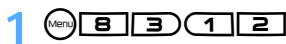

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule


PIM Lock

PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:

- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to *ON*.
- When this function is set to *ON*, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that making or receiving calls after the setting are recorded and dialing from the redial data or received call history can be performed.

Default OFF

**2** Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

PIM Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.


- To cancel the setting: 


When PIM Lock is on

- The following all operations or some settings become unavailable.

• Mail/Chat mail/SMS/Message R/F *1	• iMenu	• Bookmark
• Internet	• Last Visited URL	• i- ppli
• Phonebook/PushTalk phonebook	• Answer Machine/Voice Memo	
• My Picture (<i>Image</i>)	• Melody	• Chara-den
• My document	• Movie Camera	• Sound Recorder
• Bar Code Reader	• miniSD card	• IC card list
• Scheduler	• Notepad	• Headset Button Control
• Alarm Clock	• Own Number	• Virus Scan Function
• ToruCa list	• Data transfer in infrared communication	
- Menu Setting (changing the settings for *Custom1* or *Custom2* of *Type of tile icons*)

*1 Messages can be received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail or the reception result screen is not displayed.

- If the menu is displayed, the icon is indicated by  and the characters are grayed out not to select them. However, when *Normal* is set to *Animation* in Menu Setting, the display is not changed and if you select a menu item, a message indicating that PIM Lock is being set is displayed.

- Even if a call or PushTalk call is received from a caller registered in the phonebook, only phone number is displayed without the caller's name.
-  is not displayed on the stand-by display even when Answer Machine is set because Answer Machine does not operate. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed either.
- The i-channel information is not displayed as ticker on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set as the stand-by display, the substitute image for video-phone call or ring tone, the default setting becomes active while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. When data saved in *Preinstalled* folder is set, however, the setting becomes the set stand-by display or ring tone even if PIM Lock is on.

When PIM Lock is on, the alert tone or vibrator does not notify that the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disable making a call or PushTalk call by dialing a phone number (Keypad Dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook and redial data.
- When this function is set to *ON*, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. The numbers dialed from the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook entries after the setting is made are stored under the redial data.


Default OFF

1



2

Enter the terminal security code ► 1

Keypad Dial Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

- To cancel the setting: 2

When Keypad Dial Lock is on

- The following operations becomes unavailable:
 - Dialing from the received call history
 - Editing, adding, deleting the phonebook data/PushTalk phonebook data
 - Editing and resetting your own number
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
 - Phonebook data transfer to/from external devices
 - Sending i-mode Mail/SMS (Mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party registered in the phonebook can be replied.)
 - Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
 - Using network services by the dial key operation

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook, mail or My Picture while Privacy Mode is on. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i- ppli: Show all Auto start: OFF



2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select each item to set

- When you use the following functions in Privacy Mode, set whether to enter the terminal security code. In addition, set the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically if you do nothing on FOMA terminal in stand-by.

Phonebook & Logs :

Sets for the display of the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail : Sets for the display of the mail messages.

- Setting *Hide secret fldrs* hides the folders with the privacy set to *ON*.

My picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using schedules.

i- ppli : Sets for using i- ppli.

Auto start : Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically.



INFORMATION

While Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *My picture*, *i-motion* and *i- ppli*), if you try to perform the following operations, after the terminal security code is entered, a message is displayed indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled.


- Outgoing Call Setting
- Incoming Call Setting
- Video phone Dialing Image
- Incoming Video phone Setting
- Outgoing Msg. Image
- Incoming Msg. Image
- Retrieving Image
- Image Setting (video-phone)
- Registering new entry/editing data of the phonebook
- Incoming Call Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting of Group Setting
- Sound Setting
- i- ppli settings of Stand-by Display Setting
- Anonymous Caller
- Incoming Msg. Alert
- Incoming Msg. Setting
- Incoming Chat Mail Setting
- Alarm Clock or editing schedule alarm settings (when *i-motion* is selected)
- Editing Own Number
- Incoming setting for Multi Number


If all items except *Auto start* are set to *Show all*, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode

- If you set Privacy Mode to start automatically in Privacy Mode Setting, it is started according to the setting.

1 (for over a second)

Canceling:  (for over a second) ► **Enter the terminal security code**

- While Privacy Mode is on (when *Mail* is set to *Hide secret fldrs*) and the privacy of Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages has been set to *ON*, holding down  for over a second in the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily and displays the folders.

INFORMATION

When you use the function which is set to *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode, if you enter the terminal security code once, entry of the terminal security code is not required until the stand-by display is returned. It is also the same as when using multiple items which are set to *Authorized access*.

(Example) In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy Mode (*Phonebook & Logs* and *My picture* set to *Authorized access*), entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in starting My Picture.

While Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name of the other party registered in the phonebook is not displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails, only the phone number or mail address is displayed. In addition, neither the ring tone, vibrator nor the video-phone substitute image set in the phonebook data operates. They operates according to the FOMA terminal settings.

When you select the mail folder for Message i- ppli or download i- ppli, while Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for i- ppli), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When you delete Message i- ppli while Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *My picture* and *i-motion*), the terminal operates according to Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting, Incoming Videophone Setting instead of the setting of the phonebook or Group Setting of the phonebook for which the data other than the *Preinstalled* folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook. Note that when you set the data except for the *Preinstalled* folder data in the image setting of Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting, Privacy Mode operates by the default setting.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *My picture*), in still image shooting or video recording, shooting while setting a frame cannot be performed. In addition, even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied/backed up to the miniSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *i-motion*), editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.

Preventing inadvertent use of keys

Key Lock

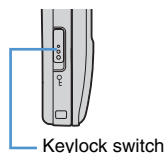
Disable the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into the bag.

Default not set

1 Slide down the keylock switch and then take off your finger

Key Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

- When Key Lock Setting is set to **OFF when slide open**, if you set Key Lock while FOMA terminal is opened, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release. If FOMA terminal is closed on the stand-by display, Key Lock is set.



Canceling: Slide down the keylock switch and then take off your finger

Setting the operation of Key Lock when opening FOMA terminal

Key Lock Setting








Set whether to cancel Key Lock temporarily when opening FOMA terminal

Default OFF when slide open

1       or 


INFORMATION

Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed:

- When there is a voice/video-phone call, receiving the call by , or putting the call on hold by  (A video-phone call cannot be received by )
- When there is a PushTalk call, answering the call by  or , or notifying *Disconnected* by 
- Stopping the alarm sound or ring tone by Any Key Answer keys
- Quitting the function during operation by 
- Canceling All Lock while Remote Lock is on

Even when a call arrives, an alarm sounds or mail or Message R/F is received, if you slide down the keylock switch and then take off your finger, Key Lock can be canceled.

When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF while Key Lock is on or is canceled temporarily, Key Lock is canceled. It is also the same as when the power is manually turned off during canceling temporarily.

Even while Key Lock is on, pressing  lights the display.

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data/the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.





Default not set

1    

2 Enter the terminal security code


Secret Mode is set and  is indicated on the upper part of the display.

Canceling:  on the stand-by display

- Also, press     on the stand-by display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while Secret Mode is on, the ring tone, the incoming vibrator and the incoming lighting set in the phonebook data are used. While not in Secret Mode, each setting in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Alert Lighting Setting is used.

If an animation, Created animation or Flash movie is set on the stand-by display in Secret Mode, the first frame is displayed. If you press , Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, Created animation or Flash movie is played.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting calls are as follows.

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Accept call	Accept	Reject*1	Reject*1
Reject call	Accept	Reject*1	Accept
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept

*1 Even if a call or PushTalk call is received from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without the ring tone sounding and the other party hears busy signals for the call or is notified of *Disconnected* for the PushTalk call.

- This function is activated only when the other party sends the caller ID.
- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- If the ringing time is set to "0" for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded as a received call.
- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.
- This function is also available for incoming PushTalk calls. This function operates when Reject/Accept Call is set for the caller.



Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept



Reject/Accept Call is set for the phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Reject/Accept Call cannot be set for the phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight the target ▶    

2 Enter the terminal security code and select phone numbers

3 Press  or 

-  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
- To cancel the setting: 

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select *Set/Check Settings Accept/Reject call*.

If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, this function's setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled simultaneously.

1     

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ **2** or **3**

- To cancel the setting: **1**

INFORMATION

If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of this function's setting.

i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming call with no caller ID is set for each reason for no caller ID.

- As for the ring tone and image for an incoming voice call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Incoming Call Setting and Sound Setting.
- When there is an incoming video-phone call without caller ID notification or PushTalk call (when the caller does not notify the caller ID), this function operates only when *Call Rejection* is set for the operation of the corresponding reason for no caller ID. If set otherwise, it operates as set in Sound Setting or Incoming Videophone Setting for video-phone calls or operates as set in Sound Setting or Incoming PushTalk Setting for PushTalk calls.

Default Disable settings

1 **Menu** **8** **6** **3** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 **1** to **3**

- Perform Step 2 to 4 repeatedly for every reason to hide the caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ◀P61

3 Select each item to set



Incoming setting :

Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When *Disable settings* is set, the ring tone set to *Phone* in Sound Setting sounds.
- Setting *Call Rejection* rejects an incoming call.
- Setting *Ring alert off* makes the ring tone to be silent.
- When *Select ring tone* or *Movie ringtone* is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
- When *Disable settings* or *Call Rejection* is set, *Show image* cannot be set. When *Movie ringtone* is set, *Show image* is set to *Sync ring alert*.

Show image : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When *Standard image* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* (under *Show image*) is selected, select *Select image* (under *List images*) to select an image.
- When *i-motion* is selected, select a video/i-motion file from the folder list. When the folder list is not displayed, select *Select image*.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion file when selecting

4 Press **Menu**

Next

INFORMATION

When *Call Rejection* has been set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history. *Standard image* is set when the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for *Movie ringtone* in the incoming setting. Note that the image except for Flash movie can be changed by selecting *Select image* in *Show image* field.

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set and a call or PushTalk call without caller ID notification is received, the setting for Reject non-Reg. Caller takes precedence over this function.

Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook Mute Ring Time Setting

The ringer action by a ring tone or vibrator is activated for an incoming voice call, video-phone call or PushTalk call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook or does not notify the phone number after the specified time has elapsed. The function is effective to nuisance calls such as “One-Ring Call”.

- This function cannot be set when Reject non-Reg. Caller is set to *ON*.

Default OFF



2 Select each item to set

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable Mute Ring Time Setting.

- When *OFF* is set, the following items cannot be set.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in *Delay time* in the received call history.

3 Press

When Mute Ring Time Setting is set

When a call or PushTalk call is received from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the arrival will be notified only on the display for the period of specified time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Before the specified time passes, answering an incoming call or PushTalk call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed. In that case, even if *Missed call* is set to *Not display*, incoming calls or PushTalk calls are recorded in the received call history.
- This function is operated even for incoming calls from the other party registered in the phonebook when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*).
- This function also operates in the following cases:
 - When a call or PushTalk call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party who is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

The following functions and services are prioritized over this function's settings:

- Public mode (Driving mode) • Answer Machine • Voice Mail Service • Call Forwarding Service

If you receive a call or PushTalk call from the phone number set to be rejected in Reject/Accept Call or Anonymous Caller, Reject/Accept Call or Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.

In case *Delay time* is set to the same number of seconds as the set time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.


Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook


Reject non-Reg. Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- When *Delayed ring alert* in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to *ON*, this function cannot be set.
- This function is also available for incoming PushTalk calls. This function operates when the caller is registered in the phonebook.

Default OFF

1 

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ 

- To cancel the setting: 

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set

When there is an incoming call or PushTalk call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating a ring tone and the caller hears busy signals for the call, or is notified *Disconnected* for the PushTalk call.

- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The phone rejects the call also in the following cases:
 - When a call or PushTalk call with no caller ID is received even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party who is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller. i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

Other "Safety settings"

The following Safety settings can be used.

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P273
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See
To receive only mail messages sent from the specified domain	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	"i-mode User's Manual".
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode Mail	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th messages sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified addresses	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
To reject all SMS or SMS with no caller ID	Reject all SMS/SMS with no caller ID	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject "Nuisance calls" including malicious calls and repeating misdialled calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P397
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, "FirstPass" (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P199 P221
To prevent use of the IC card function	IC Card Lock	P318
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P478
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P483

Camera

Before using the camera	168
Shooting still images with the camera	Still Camera 172
Recording videos with Movie Camera	Movie Camera 178
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 180
Shooting by various methods	182
Changing the settings for shooting	183
Sending still images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 188
Using Bar Code Reader	Bar Code Reader 189

Before using the camera







Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on FOMA terminal or saved to the miniSD memory card, can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachments or can be sent via infrared communication.

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

About the camera

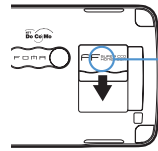
- Note that though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may flicker on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. Flickers may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position. In addition, flickers can be reduced by flicker adjustment. ◀P187
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.
- When you activate Camera or auto focus or switch the in-/out-camera, a motor sound may be heard, but this is not a malfunction.
- The in-camera in FOMA terminal uses CMOS technology. Note that in darker places, a CMOS camera may take a slightly grainier picture compared to one taken by an out-camera (regular CCD camera) and this graininess is not an error.

Points of concern when shooting images

- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ◀P183
The compact light can be used for shooting in a dark place. ◀P173, P178
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing  or . Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing  or . If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press  or .
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects in the Movie Camera mode, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot still images and videos are normal. For still images, setting *Auto save* of Still Image Setting to *No* can be used to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i- ppli, the shot still images and the recorded videos are not saved in *Image* (My Picture) or *i-motion* folder but saved in i- ppli (some i- ppli versions save them in *i-mode* folder or *Deco-Mail picture* folder). Shot images and videos may be automatically sent to the server.
- When the miniSD memory card is set as the destination, do not remove the miniSD memory card while using the camera. FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- If the battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.

Lens cover

- In the stand-by display mode, opening the lens cover activates the out-camera with open cover sound.
- While shooting with the out-camera, closing the lens cover during a shooting stand-by deactivates Camera or Movie Camera with close cover sound. It is not deactivated if the lens cover is closed during a recording/viewing still images or videos, or performing some settings.
- The open cover sound and the close cover sound will not beep in Silent Mode.



Press here and slide to the indicated direction.

About copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode or Internet web site information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on Internet web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

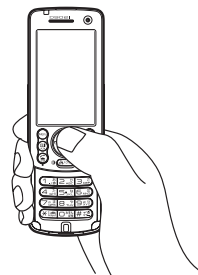
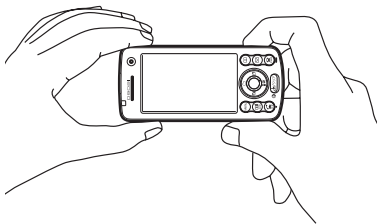
To shoot clean images

When shooting images, be careful to hold your FOMA terminal firmly as shown in the figure.

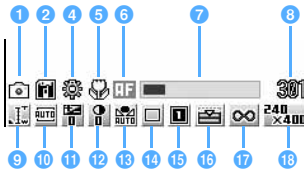
Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.

Shooting can be performed even if FOMA terminal is closed or opened.

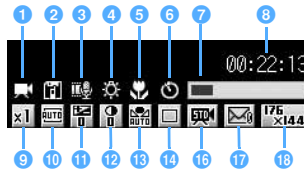
If you use auto timer, the shutter is automatically released, and you can avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.



Viewing the shooting/recording screen



Still image shooting screen



Video recording screen

- 1 Function/status** : Indicates the functions in progress or the status of shooting.
 📷: Still Camera ➡P172 🎥: Movie Camera ➡P178
- 2 Save to** : Indicates the memory to save. ➡P181
 📁: FOMA terminal 📁: miniSD memory card
- 3 Recording type** : Indicates the type of the video to be recorded. ➡P181
- 4 Compact light** : Indicates 📷 when the compact light is ON. ➡P173, P178
- 5 Macro** : Indicates 📷 in the macro mode. ➡P183
- 6 Auto focus** : Indicates 📷 (gray) is displayed during shooting with auto-focus stand-by. During shooting, the state of auto focus is displayed (only for still image shooting with the out-camera). ➡P176
- Auto timer** : Indicates 🕒 during the setting. ➡P183
- 7 Indicator** : **During stand-by for shooting**
 Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting. During auto timer countdown, indicates the remaining time until the shutter is released.
 • The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no still image or video have been saved.
During video recording/pause
 Indicates the size rate of the recorded image size to the file size set for the size restrictions (the size that can be saved when *None* is set).
- 8 Counter** : **During stand-by for shooting**
 During the normal shooting, it indicates the maximum number (estimates) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card in the current setting. Indicates the remaining time until the shutter is released during auto timer count down. Indicates shot number/total shot number during manual continuous shoot of still images.
During video recording/pause
 Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).
- 9 Zoom** : Indicates display magnification of the image. ➡P182
- 10 Scene mode/effect** : Indicates the scene mode/effect. ➡P185
- 11 Brightness** : Indicates the brightness of the still image or video to be shot. ➡P186
- 12 Color density** : Indicates the color density of the still image or video to be shot. ➡P186
- 13 White balance** : Indicates the current white balance setting. ➡P186
- 14 Frame setting** : Indicates the current frame setting. ➡P184
- 15 Continuous shooting** : Indicates the current setting for continuous shooting. ➡P176
- 16 Quality** : Indicates the setting of the quality of the still image and video. ➡P186
- 17 Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions of the file to be saved. ➡P187
- 18 Image size** : Indicates the size of the still image to shoot and the video to record. ➡P185

INFORMATION

The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i- ppli. You can only switch the in-camera/out-camera, switch the macro mode/normal mode, turn on the compact light, start auto timer and zoom in/out can be operated.

During video recording, when the horizontal shot for 320 x 240 (QVGA) is taken place, **■ STANDBY** (recording stand-by), **● REC** (recording) and **II PAUSE** (in pause) are indicated and the display position for the counter is changed:

Still image files/video files

Item	Still image file	Video file
File format	JPEG (compatible to Exif format, PRINT Image Matching)	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method		Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	jpg	3gp
File name/display name/title	Automatically set by the shooting date/time. Example: For 12:34:56 on January 23, 2006 20060123123456 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The file name and display name can be changed after shooting ➡P349. If the date and time of FOMA terminal are not set, the file name, display name and title (for video only) appear as "-----". 	
Mail attachment/output	Files can be attached to the mail to send and can also be imported to PCs and other terminals by using the miniSD memory card and proprietary data link software.	

Maximum saved number of still images

The number of still images that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card varies depending on the settings of quality, image size and size restrictions or the shooting conditions.

- The quality, image size and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

Number of still images that can be saved in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Quality \ Size	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	240 x 400	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1728 x 2304
Economy	751	751	751	534	432	412	197	197	76	56	17
Standard	751	751	698	394	324	313	141	137	47	34	10
Fine	751	698	478	239	201	197	83	82	26	19	6

Number of still images that can be saved in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Capacity/Quality \ Size	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	240 x 400	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1200 x 1600	1728 x 2304	
16 MB	Economy	2057	1600	1309	847	685	654	313	313	121	89	27
	Standard	1800	1440	1107	626	514	496	225	218	74	54	17
	Fine	1600	1107	757	320	320	313	132	130	41	30	10
32 MB	Economy	4320	3360	2749	1778	1440	1374	657	657	254	187	57
	Standard	3780	3024	2326	1314	1080	1042	472	458	158	114	36
	Fine	3360	2326	1591	795	672	657	277	274	87	63	22

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the quality, image size, recording type and size restriction settings and the recording conditions.

- The quality, image size, recording type and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting.

Recording time of videos that can be saved in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Recording time per 1 recording (unit: second)				Maximum recording time on FOMA terminal (unit: minute)			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	112	70	51	21	63	39	29	11
		Video only	190	96	71	24	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	87	45	30	11	49	25	17	6
		Video only	128	54	36	12	72	30	20	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	32	17	13	6	18	9	7	3
		Video only	36	18	14	6	20	10	7	3
Msg attach (L)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	189	119	86	36	63	40	28	12
		Video only	321	161	120	41	108	54	40	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	148	76	51	19	49	25	17	6
		Video only	217	91	61	21	73	30	20	7
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	54	29	23	10	18	9	7	3
		Video only	61	30	24	10	20	10	8	3

Recording time of videos that can be saved in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: minute

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Capacity: 16 MB				Capacity: 32 MB			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attach (S)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	92	57	42	17	194	121	88	36
		Video only	157	79	58	19	330	166	123	41
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	72	37	24	9	151	78	52	19
		Video only	105	44	29	9	222	93	62	20
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	10	4	55	29	22	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	62	31	24	10
Msg attach (L)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	92	58	42	17	194	122	88	37
		Video only	157	78	58	20	330	165	123	42
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	72	37	24	9	152	78	52	19
		Video only	106	44	29	10	223	93	62	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	55	29	23	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	62	30	24	10
None	128 x 96	Video + Voice	92	53	42	17	194	122	88	37
		Video only	157	78	58	20	330	165	123	42
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	72	37	24	9	152	78	52	19
		Video only	106	44	29	10	223	93	62	21
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	26	14	11	4	55	29	23	10
		Video only	29	14	11	4	62	30	24	10

Shooting still images with the camera

- A shutter sound is heard even when *Silent* is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on.

The image can be shot by focusing to the object in the center of the screen by using auto focus function.

- The distance that auto focus brings the camera into focus is from approx. 30 cm or more for the standard mode, and approx. 7 to 30 cm for the macro mode.
- Shooting with auto focus cannot be performed when shooting with the in-camera. The image is shot by fixed focus.

1 Open the lens cover

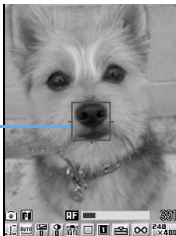


Still image shooting screen

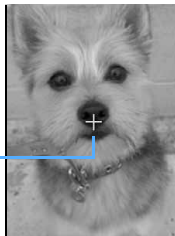
The call indicator turns on in blue and Camera is activated.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down for over a second.
- To activate Camera by shooting with the in-camera: (for over a second)
- During shooting stand-by, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon) (only when shooting with the out-camera).
 - : Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode (When the full mode is set, the icons and guide row disappear at the bottom of the screen).
 - : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.
 - (for over a second) : Switches between Still Camera/Movie Camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and or



Focus frame



Green +

The orange focus frame is displayed on the center of the screen and the focus is adjusted. When the camera is brought into focus, the focus frame changes to a green +. The shutter sound sounds, the compact light and the call indicator flash in red, a still image is shot and a confirmation screen is displayed.

- When shooting with the in-camera, a still image is shot without displaying the focus frame.
- If you turn the compact light on, light intensity increases at the moment the shutter clicked.
- If *Auto save* of Still Image Setting is set to *Yes*, the shot still image is saved and the shooting screen reappears. The operations after Step 3 are not needed.

Shooting by focusing to other than the center of the screen (Shooting with focus lock):

- ① **Set the object which you want to focus in the center of the screen** ▶ (half press)







The orange focus frame is displayed. When the camera is brought into focus, the confirmation sound sounds and the focus frame changes to a green +.

- If you release your fingers from , the focus is released.


- ② **Point the camera at the position where you want to shot while pressing by half** ▶ **Press until the shutter sound sounds (full press)**

A still image is shot.

3 View and confirm the still image

- To save the still image immediately: Go to Step 4
- To retake another image without saving the shot image: 
- To enlarge the still image with the display size of 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and check it: 
 - Press  to return to the original size.
- To display the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) or more at the same size and check it: 
 -  to scroll. Press  to return to the original size.


Sending the shot still image via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select *Yes* to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed. Depending on the image size or file size setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the size of 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save it to Data Box. 

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the still image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size and select *Msg attach:Small* to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you attach the shot still image into the mail text. Select *Yes* to attach it into the mail text, select *No* to set it to the attached file.

Setting the image for the stand-by display: **Select *Yes***

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- The display size of the still image can be selected depending on the image size. 
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72


(phonebook):     **or**   **Select *Yes***

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

Changing the title: **Enter the title (up to 31 characters (30 characters for continuous shot images) regardless of one-byte or two-byte)**

Adjusting the brightness or color balance:




This brings you to the still image correction mode. For the subsequent steps, 

- When the image size is 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M), it cannot be corrected.
- When a frame is set in four-frame shooting, mirror images cannot be corrected.

Saving as mirror image (only when shooting with the in-camera):

- When a frame is set, or the image size is 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) and the shooting date/time in Still Image Setting is set to *Date* or *Date+Time*, mirror image saving is unavailable.

Switching the normal display/mirror display (only when shooting with the in-camera):

Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card:

- After saving the still images, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

Displaying the list of images stored in FOMA terminal: or





- When you display the images in the miniSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

4 or

The shot still images are saved in *Camera* folder of *Image* (My Picture).

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved in *My picture* folder of the miniSD memory card.

Checking the saved still image immediately: **Select the still image**

- Operations while displaying the images  P320 Step 3 in “Displaying images”
- Press  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing  and then select the still image. Press  3 times to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli.

INFORMATION

[General information]

Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.

When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, delete unnecessary images or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values according to the screen.

Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.

If there is an incoming call or PushTalk call before the shutter sound is heard during stand-by for shooting still image, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and a still image has been shot already, the still image is saved automatically if *Auto save* is set to *Yes*. If *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call or communication. However, the shot still images may be discarded depending on the timing of receiving calls.


You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook or mail:

- Composing mail
- Stand-by display settings
- Saving images in the phonebook
- Adjustment
- Displaying the same size
- Switching where to save
- Displaying the image list

Following settings should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera respectively. When you switch between them, the settings also change accordingly.

- Zooming
- Scene mode/effect
- Frame
- Continuous shooting
- Image quality
- Size restrictions
- Image size

Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

Even if you shoot while setting the shooting date/time to *Date* or *Date + Time* in Still Image Setting, the date or the time is not displayed on the confirmation screen. The date or the time is displayed on the saved still image. In addition, on the still image with the display size of 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE) or more, if you press  on the confirmation screen and display the still image at the same size, the date or the time is displayed.

If you shoot image with the image size of 1728 x 2304 (4M), the file size of the shot still image may exceed 500 Kbytes. In this case, you cannot send the still image via infrared communication. You can save, copy or move the still image to the miniSD memory card, but you cannot copy or move it to your FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card.

[Shooting with auto focus]

In the following cases, the camera may not be automatically focused using auto focus:

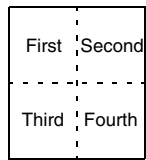
- When shooting an object of which color has no shading
- When shooting in a dark place
- When there is light in the shooting area
- When the shooting object is moving
- When shooting while moving FOMA terminal

During adjusting the focus, **AF** (gray) on the screen changes to **AF** (black). In addition, in case of shooting with focus lock or manual continuous shooting, if the camera comes into focus, changes to **AF** (green). When the camera does not come into focus, the focus frame may change to a red “+” and **AF** (red) may be displayed.

Shooting continuously

The following types of shooting can be performed. In any case, automatic continuous shooting which shoots automatically at about 0.4 seconds intervals and manual continuous shooting which shoots by one piece at a time can be performed.

Shooting procedure	Description
Automatic continuous shooting/ Manual continuous shooting	<p>Up to 6 still images can be shot continuously. The shot images are saved in the format of Created animation in <i>Image</i> and can be displayed continuously like animations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The number of images to be shot is set in Still Image Setting. • The image sizes which can be shot are 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), QVGA (240 x 320), 240 x 400 (stand-by) and 352 x 288 (CIF). • If you use the function to cancel Created animation in <i>Image</i>, you can divide the continuous shots into individual still image.
Automatic four-frame shooting/ Manual four-frame shooting	<p>Shots 4 still images of the size of 120 x 160 and makes the images arranged to one still image.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The image size which can be shot is only 240 x 320 (QVGA).



- When shooting with the out-camera, the image is shot with auto focus. In case of automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting, the focus is adjusted when shooting the first image, and after that, the image is shot with the same focus as the first sheet. In case of manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting, the image is shot by focusing the camera every one sheet.
- When Camera is activated from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli, continuous shooting/four-frame shooting cannot be performed. However, continuous shooting can be performed depending on i- ppli.

1 Open the lens cover

Camera is activated.

- Also, Camera can be activated by holding down for over a second.
- To activate Camera by shooting with the in-camera: (for over a second)

2 Select a type of continuous shooting



Icon of continuous shoot

① to highlight the icon for continuous shooting


- The cursor does not move to the icon for continuous shooting on the image size in which continuous shooting cannot be performed.
Changing the image size ▶ P183

② to switch the icon ▶




- : Automatic continuous shooting : Automatic four-frame shooting
- : Manual continuous shooting : Manual four-frame shooting
- To cancel continuous shooting: to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to switch to ▶

3 Point the camera at the object and or

In the auto continuous shoot, the still images are continuously shot till their count reaches the predefined number, each shooting with the shutter sound for the shoot. In the manual continuous mode, the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press or for each. A confirmation screen is displayed after shooting the predefined number.

- If *Auto save* of Still Image Setting is set to *Yes*, the shooting screen reappears after still images of the predefined number are shot and saved. The operations after Step 4 are not needed.
- To stop manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting on the way, press .
 - When *Auto save* is set to *Yes* in manual continuous shooting, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed.
 - In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.
- Automatic continuous shooting and automatic four-frame shooting cannot be interrupted on the way.
- During shooting, the compact light turns on in red. Also, the call indicator turns on in red (auto continuous shooting by the in-camera), or in alternating colors (shooting by the out-camera, or manual continuous shooting by the in-camera).

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously

- Functions available on the confirmation screen are the same as in normal shooting.
- To discard the still images and retake another one: 
- When you have shot two or more images by automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting, each time you press , the display switches between one image and thumbnail display. While one image is being displayed, pressing  displays the previous or next still image.

5 or

The still images are saved.

- Saving destination and process are the same as in normal shooting.

Saving only one still image (only automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

① Select a still image



- The still image to be saved is displayed when one image is displayed.

② (for a over second) ▶ Select *Yes*

- When shooting with the in-camera, select *Save normal* or *Save mirror*.

Saving the selected still images (only automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

① while displaying thumbnail ▶ Select still images

- Press  to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press .

② ▶ Select *Yes*

- When shooting with the in-camera, select *Save normal* or *Save mirror*.

Saving all the still images as mirror images (only when shooting with the in-camera):

INFORMATION

If a call or PushTalk call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during manual continuous shoot, shooting is ended at that point. In case of manual continuous shooting, when *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the still images already shot are automatically saved. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call, communication or alarm. When manual four-frame shooting is performed, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.

If a call arrives or PushTalk call or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during auto continuous shoot, shooting is continued. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call, communication or alarm. Ring alert or alarm sound is disabled while the shutter sound is heard. If you select one image or multiple images from the still images shot continuously and save it/them, the still images which were not saved are discarded.






If the still images shot continuously are saved in the miniSD memory card, they are saved as a still image per sheet. In case of manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting, if the compact light has been turned on, it may take time for a while before the next still image can be shot after shooting.

- At the time of purchase, the video with sound is set to be shot. It can be changed in Recording Setting.
- Shutter sound is heard even when *Silent* is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active.

1 ▶ Open the lens cover





The call indicator flashes in blue, and Movie Camera is activated.



- During stand-by for recording, the following operations are enabled:
 -  : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon).*¹
 -  : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot.* (only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA))*¹
 -  : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.
 -  (for over a second) : Switches between Movie Camera/Still Camera.
- *¹ You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.


2 Point the camera at the object and press or





- The shutter sound is heard and recording is started and  switches to ● and the compact light blinks in red, and the call indicator blinks in alternating colors.
- Press  to pause while recording. ● switches to || and the compact light lit in red and the call indicator lit in green. Press  or , and the recording restarts.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen is displayed.

- If *Auto save* of Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the shooting screen reappears after saving the video shot. The operations after Step 4 are not needed.
- If the size of video file reaches the limit while recording, recording is stopped and video recorded up to that point is saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

4 View and confirm the video shot

- To save the still image immediately: Go to Step 5
- To retake another video without saving the shot video: 
- To play the video: 
 - When *Auto Play* in Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded video is played automatically.

Sending the recorded video via mail:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select *Yes* to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the video cannot be attached.

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the video cannot be attached.
- When the quality of video is set to *HQ+*, the video cannot be attached.

Setting the video for the stand-by display: **2** **1** **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select *Yes (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen asking whether or not to cancel it is displayed continuously.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Adding the video to phonebook entries: **2** **2** or **3** **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To register updating, select the phonebook data to register.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to *Video only*.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

Changing the title: **3** **1** **Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte)**

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

Inserting a ticker: **3** **2** **Select Yes**

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers".

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card: **5**

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 490 Kbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.
- After saving the videos, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

Displaying the list of videos saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card: **6**

1 or **2**

- When you display the videos in the miniSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

5 Press or

The recorded video is saved in *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in *Movie* folder of the miniSD memory card.

Checking the saved video immediately: **Select a video**

- After the confirmation, press twice to return to the video recording screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing and then select the video. Press 3 times to return to the video recording screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software.

INFORMATION



When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded.

Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.

If you set the size restrictions to *None*, data may not be saved when the battery power goes out during recording. When there is not enough memory or the saved data exceeds the maximum number, delete unwanted videos or sounds or change settings of the size restrictions according to the screen.

You should avoid a continuous shooting of video/sound that lasts 10 hours or more, because you may fail to display or replay the video/sound if it is saved in the miniSD memory card.

When a call or PushTalk call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during video recording, the recording is stopped at that point. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when *Auto save* is set to *Yes*. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed.

If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process stops. If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the data that has been recorded till then is automatically stored; pressing  returns you to the recording screen. If *Auto save* is set to *No*, pressing  displays a confirmation screen. Even after you return to the recording screen, you cannot operate it while you see a message indicating that the battery level is too low for recording.

If an alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm or battery alarm recorded at the end of the saved video/sound.

You cannot use the following functions on the confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.

- Composing mail
- Inserting a ticker
- Stand-by display settings
- Switching where to save
- Saving videos in the phonebook
- Displaying the video list

The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.

- Zooming
- Image size
- Scene mode/effect
- Recording type
- Frame
- Image quality
- Size restrictions

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

- Images/videos cannot be set when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software. In this case, *Camera time-out* is automatically reset to *1 min*.

Default

Still Image Setting

Image size: 240 x 400 (stand-by) Quality: Standard Shooting date/time: None Size restrictions: None
 Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Continuous shot photos: 6 Auto save: No Save to: Phone
 Camera time-out: 1 min. Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Open cover sound: Open cover sound1
 Close cover sound: Close cover sound1 Set lighting: Always on


Recording Settings

Quality: STD Recording Type: Video + Voice Size restrictions: Msg attach: Small Size: 176 x 144 (QCIF)
 Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto Play: No Auto save: No Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
 Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 Open the lens cover 




When changing Recording Setting:    ▶ Open the lens cover 

2 Select each item to set 

Details on the set items

: Setting available × : Setting not available

Item	Still image	Video/sound	Description
<i>Image size/ Size*1</i>			Sets the image size for still images/video to be shot. ●P185 • The image size cannot be set to 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) during shooting still images with the in-camera.
<i>Quality*1</i>		×	Sets the quality for the still image files to be saved. ●P186

Item	Still image	Video/sound	Description
<i>Shooting date/time</i>		×	Sets whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of the still image.
<i>Quality*1 (video)</i>	×		Sets the quality of video/sound files to be saved. ◀P186
<i>Recording Type*1</i>	×		Sets the type of video/sound to be recorded.  : <i>Video + Voice</i>  : <i>Video only</i>  : <i>Voice only</i> (Sound Recorder)
<i>Size restrictions*1</i>			Sets the size restrictions of files to be saved. ◀P187
<i>Auto-timer duration</i>			Sets the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds).
<i>Continuous shot photos</i>		×	Sets the number of images shot continuously (2 to 6 images).
<i>Auto Play</i>	×		Sets whether to play the video/sound automatically when a confirmation screen is displayed.
<i>Auto save</i>			Select <i>Yes</i> to save the shot still images or video/sounds automatically in the specified destination. Selecting <i>No</i> displays a confirmation screen after shooting/recording.
<i>Save to</i>			Sets the memory to save the shot still image/video.
<i>Camera time-out</i>			Sets the duration of time until Still Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder turns off when no operation is made.
<i>Shutter sound</i>			Select the shooting confirmation sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The selected sound is played.
<i>Open cover sound</i>		×	The sound played when the lens cover is opened to activate Camera should be selected from any of the open cover sounds 1 to 3 and <i>OFF</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The selected sound is played. However, it is not played if <i>OFF</i> is set.
<i>Close cover sound</i>		×	The sound played when the lens cover is closed to deactivate Camera/ Movie Camera should be selected from any of the close cover sounds 1 to 3 and <i>OFF</i> . This setting should be done in Still Image Setting, while it also changes the sound for deactivating Movie Camera. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The selected sound is played. However, it is not played if <i>OFF</i> is set.
<i>Set lighting</i>			When <i>Always on</i> is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the still image shooting/video recording screen is displayed. Setting <i>Phone settings</i> applies the settings of Display Light Setting (▶P141).

*1 Items that are separately set by an out-camera and in-camera. The out-camera setting while using the out-camera and the in-camera setting while using the in-camera will be changed when the item is set.

INFORMATION

Shooting date/time cannot be set when *Image size* is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) in Still Image Setting. In Still Image Setting, 240 x 400 (stand-by), 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for *Image size* and *Msg attach:Small* for *Size restrictions* cannot be set simultaneously. In addition, 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for *Image size* and *Msg attach:Large* for *Size restrictions* cannot be set simultaneously.

In Recording Setting, *LP* or *HQ+* for *Quality* and *Voice only* for *Recording Type* cannot be set at the same time. When *Phone* is set for *Save to*, *None* cannot be set for *Size restrictions*.

If Recording Setting is set in Movie Camera or Sound Recorder, both settings for Movie Camera and Sound Recorder are changed. However, the qualities are separately set with Movie Camera and Sound Recorder.

Shooting by various methods

Zooming



The display magnifications which can be changed in each image size are as follows:

Shooting method	Image size	Out-camera		In-camera	
		Max. display magnification	Zoom scale	Max. display magnification	Zoom scale
Still image shooting	96 x 72 (phonebook)	28 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	28 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	16 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	240 x 320 (QVGA)	8 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	240 x 400 (stand-by)	6 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	352 x 288 (CIF)	6 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)	3 times	65 scales	2 times	2 scales
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)	4 times	65 scales	-	-
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)	3 times	65 scales	-	-
	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)	2 times	6 scales	-	-
1728 x 2304 (4M)	2 times	6 scales	-	-	
Video recording	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)	20 times	9 scales	2 times	2 scales
	176 x 144 (QCIF)	16 times	8 scales	2 times	2 scales
	320 x 240 (QVGA PORTRAIT)	4 times	3 scales	2 times	2 scales
	320 x 240 (QVGA LANDSCAPE)	8 times	5 scales	-	-

1 on the still image shooting screen/the video recording screen



Each time you press, the slider shifts.










- You can also press **[1]**, then shift the slider with  and press .
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

Still image shooting:

With the out-camera          
Normal Maximum

With the in-camera  : Normal  : 2 times

Video recording:


 : Normal  : 2 times  : 4 times  : 6 times  : 8 times
 : 10 times  : 12 times  : 16 times  : 20 times


Using auto timer

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified number of second has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

- The number of second until the shutter is released can be set in Still image Setting or Recording Setting.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen

Auto timer is set and  is indicated.





- To cancel the setting:   again

2 Point the camera at the object and press or



Icon of auto timer

The countdown sound is heard, the compact light flashes in red and the call indicator flashes in green. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The intervals of sounds and flashing become shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of second has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- If you press  or  when shooting a still image with the out-camera, countdown is started after focusing by the auto focus function, and when the set number of seconds has passed, the image is shot in that focus.
- To stop the auto timer on the way: 
- Note that shooting is stopped if the alarm or alarm schedule time gets to the setting time or  is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting nearby object


Macro


When shooting a object from a very short distance, switching to Macro enables the camera to bring into focus. Macro is unavailable for shooting with the in-camera. The distances in which the camera can be brought into focus by Macro are about 7 to 30 cm for shooting still images with auto focus. Except the time of shooting still images with auto focus, the camera is brought into focus in about 7 to 11 cm.

1 on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



Icon of the macro mode

Switches to the macro mode and  is indicated.

- To cancel the setting:  again
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

Changing the settings for shooting

Frames, image size, scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance, quality, size restrictions or flicker adjustment can be set.

- The following settings will be kept even if you finish using Camera or Movie camera.
 - Image size
 - Brightness
 - Color density
 - Quality
 - Size restrictions
 - Flicker adjustment

Default Frame: not set Size: (Still image)240 x 400 (Video)176 x 144
SceneModes: Full auto Brightness: ± 0 ColorDnsty: ± 0 WhiteBainc: Auto
Quality: (Still image)Standard (Video)STD Size Limit: (Still image)None (Video)Msg attach S
Adjust flicker: Auto

Example Setting a frame

1 to highlight the icon of frame on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen



Icon of Frame
Name for Icons

- Similarly, to change other settings than a frame, highlight each icon.
- Keys **[1]** to **[9]** and **[0]** are assigned to the icon in order from the left. The cursor also moves by pressing the following keys:

[1] : Zoom ◀P182	[6] : Frame	[0] : Image size
[2] : Scene mode	[7] : Continuous shooting (only when shooting still images) ▶P176	
[3] : Brightness		
[4] : Color density	[8] : Quality	
[5] : White balance	[9] : Size restrictions	
- Flicker adjustment cannot be set by the icon. Setting ▶P187

2 to highlight a frame ▶

- As in the case of changing other settings, change the value with **[◀]** and press **[▶]**.
- For scene mode, white balance, frame, continuous shooting, quality, size restrictions and image size, you can also set the value by pressing the corresponding keys (**[2]**, **[5]** to **[9]**, **[0]**) and then pressing **[▶]**.

Frames

You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

- **[▶]**: Frame is set **[▶]**: Frame is canceled
- The frames registered in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (QVGA) and 240 x 400 (stand-by). ▶P324
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE), 480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M) for image size of still image, or 320 x 240 (QVGA) for image size of video is set.
- Frames cannot be applied when Camera is started from the phonebook, i- ppli software or mail.
- To cancel the setting: **[6]** (for over a second)

INFORMATION















You can also select frames from the list by pressing **[MENU]** **[3]** **[1]** on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing **[MENU]** **[3]** **[3]** on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen. Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.

If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the added frame becomes selectable by pressing **[MENU]** **[3]** **[4]** on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:















Shooting method	Size	Icon	Sending mail available/not available
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	240 x 320 (QVGA)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) when attaching files to mail.
	240 x 400 (stand-by)		
	352 x 288 (CIF)		
	640 x 480 (VGA LANDSCAPE)		
	480 x 640 (VGA PORTRAIT)* ¹		
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)* ¹		
1200 x 1600 (UXGA)* ¹			
1728 x 2304 (4M)* ¹			
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	320 x 240 (QVGA)		Images cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.











*¹ This is a valid image size only when shooting with the out-camera


- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500 Kbytes.
- The still image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal other than D902i is 240 x 320 (QVGA).
- The size restrictions setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.
- During i-ppli running, the image size cannot be set to 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) and 1728 x 2304 (4M).
If the still image shooting screen is displayed during i-ppli running when the image size is set to 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M), the image size is changed to 960 x 1280 (SXGA).

Scene mode/effect






24 setting types are available according to color tone and shooting situation.

-  **Full auto** : Standard scene mode/effect. Use this mode normally.
-  **Sensitivity up** : Enhances the camera sensitivity for shooting in the dark.
-  **Super sensitivity up** : Shoots a black-and-white picture even in a dim light situation.
-  **Adjust backlight** : Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.
-  **Spot photometry** : Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.
-  **Scenery** : Suitable for shooting nature or cityscape vividly. Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.
-  **Night** : Slows the shutter speed for night shooting. Hold the mobile firmly to prevent blurring.
-  **Twilight** : Suitable for shooting the beautiful sunset scenery. With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.
-  **Surf & Snow** : Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.
-  **Sport** : Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot fast-moving objects with less jiggling.
-  **Pet** : Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.
-  **Gourmet** : Suitable for shooting cuisines and sweets.
-  **Letter** : Enhances letter outlines.
-  **Color reversal** : Shoots in negative colors. Images look just like negative prints.

-  **Painting** : Shot images will look like oil paintings.
-  **Woodcut** : Enables you to shoot a woodprint-like images, taking advantage of black-and-white contrast.
-  **Whiten** : Skin-color looks brighter and whiter. Recommended for indoor shooting.
-  **Suntan** : Skin-color looks sun-tanned. Recommended for outdoor shooting situation.
-  **Soft touch** : Blurs the outlines to soften the image.
-  **Mono tone (red)** : Shoots in monotone of red gradation.
-  **Mono tone (green)** : Shoots in monotone of green gradation.
-  **Mono tone (blue)** : Shoots in monotone of blue gradation.
-  **Monochrome** : Shoots images like black-and-white photographs.
-  **Sepia** : Shoots in sepia colors.






- *Super sensitivity up*, *Color reversal*, *Painting*, and *Woodcut* settings are unavailable during the in-camera shooting. During the auto continuous shooting, you cannot set *Night*.
- In *Night* mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the image when shootings are done in a low-light situation.
- In *Sport* or *Pet* mode, shoot in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images shot in a room or a low-light situation.
- In *Gourmet* or *Letter* mode, switch to Macro when shooting from a close range.
- Press  **1** on the still image shooting screen/video recording screen to select a mode while viewing the description of each mode.

Brightness

: -2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- Adjusting brightness may not have much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to *Super sensitivity up*, *Twilight*, *Woodcut*, *Whiten*, or *Suntan*.






Color density

: -2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- Adjusting color density may not have much effect depending on the object.
- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to *Super sensitivity up*, *Letter*, *Woodcut*, *Whiten*, or *Suntan*.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting.


-  **Auto** : Adjusts white balance automatically.
-  **Sunlight** : Sets when shooting outdoor in fine weather.
-  **Cloudy** : Sets when shooting in cloudy weather, shade or evening.
-  **Fluorescent** : Sets when shooting under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.
-  **Bulb light** : Sets when shooting under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- Unavailable when the scene mode/effect is set to *Super sensitivity up*, *Scenery*, *Surf & Snow*, *Woodcut*, *Mono tone (red)*, *Mono tone (green)*, *Mono tone (blue)*, *Monochrome*, or *Sepia*.

Quality of still images/videos


During still image shooting


-  **Economy** : Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced.


 **Standard** : Provides the standard quality


 **Fine** : Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged.

During video recording

 **LP** : Provides the lowest quality. The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.

 **STD** : Provides the standard quality

 **HQ** : The video motion becomes smooth.

 **HQ+** : Provides the highest quality. The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest. The shot video cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.

Size restrictions

During still image shooting

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduce the file size to save the image.

 **Msg attach:Small*1** :

Restricts the file size to 9000 bytes. The image with this file size is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.

 **Msg attach:Large*1** :

Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes. You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.

 **None** :

Not restrict the file size

- **Msg attach:Small** can be set only for the image with the size of 240 x 320 (QVGA) or smaller.
- This setting cannot be changed for the image with the size of 1200 x 1600 (UXGA) or 1728 x 2304 (4M).
- The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

During video recording

When the file size of video exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

 **Msg attach:Small*1** :

Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes. The image with this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal which does not support large message.

 **Msg attach:Large*1** :

Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes. The image with this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large message.

 **None** :

Not restrict the file size. When the memory to save is set to **Phone** in Recording Setting, you cannot select this.




- When you attach the shot video to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal or a PC, set to other than **None**.



*1 When you select the icon, **Msg attach S** or **Msg attach L** is displayed on the screen.

Flicker adjustment

If you set the flicker adjustment according to the power supply frequency of the area of use when the screen flickers under a fluorescent light etc., the flicker may be able to be reduced.

- Even if you adjust the flicker under a strong light source, the flicker may not be disappeared.
- If the setting is changed, the setting for flicker adjustment for video-phone can also be changed.

1    on the still image shooting screen/video recording screen

2  to 

Auto : Adjusts to reduce the flicker automatically.

50Hz (East-Japan) : Adjusts according to the electromagnetic wave frequency of Eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan) : Adjusts according to the electromagnetic wave frequency of Western Japan.

Restoring the default settings during shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment to the default settings.

- For the scene mode/effect, only the out-camera setting is reset during the out-camera shooting; only the in-camera setting is reset during the in-camera shooting.

1    on the still image shooting screen/the video recording screen


2 Select *Yes*

Sending still images shot during voice calls


One-shot Message

Send the still image shot during a voice call by attaching it to i-mode Mail to the other party during the call.

- Set the memory to save to *Phone* in Still Image Setting to use this function.


1  during a voice call

2 Shoot a still image

- When *Yes* is set for *Auto save* in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If *Yes* is selected, the shot still image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press  to highlight the still image.

3   Select *Yes*

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If the mail address of the other party during talking has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*).

- Depending on the image size or the file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image size to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save the image to Data Box. 
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size, select *Msg attach:Small* to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 9,000 bytes to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste the shot still image into the mail text. Select *Yes* to paste it into the mail text, select *No* to set to the attached file.

- Press to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press on the shooting screen.

4 Compose i-mode Mail and send it

- To return to the talking screen:

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be scanned using the camera. The scanned data can be saved as the phonebook or bookmark data. Also, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save the scanned data up to five items.
- Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- The barcodes and two-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ●P441

JAN Code



The JAN code is one of the barcodes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The barcodes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.

The left JAN code shows the numeral data “4942857121209”.

QR Code



The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

The left QR code shows the text data “FOMA D902i”.

Scanning the code

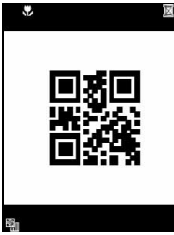
Activating Bar Code Reader switches to Macro automatically. Keep the out-camera about 6 to 9 cm away from the code to scan.





1 ▶ Open the lens cover

- During scanning the barcodes, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switches the compact light on ()/off (no icon).
 - : Switches between the normal mode (no icon)/macro mode ().
- Switch to the normal mode before scanning the large size codes.

2 Scan the code

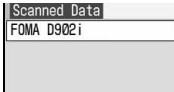


When you point the out-camera toward the code, the code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.

- When it is hard to scan the code, if you adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the out-camera, the code may be able to be scanned.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon  indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to .

Re-scanning the code: 

3



The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When five data has already saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the saved data. Select *Yes* to delete the saved data.

Copying the text data in the scanned data:

①   ▶ **Select the start position to copy**


- To copy the entire text data:  

② **Select the end position to copy**

Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



- Press  to cancel scanning on the way. Select *Yes* when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned QR code data.


This grid indicate the total number of QR codes.





Green: last scanned Blue: scan completed Gray: yet unscanned

Remaining number of QR codes/total number of QR codes

INFORMATION

When the ring volume for call or mail is set to *Silent* or Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the confirmation sound for scanning the barcode does not sound.

Even if you press  on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select *Switch mode Bar code reader*, Bar Code Reader can be used.

Press   on the barcode reading screen and press  or  to switch to Still Camera or Movie Camera. When Bar Code Reader is started from other than the stand-by display, switching is not available.

Bar Code Reader can be activated from i- ppli software that supports Bar Code Reader. When Bar Code Reader is activated from i- ppli software, the scanned data is saved and used by i- ppli.

The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr ("jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name "20060123123400.jan", for example, means the JAN code scanned at January 23, 2006 12:34. When there are any previously saved data in the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the date and time part of the file name appears as "-----" if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set. The file name cannot be changed.

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 ▶ Open the lens cover

2 ▶ Select the scanned data

Deleting the scanned data: Select the data ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

• To delete all: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

3 Select the data to add to the phonebook ▶ (Add new data) or (Update) ▶ or

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed with the selected data entered.

• To register updating, select the phonebook data.

Adding all data to the phonebook at one time: Select *Add to phonebook* ▶ or

The registration screen for the phonebook is displayed. The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.

Sending i-mode Mail: Select a mail address or *Compose message*

The mail composition screen is displayed.

• When *Compose message* is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites: Select a URL ▶ Select *Yes*

Saving URLs as bookmarks:

① Select a URL ▶ or select *Add bookmark*

② Select a folder

• When *Add bookmark* is selected, the site name is also saved depending on the data.

Starting i- ppli: Select *Start i- ppli*

Making a voice call or a video-phone call/dialing a Push Talk call

① Select a phone number ▶ Set the call conditions ◀ P36

② ▶ Select *Yes*

Saving still images

① Select a file name of a still image ▶ Select *Save*

• To display a still image: Select *Display*

② Select each item to set ▶ ◀ P349

③ Select a folder to save

Saving melodies:

① Select a file name of melody ▶ Select *Save*

• To play the melody: Select *Play*

② Enter the display name ▶

The melody is saved in *Data transfer* folder of *Melody* of Data Box.

MEMO

i-mode/i-motion

What's i-mode?	194
Displaying sites	
Displaying sites	198
Reading and operating sites	200
Using My Menu	My Menu 202
Changing your current i-mode password into another number	Change i-mode Password 203
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 204
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing	Bookmark 205
Saving site contents.....	Screen Memo 207
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading images from sites and messages.....	Save Image 209
Downloading melodies from sites	i-melody 210
Downloading PDF data from sites	210
Downloading Chara-den from sites	211
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	212
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings.....	i-mode Setting 214
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 216
Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal.....	Message R/Message F 218
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	220
Using i-motion	
i-motion.....	224
Downloading i-motion from sites.....	224
Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded	i-motion Setting 226

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to Sites (Programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games and stand-by images, etc.

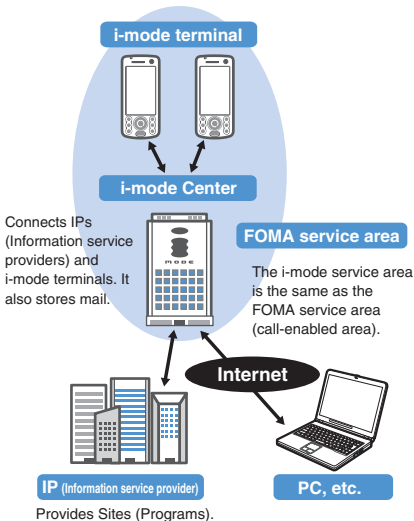
Internet connection

You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible websites by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.

i-mode Mail

You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail, mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.

My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in "お知らせ&ヘルプ" of iMenu.

i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using a simple key sequence and use various online services provided by IPs (Information service providers).

For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs) or "週刊 i ガイド", etc.



- Sites displaying procedure ➡ P198
- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. The appearance may differ depending on the settings.

1 マイメニュー (My Menu)

You can register your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ➡ P202
Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered; a total of 45 sites can be registered.

2 週刊 i ガイド

The latest site information including new and recommended sites is released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.

3 メニューリスト (Menu List)

Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.

4 とくするメニュー

Includes information on exciting campaigns, gifts, and discount coupons. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).

5 i エリア

You can check weather, map and town information of your place or vicinity.

6 かんたん検索

You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as game and stand-by display.

i アプリサーチ

Introduces i- ppli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, game, etc.

便利サイトサーチ

Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.

7 マイボックス

This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.

8 オプション設定 (Options)

Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.

9 お知らせ&ヘルプ

Includes information from DoCoMo, i-mode operation procedure and rules.

料金&お申込

You can confirm fees and payment, change subscriptions, or apply for services.


ENGLISH

iMenu changes to English display.

INFORMATION

You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).

You may need to subscribe to use some services provided by IPs (Information service providers).


You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if  flashes.

The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

i-channel

This service is provided by DoCoMo or IPs and delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal.




You can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears on the stand-by display as ticker. You can also view the information in the channel list that is displayed by pressing .

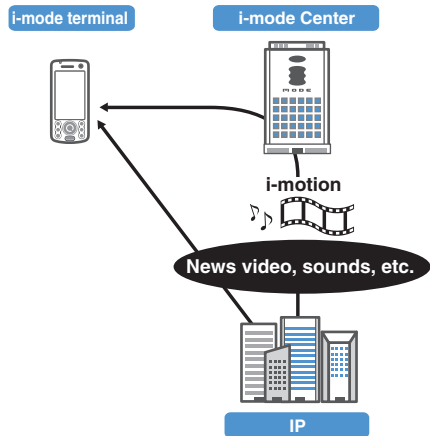
In addition, you can download rich detail

information by selecting a channel in the channel list.

i-motion



You can download videos and sounds from sites to your i-mode terminal and play or set them for the stand-by display.

- Downloading i-motion 
- Playing i-motion 
- Setting auto play of i-motion 






Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)/Chaku-Uta®

i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and set as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- Setting Movie ringtone  
- Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.


i- ppli

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i- ppli from sites. For example, you can download games to play or i- ppli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because map-related i- ppli downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading i- ppli 
- Starting i- ppli 
- Automatically starting i- ppli 

i- ppli stand-by display

On the i- ppli stand-by display, i- ppli can be used as the stand-by display, which also allows directly receiving mail and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or by using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms, etc.

- Setting the i- ppli stand-by display 

i- ppli DX

i- ppli DX is more useful and enjoyable i- ppli. In conjunction with the i-mode terminal data (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i- ppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and to inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments. Also, i- ppli DX updates stock price information, game status, or other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i- ppli DX ◀P290

3D sound

The 3D sound compatible i-mode terminal, using stereo speakers (or a flat type stereo earphone set (optional)), allows you to create 3-dimensional sound that moves around in space and to enjoy realistic i- ppli games, i-motion and ring tone (for contents that support 3D sound).

Chara-den

When using video-phone, you can have a character displayed on the other party's video-phone terminal instead of your image, move its mouth in response to sounds, and make motions by key operation. You can download your favorite character to set for the stand-by display. The recorded image/video of Chara-den can also be set for the stand-by display and be attached to mail to send (you cannot send image/video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Downloading Chara-den ◀P211
- Displaying Chara-den ◀P334
- Setting Chara-den ◀P83, P90, P334
- Operating Chara-den ◀P335
- Recording Chara-den ◀P335

Video-phone terminal



Video-phone

Video-phone terminal



Key operation

Chara-den image

Camera image

Chara-den contents



IP

Infrared communication function

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs and other devices that are provided with the infrared communication function.*1

In addition, using infrared communication with i- ppli, you can use your terminal in a wide range of ways in conjunction with other devices provided with the infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone with this function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

*1 Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

- Using infrared communication ◀P351, P305

SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate stored in i-mode terminal and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display sites differ depending on the site. ◀P220

- Using the CA certificate stored in i-mode terminal ◀P220
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass ◀P221

i-mode terminal



Decoding

Encoding

i-mode Center



Decoding

Encoding



Impersonation: A third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain customer information illegally.



IP

UIM operation restriction function

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail. When the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted, playing or displaying of these obtained files will be disabled. ◀P37

- This function does not apply to still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal from external memory.
- This function resets the ring tone, stand-by display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

i-melody

You can download your favorite music to your i-mode terminal and use it as ring tone. ◀P210

i-anime

You can download your favorite animation to your i-mode terminal and use it as the stand-by image or incoming image. ◀P209

Flash™

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites be displayed. Images using Flash movie can be downloaded to i-mode terminals and set for the stand-by display. Some Flash movies reference the information of your i-mode terminal. The information to be used is as follows:

- Battery level
- Received signal level
- Time information
- Ring Volume Setting
- Select Language
- Model information

Message Service

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message Request (Message R)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message Free (Message F)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Receiving Message R/F ◀P216, P251
- If you apply to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, the initial Message F (free) setting is 受信する (Receive). Please note that,

if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change the setting to 受信しない (Not receive) by yourself.

- If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting from “オプション設定” of iMenu in advance. The initial setting is 受信しない.
- Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the service area.
- The maximum number of Message R/Fs and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. Message R/F will be deleted after the maximum storage period expires. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/F is deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- You can use Check i-mode Message (◀P251) to receive Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center.

トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request).

Separate application (pay) is required. After application, this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the same information from My Menu.

- Reading the Message R screen ◀P219

i-mode password

You need an i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites in My Menu, or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, the i-mode password is set to “0000”. Be sure to change it to a unique 4-digit number. ◀P203

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

You can connect to i-mode compatible websites via the Internet by entering the addresses (URLs).

- Displaying Internet websites ◀P204

INFORMATION

Internet websites other than i-mode compatible websites (sites created using i-mode compatible tags) may not be displayed correctly.

Sites may be displayed differently on a PC.

Internet websites with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.

Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the miniSD memory card.

If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the PC by using data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional).

Before using i-mode

The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet website cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.

Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i- ppli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.





When i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the data you downloaded using i-mode, i- ppli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. You cannot display still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent/received mail, screen memos and Message R/Fs when your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.

When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the stand-by display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours or no UIM is inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM that was used during downloading the data is inserted.

Displaying sites

1 1 Select **ENGLISH**



- Press  on the connecting screen to stop connection.
- Hold down  for over a second during site display to disconnect i-mode.
- Items with numbers such as  and  can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

2 Select **Menu List**



- Press  while accessing the page to stop it.


3 Select an item

You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.





4 when you finish viewing the site ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

To return to iMenu during site display, press  and select *iMenu*.

When a site requests your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number”, a confirmation screen is displayed. When you select *Yes*, your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” is sent. The IP (Information service provider) uses “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” that has been sent to identify you for providing the information and determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site contents provided by the IP (Information service provider). Since your “FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number” is sent to the IP (Information service provider) via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP (Information service provider) with this operation. When a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and press .

When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:

-  : When *Not display* is set for *Image* in Image & Effect Setting or when FOMA terminal is out of service area while receiving the image ( for Message R/F)
-  : When the image data is invalid or cannot be found
-  : When the image cannot be displayed for incorrect URL


i-mode requires online connection and cannot be used outside the service area.




Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on the UIM.


Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing SSL session is started is displayed.  appears at the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

Displaying certificate during SSL page display:   

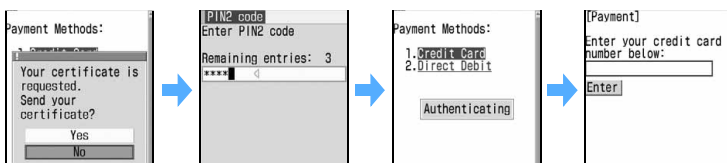
- Certificates  P220

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to display an ordinary page and  disappears from the top of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens are displayed:



① **Select Yes**

② **Enter the PIN2 code**

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

- If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. P220

Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai service. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in Pake-Houdai service.

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

- Some pages may not be displayed. Pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.



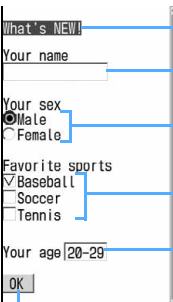
- When no last visited URL is recorded, a message informing that there is no record appears.



Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press to highlight an item or entry field and press to select the item or enter characters.



Link

Select to jump to a related page. A link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

Radio button (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select one from selections.

Check box (: Unselected : Selected)

You can select multiple items from selections. Press to switch between and .

Pulldown menu

Select an item from the list.

Button (name differs depending on the site)

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

Some images may have links.

Items with numbers such as 1 and 2 can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

In the i-mode password field or other field, the entered characters may be masked with " * ".

In the character entry screen, press to enter the information read by Bar Code Reader.

Depending on the pulldown menu, multiple items can be selected by pressing . After selecting items, press .

The information set or entered using radio buttons, check boxes, pulldown menus, or character entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks or screen memos.

Flash movie displays

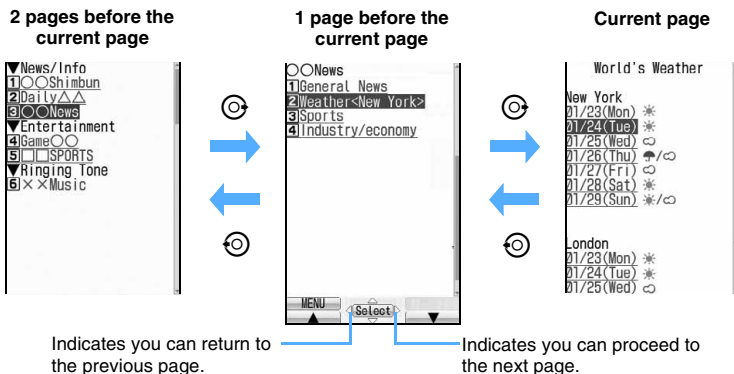
Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

- Flash movie is not displayed when *Not display* is set for *Image* in Image & Effect Setting.
- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated or displayed in the same way as normal sites.
- When saved as image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The sound of Flash movie set for the stand-by display or incoming image does not play.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if is not indicated, some Flash movies may be operated.
- To play Flash movie from the beginning, press .
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls. To disable sound effects during site display, press and set *Sound effect setting* to *OFF*.
- Even if Vibrator Setting is other than *OFF*, FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound of Flash movie plays.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is *OFF*.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press , , , , , , to , , , , or .
- Some Flash movies use the information of i-mode terminal. To allow use of the terminal information, set *Use phone information* to *Yes* in Image & Effect Setting. It is set to *Yes* by default. The information to be used is as follows:
 - Battery level
 - Received signal level
 - Time information
 - Ring Volume Setting
 - Select Language
 - Model information

Displaying previous or next pages

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a cache.

- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing without establishing communication. When the cache is full or displaying a page that is set by the site to load the latest page, FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (P221).



INFORMATION

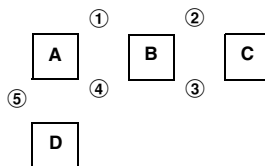
When you display page A (1), page B (2), page C in this order (1, 2), return to page A (3, 4), and proceed to page D (5), the display record of page A page B page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.

Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing (C) may not return to previous pages.

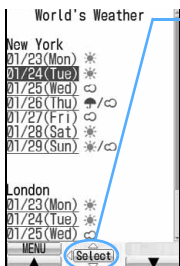
Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.

When you terminate i-mode, all records in the cache are deleted.

The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.



Scrolling the screen



When there are additional rows or selectable link items, or is indicated in the guide row.

- Press (C) to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press (Left) or (Right) to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data

When sites are not displayed because of connection interruption etc., you may be able to display the sites by reload.

1 (Menu) (5) during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

1 (Menu) (9) (1) during site display

INFORMATION

In the list of URL history, bookmark, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press (C).

Using My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites registered in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

- 1 Select **マイメニュー登録 (Register)** during site display
 - Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the corresponding number or select the applicable item.
- 2 Select the **i-mode password entry field** ▶ Enter the i-mode password
 - The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.
- 3 Select **決定 (OK)**

Displaying sites from My Menu

- 1 Select **1 My Menu in iMenu (English)** ▶ Select a site

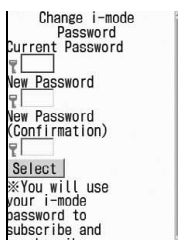
Changing your current i-mode password into another number

Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to “0000” by default; be sure to change it to another unique number (4 digits). Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with “*”.
- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

- 1 Select **4 Options in iMenu (English)** ▶ Select **2 Change i-mode Password**
- 2 Select **Current Password field** ▶ Enter the i-mode password



- 3 Select **New Password field** ▶ Enter a new password
- 4 Select **New Password (Confirmation) field** ▶ Re-enter the password entered in Step 3
- 5 Select **Select**
 - When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select **Re-enter** and operate again.


Displaying Internet websites



Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.


1 

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.


2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) 

- Press  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter “/”, “.”, “-”, etc. In addition, “http://www.”, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com” and “.html” can be entered by pressing  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Go to location* **Enter URL**.

The available operations on Internet website displays are the same as on i-mode site displays.

A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press  to clear the message and display the received data.


Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use URL History to connect to Internet websites.

1 

2 Select the URL of an Internet website

- When a full URL is not displayed, highlight the URL and press .


Deleting URL history:

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list 

- To delete all:  in the URL history list  Enter the terminal security code

② Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Go to location* **URL history**.

When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL will be overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly

Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode or Internet web sites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for encoding schemes and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1  during i-mode or Internet web site display

- Each press of these keys switches the character encode in the following order: *Auto switch* SJIS EUC JIS UTF8. If you repeat this operation 5 times, the original display reappears.
- When you display an i-mode or Internet web site, *Auto switch* is set.
- Some characters may not be displayed correctly even if you repeat this operation.
- Changing the character encode when characters are displayed correctly may not display the characters correctly.

If you frequently browse the same pages of sites, you can register them in Bookmark for convenient access later. You can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.



- Maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered \blacktriangleright P36
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

- Sites are registered in one of 20 bookmark folders.

1 Display a site \blacktriangleright \blacktriangleright Select a folder to save the bookmark to

INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, screen memo display, or URL history list, press  and select *Add bookmark*. You can also perform the same operation after displaying the URL history list by pressing  during site display and selecting *Go to location* *URL history*.

When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Menu 22

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1


2 Select a folder

 : No bookmark  : Bookmark present

3 Select a bookmark

Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark \blacktriangleright 

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Bookmark* *Display*.

Renaming bookmark folders

1 \blacktriangleright Highlight a folder \blacktriangleright

2 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) \blacktriangleright

Renaming bookmark titles

- This operation does not change the URL of registered bookmarks.

1 \blacktriangleright Select a folder \blacktriangleright Highlight a bookmark \blacktriangleright

2 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.
- When the title or URL is longer than 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, 19 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters followed by “...” are displayed in the bookmark list.

Connecting to sites using simple key sequence







i-mode Shortcut

When you register bookmarks as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display i-mode or Internet web sites from the stand-by display.

1 ▶ Select a folder





2 Highlight a bookmark ▶

3 Select the registration destination

- The icon number ( - ) corresponds to the dial key ( to ) used to display the site.
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from  to  when registered.


Canceling i-mode shortcut

1 ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

Canceling from the bookmark list:   ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶  

Displaying a site using i-mode shortcut


1 The dial key (to) for an i-mode shortcut number ▶

Displaying a site from the i-mode shortcut list:    ▶ Select a bookmark

Deleting bookmarks

- Bookmark folders cannot be deleted.

1 ▶ Select a folder

Deleting all bookmarks:   on the folder list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 3

Deleting all bookmarks in folder: Highlight a folder ▶   ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 3

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶

Deleting selected bookmarks:    ▶ Select bookmarks ▶ 

Deleting all bookmarks in folder:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

If you delete an i-mode shortcut bookmark, the i-mode shortcut registration is canceled.


Moving/copying bookmarks

Bookmarks can be moved to other folders or copied to the miniSD memory card.

1   ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶   

Moving selected bookmarks:    ▶ Select bookmarks ▶ 

Copying a bookmark to the miniSD memory card:     ▶ Select Yes

Copying all bookmarks to the miniSD memory card (backup):

①    

② Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

The bookmark list is temporally sorted. When you quit the display, the sort order is reset.

- All folders are the target of sorting.
- You can select from *By access date*, *By title*, *By URL*, or *By access frequency*.

Default By access date

1   ▶ Select a folder ▶   ▶  to 

INFORMATION

When *By title* is set, if one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- Maximum number of screen memos that can be saved ▶P36
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images etc.

1 Display a site ▶   

- The site title is automatically saved. If a site has no title, the screen memo is saved as *No title*.


INFORMATION


When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite saved screen memos. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the screen memos. Protected screen memos are not overwritten.


Displaying screen memos

1  


2 Select a screen memo


: Ordinary screen memo

: Protected screen memo




- The available operations are the same as on site displays with a few exceptions. 



INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Screen memo Display*. If the character encode has been changed, it is reset to *Auto switch* when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.

To play Flash movie again, press  during screen memo display and select *Display Retry*.


Renaming screen memo titles

1    Highlight a screen memo  


2 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)  

- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, *No title* is displayed in the screen memo list.





INFORMATION



In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Rename title*.





Protecting screen memos

- Maximum number of screen memos that can be protected 

1  

2 Highlight a screen memo    

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from  to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo    


Protecting selected screen memos:     Select screen memos  

Canceling protection of selected screen memos:      Select screen memos 



Canceling protection of all screen memos:    

INFORMATION

In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting screen memos


- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1  **4**

2 **Highlight a screen memo** ▶  **2** **1**
Deleting selected screen memos:  **2** **2** ▶ **Select screen memos** ▶ 
Deleting all screen memos:  **2** **3** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Delete*.

Downloading images from sites and messages

Save Image

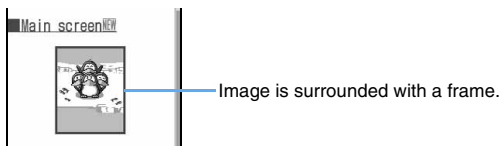
Images or frames can be downloaded and saved from sites, Message R/F or i- ppli. Saved images can be viewed from **Image** (My Picture) or set for the stand-by display.

- Maximum number of images that can be saved ◀P36
- The maximum size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.


Example Downloading an image from site

1 **Display a site** ▶  **6** **1**
Saving the background image on site: Display a site ▶  **6** **2** ▶ **Go to Step 3**

2 **Select an image**



3 **Select each item to set**

- You cannot change file restriction for image files downloaded from sites.
- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (file restriction set to **File restricted**), you can change the display name only.
- Press  to display the menu list for setting images for the stand-by display etc. ◀P321
- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used as the first character of file name.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- To use the image as frame or stamp, select an item to set and press **1** or **2**.

4  ▶ **Select the folder to save the image to**

INFORMATION



Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.

Some images may not be displayed correctly.

When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 400 or 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame. Images with the sizes of 240 x 400 and larger cannot be used as stamp.


When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing .

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

You can download melodies from sites and play and save them (compatible with i-melody).

Saved melodies can be played from *Melody* or used as ring tone.

- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a melody that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in SMF or MFI format can be saved.


1 Display a site ▶ Select a melody

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*



- To play the melody: Select *Play*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ▶

The melody is saved in *i-mode* folder of *Melody*. 


INFORMATION

Some melodies may not play correctly.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .



Downloading PDF data from sites

You can download PDF data from sites and display and save them. Saved PDF data can be displayed from *My Documents*.

- Maximum number of PDF data files that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a PDF data file that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 Display a site ▶ Select PDF data


The data is downloaded and then displayed on the PDF compatible viewer. ◀P359

- Press  to stop downloading.
- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press .

2

- If the same PDF data exists, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite it depending on the data. Select *Yes* to overwrite.



3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶ ▶ Select the folder to save the PDF data to

- When *miniSD* is displayed in the guide row, press  to save the data to the miniSD memory card.
- If not all pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.


INFORMATION


When you download PDF data exceeding 500 Kbytes in size, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download.

When you download PDF data exceeding 2 Mbytes, a message appears indicating that the data exceeds the download size limit and the download fails.

When the PDF data is downloaded partly, you can download the rest of it by pressing   on the PDF data display.

When a different bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, a new bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered bookmarks or marks reaches 10, a message appears indicating that the limit is reached. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.

If you save the PDF data for which download stopped in the middle due to your pressing  or communication interruption, you can download it again by selecting the saved data from *My Documents*. Some PDF data may not be downloaded again.


When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete PDF data saved in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. The network will be disconnected when you delete the PDF data on the miniSD memory card. Before deletion, you can view detail information on the data by pressing  on the data list.

Downloading Chara-den from sites

Chara-den can be downloaded and saved from sites.

- Maximum number of Chara-den that can be saved ◀P36
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Select Chara-den

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

- To check the Chara-den: Select *Display*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*



3 Select each item to set

- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.

4 Press

The Chara-den is saved in *i-mode* folder of *Chara-den*. ◀P334

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved Chara-den. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, Chara-den can be displayed by pressing  on the Chara-den deletion screen and detail information can be viewed by pressing .

If preinstalled Chara-den has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style". ▶P296

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select them to make voice calls, video-phone calls or PushTalk calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available on certain sites.

1 Display a site ▶ Select a phone number, mail address, or URL

- Only highlighted phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs can be selected.

Phone To (AV Phone To):

The screen for setting dialing conditions is displayed.

① **Set dialing conditions** ▶P56

②  ▶ **Select Yes**

Mail To:

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① **Compose and send i-mode Mail**

- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

Web To:

You are connected to the selected site.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo currently displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.






- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be saved. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.


Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site  



- Displaying the URL 


2 Select the start position of the copying range  **Select the end position**

- Press   to select all the text.
- Press  to specify the start position again.
- Press  or  after specifying the start position to move the cursor to beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen  **Paste the copied text**

INFORMATION

In the list of URL history, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press  and select *Copy URL*. In the bookmark list, press  and select *Enter URL/Copy URL* *Copy URL*. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.

To paste the URL of current site to mail, press  during site display and select *Compose message*. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook

[Add to Phonebook](#)

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on the screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), you can register them in the phonebook. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.


- You may be able to register the data other than displayed items on certain sites.
- The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a phone number or mail address displayed on site

1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address

- You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2 Highlight the phone number or mail address    to register a new entry or    to add to an existing entry

3  to register in the FOMA terminal phonebook or  to register in the UIM phonebook

4 Register the phonebook data

New entry: Set the name etc. and save the entry

Existing entry: Select a phonebook entry  **Confirm the data and save the entry**

INFORMATION











In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Phonebook* *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*, and in the Message R/F view screen, press  and select *Record* *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

Registering URLs in phonebook


Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

- The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

-   ▶ Select a folder
- Highlight a bookmark** ▶    to register a new entry or    to add to an existing entry
- Register the phonebook data**
 - New entry: Set the name etc. and save the entry**
 - To check the URL, display *Other* screen by pressing .
 - Existing entry:**
 - Select a phonebook entry**
 - Confirm the data and save the entry**
 - To check the URL, display *Other* screen by pressing .

INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, press  and select *Phonebook Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.
When displayed from a site screen, the URL cannot be saved.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 295

Setting the connection time out

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation.

Default 60 seconds

-    ▶  to 

INFORMATION

Even if you set the connection timeout to *Unlimited*, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions etc.

Menu 296

Changing the i-mode host

ISP Connection Communication

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default i-mode(FOMA Card)

About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.



- 2 Highlight one from *User host 1 to 10* Enter the terminal security code
Restoring settings for using i-mode: Select *i-mode (FOMA Card)* Go to Step 5
Changing to the previously set host: Select a host Go to Step 5

- 3 Select each item to set
- Host name can contain up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters.
 - Access point can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
 - Host address and host address 2 can contain up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters. Host address 2 is the host of i-channel. P309
 - You can delete all contents entered by pressing .

- 4 Select the edited host

- 5 Press

Menu 292

Setting image display, lighting and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display, lighting and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

[Default](#) [Image, Animation: Display](#) [Use phone information: Yes](#) [Set lighting: Terminal settings](#)
Sound effect setting: ON



- 2 Select each item to set

Image : Specifies whether to display images.

- When *Not display* is set, images and Flash movie will not be displayed and instead is displayed. Also, *Animation* and *Use phone information* cannot be set.

Animation : Specifies whether to display animation.

- When *Not display* is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

Use phone information :

Specifies whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

Next

215

Set lighting : Sets how the display is illuminated.


- When *Terminal settings* is set, Display Light Setting (P141) applies.
- When *Always on* is set, the display lights up while site screens, etc. are displayed.

Sound effect setting :

Specifies whether to play Flash sounds.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Display Set image& effect*.

When *Not display* is set for *Image*, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function are not displayed or saved.

Even if *Not display* is set for *Animation*, Flash movie plays.

For Message R/F, the setting for *Image* applies to images inserted in the message. This setting does not apply to images attached as attachment. The setting for *Sound effect setting* does not have effect on Message R/F, either.

When *Yes* is set for *Use phone information*, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, Ring Volume Setting, Select Language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

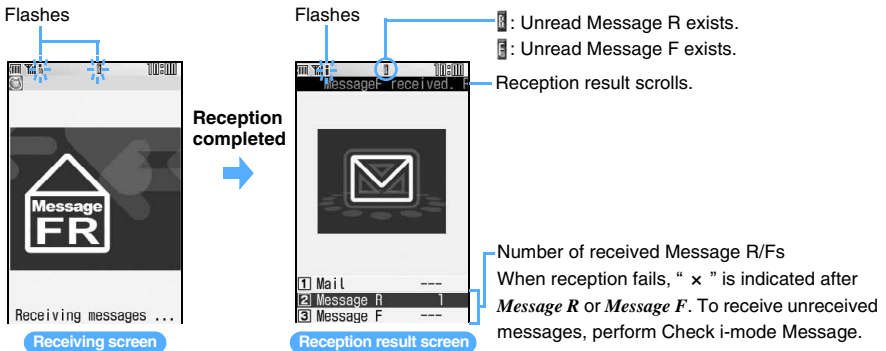
When Message R/F is received




Receive Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.



- Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be saved P36

1 A Message R/F is received



 and  or  flash and *Receiving messages...* is displayed.

When reception is completed, the Message R/F ring alert sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press  on the receiving screen to stop reception.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring alert stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen.
- To return to the previous screen immediately: 

INFORMATION

The receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed depending on Display Priority. ●P277
Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:



- When the power is off
 - During a video-phone call
 - During PushTalk
- In Self Mode
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F







When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.

When **Indicator light** is set to **ON** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread Message R/F exists.

When FOMA terminal receives Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.

When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones will be overwritten, oldest first. Be sure to protect Message R/F you want to keep. ●P219

- If the message cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped.  (red) or  (red) is indicated on the screen (●P28). To receive new messages, display unread Message R/Fs (●P218), delete unnecessary Message R/Fs (●P220) or cancel message protection (●P219) beforehand.

If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, ,  or  (●P28) is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center (●P197) is reached, the icon changes to ,  or  (●P28).

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 or on the reception result screen



- The received Message R is saved in **Message R** and the received Message F is saved in **Message F**.

2 Select a Message R/F

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ●P275
- Reading the Message R/F screen ●P219

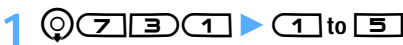
Menu 2731

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Message R/Fs can be automatically opened and displayed for about 15 seconds upon reception. You can set the priority of messages to be displayed when both Message R and Message F are received.

Default **MessageR preferred**



INFORMATION

When this function is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the Message R/F reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Auto-display is available only from the stand-by display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, auto-display is not performed.

Menu 2734

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Incoming Msg. Alert

Default Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 2(Pattern 2) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Aqua
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1       for Message R or  for Message F

2 Select each item to set

Select ring alert : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring alert, select *OFF*.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion 

Incoming msg. lighting :

Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.

- When the lighting pattern is set to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press

INFORMATION

Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Incoming msg. lighting* or *Set vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

When the ring alert is changed in this setting, the Message R/F ring alert in Sound Setting is changed similarly. When the incoming lighting is changed, the setting for incoming Message R/F in Alert Lighting Setting is also changed.

Menu 271 / Menu 272

Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal

Message R/Message F

- If unread Message R/F exists,  or  is displayed on the stand-by display.

1     or 

2 Select a Message R/F

INFORMATION

When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.

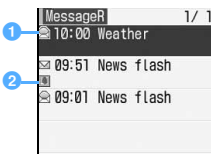
- The image can be downloaded and saved in FOMA terminal. The operation procedure is the same as for saving images from sites.

- If you could not receive the image, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site (P199). Reload images to receive them.
- You cannot delete the image in the message.

Reading the Message R/F list/view screen

- Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

Reading the Message R/F list screen

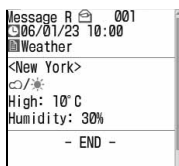


Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the screen.
Reception date/time and subject are displayed in the message list field.

- 1 : Unread : Read : Protected
- 2 : Image attached : Melody attached : ToruCa attached
- : Multiple files attached

- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

Reading the Message R/F view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, and Message R/F number are displayed at the top of the screen.

- : Reception date and time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .

INFORMATION

When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen. Handling of attachments is the same as for i-mode Mail.

- Description of image icons P254
- Description of melody icons P256
- Description of ToruCa icons P257

Reloading images in Message R/F

Reload

Unreceived images in the Message R/F text can be reloaded.

- When *Not display* is set for *Image* in Image & Effect Setting, images cannot be received by reload.
- Some images may not be displayed even if reload is attempted.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Select a Message R/F

- indicates unreceived image data.



The image is loaded.



Protecting Message R/F




Protect Message

- Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be protected P36
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

1 Display the Message R/F list




2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from  to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a Message R/F ▶   

Protecting selected messages:    ▶ Select messages ▶ 

Canceling protection of selected messages:    ▶ Select messages ▶ 

Canceling protection of all messages:   

INFORMATION

In the Message R/F view screen, press  and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting Message R/F





Delete Message

- Protected Message R/F cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶


Deleting only read messages:   

Deleting selected messages:    ▶ Select messages ▶ 

Deleting all messages:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

In the Message R/F view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

- You can select from *Display all*, *Display unread only*, *Display read only*, or *Display protected*.
- Closing the Message R/F list resets the display type to *Display all*.

1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ ▶ to

- When you select *Display read only*, protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 2971

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity

Certificate Setting

 CA Certificate1 to 9, DoCoMo Cert1

Displaying a certificate

- User certificate is displayed after it has been downloaded.
- When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, *DoCoMo Cert* or *User Certificate* is not displayed.

1 Select a certificate from the list

CA Certificate : A certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.

DoCoMo Cert : A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved on the UIM in advance.

User Certificate : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate will be saved on the UIM.

INFORMATION

Certificate contents displayed

User

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= : (Organization) Company name etc.

C= : (Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= : (Organization) Company name etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting certificate validity

1

2 Highlight a certificate

- Each press switches validity/invalidity of the certificate.

3 Press

The checked certificate is set as valid.

Menu 2972

Setting FirstPass

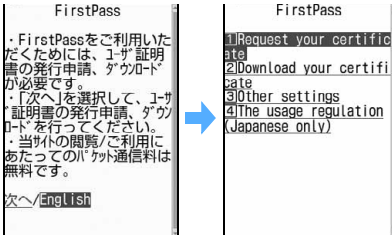
Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request and download user certificates.

- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1

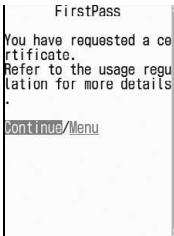
2 Select English ▶ Select 1 Request your certificate



Invalidating the issued certificate:

- 1 Select English ▶ Select 3 Other settings
- 2 Select 1 Revoke your certificate ▶ Select Yes
- 3 Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Select Continue
- 4 Select Continue
- 5 Select Continue

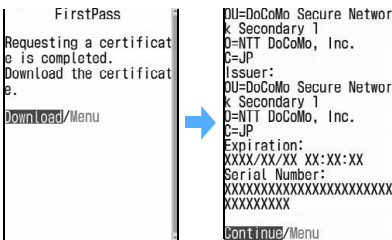
3 Select Continue



4 Enter the PIN2 code

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

5 Select Download ▶ Select Continue



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ▶P221

INFORMATION

Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.

The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is saved on the UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.

If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. See "FirstPassManual" in the attached CD-ROM for details. To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (communication fee is required separately for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Using FirstPass

FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.

FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.

When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass usage regulation" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.

Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.

All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.

If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.

Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.

Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Menu 2973

Changing the certificate host


Certificate Host

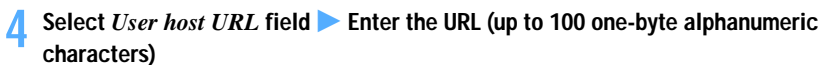
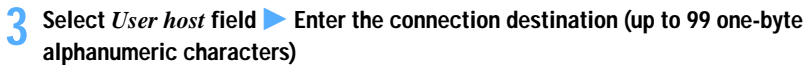
If you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default DoCoMo



• To restore settings for connecting to FirstPass:  ▶ Go to Step 5



i-motion

Images and sounds can be downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site and played/stored. Images or sounds saved can be played as “i-motion” or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of singers can be used for a ring alert as well as melodies. (Some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone.)

Generally, there are 2 types of i-motion as follows. The type of i-motion depends on sites.

i-motion type		Description
Type	Playing action	
Normal type (can be saved*1)	Replay while downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion replayed after downloading all data.
	Replay after downloading data (up to 500 KB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Replay while downloading data (up to 2 MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be stored in FOMA terminal.

*1 Some i-motion cannot be saved.

Downloading i-motion from sites

1 Display a site ▶ Select i-motion

Download starts. A message indicating the completion appears when downloading i-motion is finished.

- When streaming i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select *Yes* to replay with downloading i-motion. The message indicating the completion of downloading is displayed when the i-motion finishes playing, but streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- When trying to download streaming i-motion if *i-motion type setting* in i-motion Setting is set to *Normal type*, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change the setting. Select *Yes* to change the setting to *Norm-Streaming* so that you can download the streaming i-motion. ●P226

i-motion replayed while the data is being downloaded:



Amount of received data/total data

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - ⏸ : Pause/replay (Only normal type) 🔊 : Adjust volume
 - ⏹ : Interrupt (Streaming type)
 - ⏮ : Stop (Normal type, press ⏮ to play from the beginning.)
 - ⓘ : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to interrupt.
- When *Auto replay setting* in i-motion Setting is set to *Auto Play OFF*, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

i-motion replayed after downloading data:



i-motion is replayed automatically when downloading is completed.

• During playback, the following operations are enabled:

- ⏸: Pause/replay
- 🔊: Adjust volume
- ⏩: Play at fast speed
- ⏮: Play while rewinding
- ⏹: Stop (The message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
- ⓘ: Display detail information

• When *Auto replay setting* in i-motion Setting is set to *Auto Play OFF*, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

2 Select *Save*

- Streaming i-motion cannot be saved.
- To replay i-motion again: Select *Play*
- To display detail information of i-motion: Select *File property*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No* (when a confirmation screen appears for the normal type)

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶ ⓘ

The downloaded i-motion is saved in *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.

When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:

If a link such as a phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To), a mail address (Mail To), or a site (Web To) is set in a ticker, a confirmation screen asking whether to connect to the linked item is displayed after playback is finished or interrupted. Select *Yes* to connect to the linked item.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing ⓘ allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting *Add to phonebook* allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- When i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-motion before connecting to the linked item.
- When there are two or more link items, only one will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

Setting as the stand-by display: ⓘ 1 ▶ Select *Yes*

- For video/i-motion that can be enlarged, the same size or large size can be set.
- When the i- ppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.

Registering a new phonebook entry: ⓘ 2 ▶ Set the name, etc. and register

Adding to an existing phonebook entry: ⓘ 3 ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Confirm the contents and register

- If video/i-motion is already set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.


Setting as Movie ringtone: ⓘ 4 ▶ 1 to 7

Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):

- 1 ⓘ 4 ▶ ⓘ 8 or ⓘ 9 ▶ Select a phonebook entry
- 2 ⓘ after confirming the contents

- When a ring alert has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook No. ▶ P118, Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries"

Setting as incoming image (voice call, video-phone call): **5** **1** or **2**

- When an incoming image has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Restrictions for setting video/i-motion  P329

INFORMATION

Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.



The replay restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. In such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow reception of data but may not be replayed correctly.

Even for the type of i-motion which is replayed while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.

When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete saved video/i-motion. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete to save. Before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing  on the video/i-motion list and view detail information on it by pressing .

Menu 293

Setting auto play and type of i-motion to be downloaded

i-motion Setting

Set whether or not to play i-motion files automatically and the i-motion type to be downloaded.

Default Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type




2 Select each item to set

- Auto replay setting** : Sets whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.
- Even when **Auto Play OFF** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting **Play** after downloading i-motion.
 - Streaming type i-motion is automatically played regardless of the auto play setting.
- i-motion type setting** : Sets the type of i-motion to be downloaded.
- When replaying streaming type i-motion, select **Norm·Streaming**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select **Display**.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function	228
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 232
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 235
Attaching files	Attachment 241
Using mail templates	244
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	Save Mail 247
Composing mail quickly	Quick Mail 248
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 249
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	Receive Option 250
Checking for mail	Check i-mode Message 251
Replying to received i-mode Mail	Reply to Mail 252
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	Forward Mail 253
Displaying and saving attached images	Display/Save Image 254
Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail	255
Playing and saving attached melodies	Play/Save Melody 256
Displaying and saving ToruCa from i-mode Mail	257
Deleting attachments	Delete Attachment 258
Using the mail box	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 259
Useful functions of mail	267
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal	Mail Setting 269
Using chat mail	
Composing and sending chat mail	Chat Mail 278
Using SMS (Short Message Service)	
Composing and sending SMS	Compose SMS 283
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 284
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 285
Making SMS settings	SMS Setting 285
Saving SMS to the UIM	Save SMS to UIM 286

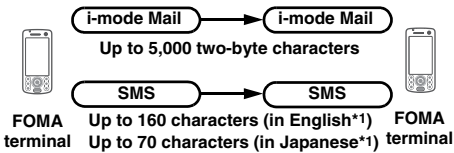
FOMA terminal mail function

FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

Sending and receiving mail

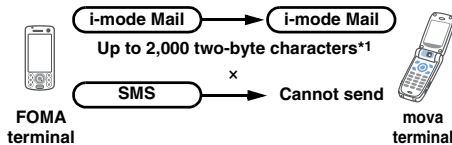
FOMA terminal FOMA terminal



*1 Set with *Font type* in SMS Setting.

FOMA terminal mova terminal

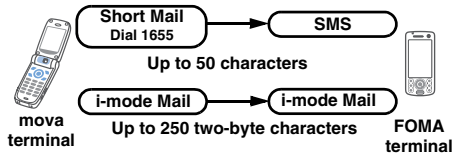
SMS cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.



*1 The limit varies by the settings of mova terminal.

mova terminal FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as SMS message.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.
- Short Mail cannot be sent from FOMA terminal. Even when you dial 1655, Short Mail cannot be sent.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals (including mova) or via Internet e-mail.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

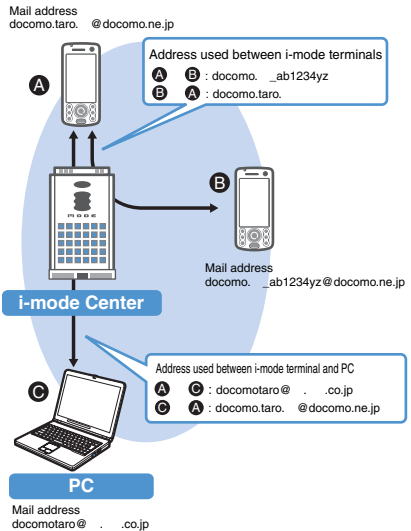
When you newly subscribe to i-mode

The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

• **How to check your mail address (See "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode for details.)**
iMenu ENGLISH [4]Options [1]Mail Settings Confirm Mail Address

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova), mail can be sent also with the part preceding the @ symbol in the address.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, use the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp.



- Sending mail ☛P232
- Receiving mail ☛P249

Receiving selected mail

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ☛P250

Setting mail

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure

iMenu ENGLISH 4 Options 1 Mail Settings
【Each settings below】

- For details, see “i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing the mail address [Change Mail Address]

You can change the part preceding the @ symbol to another address like “docomo. _ab1234yz @docomo.ne.jp”.

Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings) Register a Secret Code]

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

Resetting the mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings) Reset Mail Address]

You can set your mail address to “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

Checking mail address [Confirm Mail Address]

You can check your current mail address.

Receiving/rejecting specified mail

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following method:

① Receiving mail from specified domains

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Mail from Selected Domains]

- You can receive only the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of au, Vodafone, T-UKA, and WILLCOM.
- Of the mail through carriers other than above, those from the specified domain(s) are received.
- Mail from NTT DoCoMo’s i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charges notification, and visualnet is all received.

② Receiving/rejecting mail from specified addresses [Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail]

- Of all received mail, you receive/reject only those from the specified address.

③ Receiving/rejecting only i-mode Mail

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)

Receive only i-mode mail, Reject only i-mode mail]

- You receive (reject mail via the Internet)/ reject mail only between i-mode terminals.

④ Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with 未承諾広告) [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receiver’s consent that is marked with “未承諾広告” at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is *Reject* and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告 (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

⑥ Rejecting SMS [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings]

- You can set to reject all SMS or only SMS without caller ID, and confirm the current settings.

Only one of *Receive Mail from Selected Domains*, *Receive Selected Mail*, *Reject Selected Mail*, *Receive only i-mode mail*, and *Reject only i-mode mail* can be set at a time.

Checking current settings [Confirm Settings]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

Restricting mail size [Limit Mail Size]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

Suspending i-mode Mail function [Suspend Mail]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	One-byte characters (alphanumeric, katakana, etc.)	Two-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Mail address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

INFORMATION

The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes) but the maximum number of characters may be smaller depending on the size of any attachments.

When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, “ / ” or “ // ” is inserted at the end and the excessive characters are deleted automatically.

When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. i-shot Mail or i-motion Mail is sent as mail containing a URL. Any attachments other than that are deleted.

When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.

Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center. When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval.





You can also select i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and receive using Receive Option.

INFORMATION

The maximum number of i-mode Mail items and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

i-mode Mail is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.

The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the size of i-mode Mail. When the maximum number is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts a mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time,  or  is indicated on your i-mode terminal. When Receive Option Setting is on, however,  or  is not indicated even if the maximum number is exceeded.

You can use Check i-mode Message or Receive Option to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mail and Message R/F. When the i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is stored in your i-mode terminal.

Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.

Other convenient functions

Mail with attachments


• Attaching melodies to mail

You can send/receive melody files downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

• Sending  P241 • Receiving  P256

• Attaching images to mail

You can send/receive still image files obtained from i-mode or Internet web sites, or external memory by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

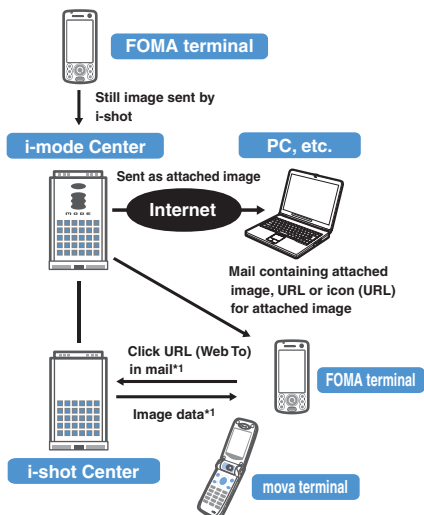
• Sending  P241 • Receiving  P254

i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to/from i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments. Or mail containing a URL (or icon) for viewing the still image is sent with the storage period specified. Click the received URL to download the image.

The maximum number of characters that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to mail to a mova terminal, the attachments are deleted from the mail and only the message text is notified.

• Sending  P241 • Receiving  P254



*1 When mail containing a URL for the attached image is received

- The i-shot Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-mode terminals can send still image files of up to 500 Kbytes. When you send an image exceeding 20 Kbytes as mail attachment to an i-mode terminal, the image will be automatically reduced and downloaded to the receiver's terminal.

i-motion Mail

Videos recorded with an i-motion Mail compatible terminal or downloaded from sites can be sent/received to/from i-motion Mail compatible terminals, PCs, or other company's mobile phones (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

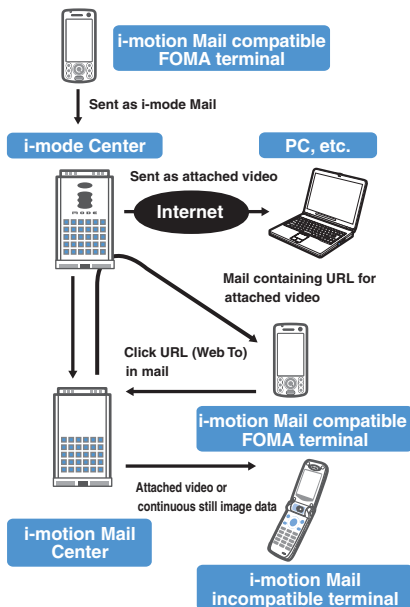
- Sending ♣P241
- Receiving ♣P255

• Service schematic

Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).

When i-motion Mail is received by an i-motion Mail compatible terminal, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text.

When received by a non-compatible terminal, the video is converted to continuous still images and received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-motion Mail compatible terminals can receive video files of up to 500 Kbytes. When attached videos are downloaded, the image sizes are automatically changed to fit the terminal screen.

Deco-mail

You can compose and send your original i-mode Mail messages by changing the character size and background color and by inserting images in the text, and enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

- Editing Deco-mail ♣P235
- Sending Deco-mail ♣P235
- Supporting models: Can be used on Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5) at one time. ♣P234

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

2 Select **Direct input** ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit “@docomo.ne.jp” in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press **1** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter “@”, “.”, “-”, etc. In addition, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com”, etc. can be entered by pressing ***x** repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party’s i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

Searching the phonebook: Select *View phonebook* ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a mail address

Using a mail group: Select *Mail group* ▶ Select a mail group

- Mail addresses must be registered in a mail group in advance.
- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- Press **Menu** to check the mail group details.

3 Select **Sub** field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)

4 Select **Text** ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press **#** to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method (except in the one-byte and two-byte numeric modes). A line feed is counted as a character in the message.
- A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. ◀P235

Inserting a signature: **Menu** **5**

- Signature must be registered beforehand.

5 Press **End**

- Press **End** on the connecting screen to stop connection. Press **End** on the sending screen to stop sending and to save the i-mode Mail to *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages. Even when saved in *Unsent messages* folder, the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.
- When you are outside the service area and the number of saved auto-send mails is less than 5, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area. When you select *Yes*, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages.

INFORMATION

When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.

Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, *Transmission failed.* may be displayed depending on signal conditions.

Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side. Depending on the model of the receiver’s i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.

Depending on the settings of the receiver’s terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly and their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.

When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in *Outbox* folder of Outbox. However, when the sent mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.

When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from Unsent messages.

An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.









When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from Unsent messages.

◆P267

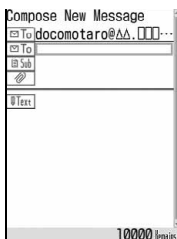
Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are 3 address types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC).
 - : The main receiver
 - : The receiver to which you want to send a copy of the mail
 - : The receiver to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers
- Mail with no address entered in  field cannot be sent.
- The mail address entered in  field is not shown to other receivers.



1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen ►




Address field is added.

- Repeat operation until the number of fields you want is added.

Adding CC and BCC:

- 1   on the mail composition screen ► Select an input method
- 2 Select **CC** or **BCC** ► Enter a mail address

- Also **TO** can be selected.
- When you have added by selecting *Mail group*, TO, CC and BCC are set as registered for the mail group.

Changing TO, CC and BCC: Highlight an address field ►   ► Select an address type



Deleting the added address field: Highlight an address field ►   ► Select *Yes*


- Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

2 Enter the address in the added field ►

- The operation is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

The mail address entered in  field and  field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.

When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

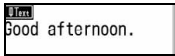
You can decorate the i-mode Mail message by changing font size, font color, or background color and inserting still images including the ones shot with the camera to compose Deco-mail. Deco-mail can be composed in 2 ways: entering characters after specifying decoration (P235) and setting decoration after selecting entered characters (P239). The composed Deco-mail can be viewed with the preview function.

Examples of decoration

1 Changing font color



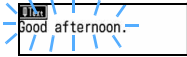
2 Changing font size



3 Inserting images



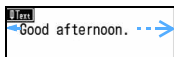
4 Blinking characters



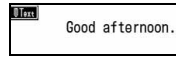
5 Setting ticker



6 Swinging characters left and right



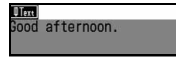
7 Changing word alignment



8 Inserting lines (ruled lines)



9 Changing background color






Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen



Start composing i-mode Mail and display the message text entry screen.

Step 2 Enter decorated characters and images

Press , select the decoration method and enter characters.

• Press   during editing to check the decoration.


Step 2 Enter characters and decorate

Press  at the start position of decoration and press  at the end position. Select the decoration method.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration and send

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.

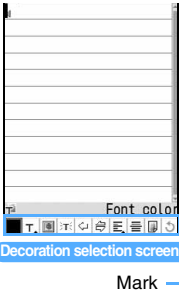
INFORMATION

Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data remains and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down  for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration (except the background color). The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation stop automatically after a certain period of time when viewed from the mail composition screen or the preview screen. When a Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it will be received as a mail containing a URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The Deco-mail cannot be viewed from the mail containing the URL that has been transferred or by entering the URL directly (it can be viewed only on the terminal of the original receiver). When sent and received from other than Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed.

Entering characters after specifying decoration method

1 Select  on the mail composition screen ▶ 

2 Select the decoration ▶ Enter characters



Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen and press to select a decoration. You can set more than one decoration by selecting multiple icons. However, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* cannot be selected at the same time.

- To set more than one decoration: Highlight an icon on the decoration selection screen ▶
- To cancel a selected decoration and enter characters: Highlight the character entry position ▶ ▶

Only *Font color*, *Font size*, *Blink*, *Ticker* (in blank line), *Swing* (in blank line) and *Word alignment* (in blank line) can be canceled.

- Font color** : Changes the color of characters and lines (ruled lines).
- Font size** : Changes the font size.
- Insert image** : Inserts images.
- Blink** : Displays characters that blink.
- Ticker** : Displays characters in a ticker (ticker display).
- Swing** : Displays characters that swing left and right.
- Word alignment** : Changes the position of characters or images.
- Insert line** : Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).
- Background color** : Changes the background color.
- Undo** : Restores the previous condition.

3 ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

4 after checking the decoration

Changing the decoration: ▶ **Highlight the start position** ▶

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Specifying decoration method after entering characters".
 P239

Canceling all decorations:

5 ▶

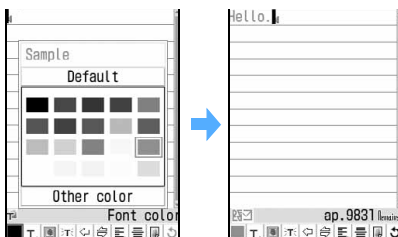
INFORMATION

You can also select decorations by pressing on the message text entry screen and selecting *Decorate mail*.

Operations on the decoration selection screen

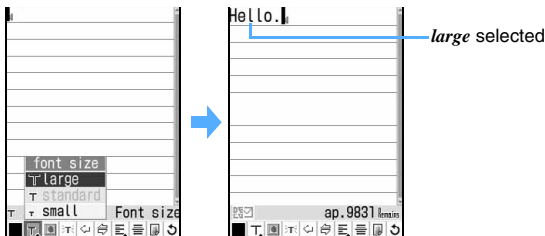
- The number in parentheses () indicates the example of decoration in P235.

Changing font color (example of decoration ①): Select ▶ Select a color ▶ Enter characters



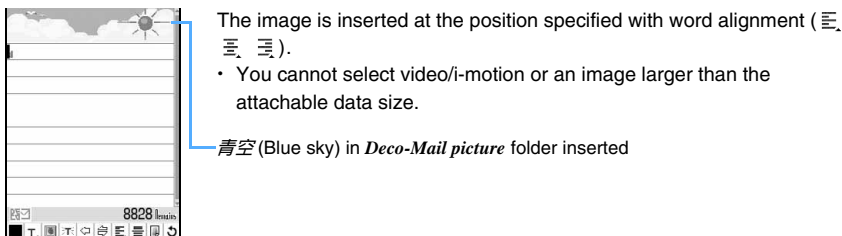
- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.
- The color of pictograms is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select *Default*. P239

Changing font size (example of decoration ②): Select T_L (or T_L, T_L) ▶ Select a size ▶ Enter characters



Inserting images (example of decoration ③): Select ▶ Select *Phone memory* ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

- To insert an image saved in the miniSD memory card: Select *miniSD card* ▶ or ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image
- To take and insert a still image: Select *Use still camera* ▶ Shoot ▶
 - The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).



Making characters blink (example of decoration ④): Select ▶ Enter characters




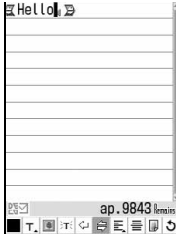
The entered characters are blinking.



Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ⑤): Select ▶ Enter characters





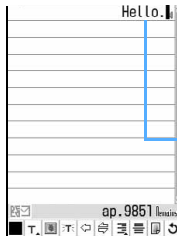
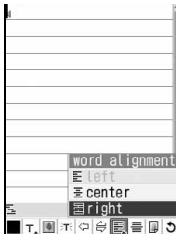
- Enter characters between and .

Making characters swing left and right (example of decoration ⑥): Select  ► Enter characters



- Enter characters between  and .


Changing word alignment (example of decoration ⑦): Select  (or   ) ► Select the display position ► Enter characters




- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.
- right* selected

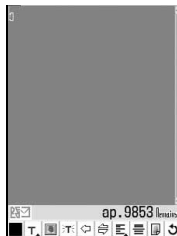
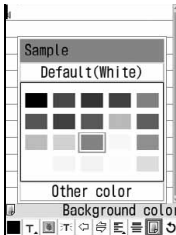
Inserting lines (ruled lines) (example of decoration ⑧): Select 



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (.

Line (ruled line)

Changing text background color (example of decoration ⑨): Select  ► Select a color



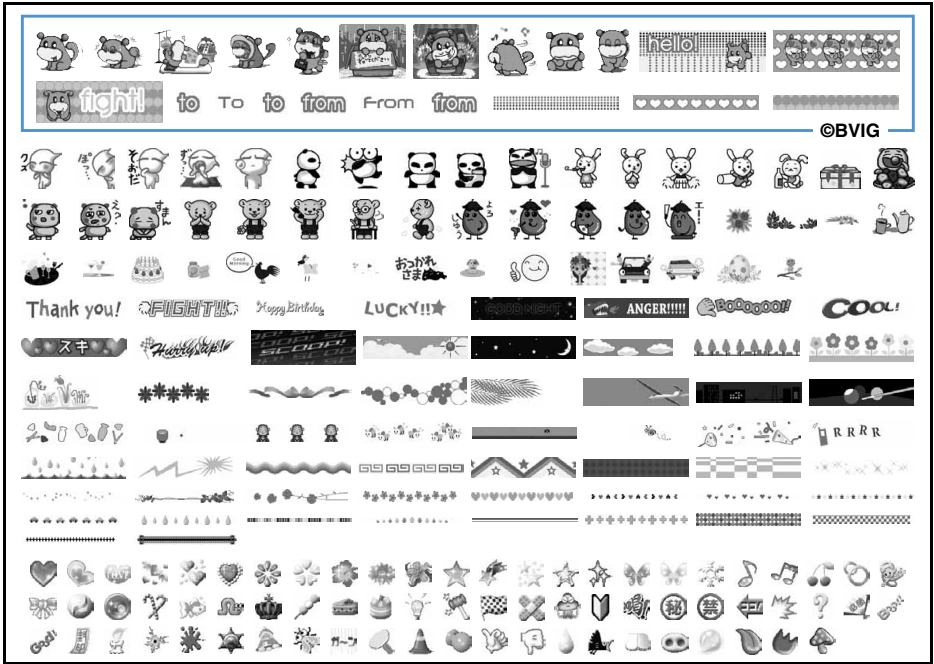
- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

Restoring the previous condition: Select 

Only the last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Images in Deco-Mail picture folder

- The following images are saved in *Deco-Mail picture* folder by default. If preinstalled images are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-Style". P296



Specifying decoration method after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters and change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

- The number in parentheses () in Step 3 indicates the example of decoration in P235.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

- 1** Highlight the start position on the message text entry screen
- 2** Highlight the end position



- To move the cursor to beginning of the text:
- To move the cursor to end of the text:
- To select all the text:

3 Select the decoration method



- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations are the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. P235

Changing the font color (example of decoration ①): [1] ▶

Select a color

- The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.

Changing the font size (example of decoration ②): [2] ▶

[1] to [3]

Making characters blink (example of decoration ③): [3] [1]

- To cancel: [3] [2]

Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ④): [4] [1]

- To cancel: [4] [2]

Making characters swing left and right (example of decoration ⑤):

[5] [1]

- To cancel: [5] [2]

Changing the word alignment (example of decoration ⑥): [6] ▶

[1] to [3]

- The display position of image is also changed.

Copying characters: [7]

Cutting characters: [8]


Restoring the previous condition: [9]

- The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Decorating characters continuously: [Melo] ▶ Repeat Step 3

4

The decoration method is unselected.

- You can also unselect it by pressing .

5 ▶

INFORMATION

In the message text entry screen, press [Melo] and select *Decorate mail* *Edit decoration*.

Press [Melo] [8] on the message text entry screen to display the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered at the lower right of the screen.


Attaching melodies to Deco-mail

Melo-deco

1 on the decoration selection screen

- When a melody is already attached, the list of attached melodies is displayed. Go to Step 3, “Attaching another melody” or “Removing an attached melody”. P241

2 Select a folder

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card* and then select a folder.
- Highlight a melody and press [Melo] to play the melody. Press  to attach it or [ch/over] to return to the list.
- When *Phone memory* is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.

3 Select a melody

The melody is attached and its file name and file size are displayed in the list of attached melodies.

- When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message indicating that the file cannot be selected appears.

Attaching another melody:

① ▶ **Select a folder**

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, press , select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card* and then select a folder.

② **Select a melody**

Removing an attached melody: Highlight a melody ▶ ▶ **Select Yes**

4

appears at the lower part of the screen.

5 ▶

Mail attachment melodies

The following melodies are saved in *Mail Attach Melody* folder by default.

Title	Song title (composer name in [])
クリスマス (Christmas)	JOY TO THE WORLD [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC/MASON LOWELL]
結婚式 (Wedding)	BRIDAL MARCH [WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM]
誕生日 (Birthday)	-
嬉しい (Happiness)	-
悲しい (Sadness)	-

- The composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

Attaching files

Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with images, video/i-motion, melodies and ToruCa attached.

- Attachable files are as shown below:

Item	Maximum number of files attached to one mail	Condition of attachment
Melody	10*3	Melodies in MFi format cannot be attached.
ToruCa		Sent with ToruCa (details) not downloaded.*4 Up to 321 bytes when attaching and up to 1,024 bytes when forwarding.*5
Image of up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)*1		Created animation and Flash movie cannot be attached.
Image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB*1	1	Only image in JPEG format can be attached.
Video/i-motion of up to 500 KB*2		File with replay restriction set cannot be attached.*6

*1 Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachment to mail or mail containing a URL for the images will be received.

*2 Depending on the receiver's model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous images. Video with the image size other than 176 x 144 (QCIF) or 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or video recorded with HQ+ (highest quality) set cannot be attached regardless of the file size.

- *3 Up to 10 images, melodies and ToruCa in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of files that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.
 - *4 ToruCa (details) can be downloaded at the receiver side. However, it may not be downloaded depending on the receiver's terminal.
 - *5 The maximum file size may vary by ToruCa.
 - *6 Some files without replay restriction may not be attached.
- The maximum number of characters in a message differs by the size of attachment.
 - When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies, images and ToruCa are attached) is less than 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters (400 one-byte or 200 two-byte characters for Deco-mail), you cannot attach video/i-motion or images exceeding 10,000 bytes.
 - Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images with the file restriction set to *File restricted* on your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
 - A JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In this case, it is received as mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).
 - Recorded video of up to 500 Kbytes (excluding the message) can be attached to i-motion Mail.
 - The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
 - When sent to other than FOMA D701i, D901i, D901iS or D902i melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.







1 Select field on the mail composition screen

2 Select the attachment type ▶ Select a file


Attaching an image:

① Select Image

② Select Phone memory ▶ Select a folder

- To select from the miniSD memory card: Select *miniSD card* ▶  or  ▶ Select a folder
- To take and attach a still image: Select *Use still camera* ▶ Shoot ▶  ▶ Go to Step 3
 - The size of image is automatically set to 240 x 320 (QVGA).
- Highlight an image and press  to display the image. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- Images that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ Select an image



File name of the selected image is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.

- For JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to QVGA. When file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box.


When you do not save it to Data Box or a message saying that saving failed appears, the reduced image is not saved. An unsent mail is saved in Unsent messages with no image attached. Also, the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.

- For JPEG image exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. This operation may take some time.
- When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select an image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the image to FOMA terminal. If it is not copied to FOMA terminal, the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.

Attaching video/i-motion (i-motion Mail):**① Select *i-motion*****② Select *Phone memory* ▶ Select a folder**

- To select from the miniSD memory card: Select *miniSD card* ▶ Select a folder
- To record and attach video: Select *Use movie camera* ▶ Record ▶  ▶ Go to Step 3
 - The size of video image is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Highlight video/i-motion and press  to play the video/i-motion.
- When *Phone memory* is selected, video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed.




③ Select a video/i-motion file

- File name of the selected video/i-motion is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.
- When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select video/i-motion that cannot be attached, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.
 - When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select video/i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the file to FOMA terminal. If it is not copied to FOMA terminal, the attachment to auto-send mail will not be sent.



Attaching a melody:**① Select *Melody***

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select *Melody* and then select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card*.

② Select a folder

- Highlight a melody and press  to play the melody. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- When *Phone memory* is selected, melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.




③ Select a melody

- File name of the selected melody is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen. And  appears at the lower part of the screen.
- When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select a melody that cannot be attached, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.


Attaching ToruCa:**① Select *ToruCa***

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select *ToruCa* and then select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card*.

② Select a folder

- Highlight ToruCa and press  to confirm the contents. Press  to attach it or  to return to the list.
- When *Phone memory* is selected, ToruCa that cannot be attached is not displayed.

③ Select *ToruCa*

- The file name of the selected ToruCa is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.
- When *miniSD card* is selected, if you select ToruCa that cannot be attached, a message indicating that the data cannot be selected appears.

Recording and attaching sound (i-motion Mail): Select *Record sound* ▶ Record (Sound Recorder) ▶ 

The file name of the recorded sound is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.

3 Press 

- You can display or play the attached file by selecting  field.

INFORMATION

Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA). ▶P323

QVGA is the size of the stand-by display for models other than D902i and is suited for sending to an i-mode terminal.

When you send mail with a JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be sent to the i-mode terminal.

When you send mail with GIF image, melody, ToruCa or sound attached to a mova terminal, the attached file will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen

2 Highlight  field 

Changing the attachment: Highlight  field  Attach a file 

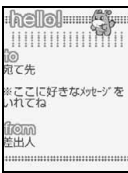
3 Select *Yes*

Using mail templates

You can register the contents of i-mode Mail in mail template for entering the same sentence at the beginning of messages or sending similar messages many times. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the contents. Deco-mail template is a template for Deco-mail that has the layout, decoration, etc. predefined and allows you to easily compose and send Deco-mail. Deco-mail template is read in the same way as a mail template.

- The following Deco-mail templates are registered by default:

Hello



©BVIG

Love



©BVIG

Fight!



©BVIG

ありがとう
(Thank you)



助かっちゃった
(Thanks for help)



おめでとう!
(Congratulations!)



誕生日おめでとう
(Happy birthday)



久しぶり
(Long time no see)



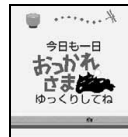
頑張って
(Cheer up)



調子はどう?
(How are you doing?)



おつかれさま
(Good job today)



ラッキー!
(Lucky!)





- You can save created templates.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

Using templates while composing mail

Read Template

You can read templates while composing new i-mode Mail.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set.

1 on the mail composition screen ▶ Select a template

: Image attached : Melody attached : ToruCa attached : Files of various types

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. When **Read body only** is selected, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When **Read all** is selected, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten. Press **ch/ok** to stop reading.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.


2 Edit the mail ▶

Viewing templates and composing mail

Display a list of registered templates and check the contents to set on the mail composition screen.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set. However, if the mail address entered in the address field of a template is registered in the phonebook, the template can be read.

1 ▶ Select a template

- Press  on the template view screen to display the previous or next template.

2


The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

3 Edit the mail ▶

Saving templates


Save Template

Composed mail or received/sent mail can be saved as template.

- Maximum number of templates that can be saved P36
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as new template.
- Video/i-motion or images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the template cannot be saved.


1 on the mail composition screen ▶ Select *Yes*

2 Press

- To overwrite a saved template:  ▶ Select a template ▶ Select *Yes*
 - The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
- The subject of the mail is entered as display name (the data and time if no subject is set). Up to 20 one- or two-byte characters can be entered.
- The date and time is entered as file name. Up to 36 one-byte characters can be entered, including alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.

To check or change the detail information of saved templates, press  in the template list and select *Detail info View* or *Edit*. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Downloading templates

Mail templates can be downloaded from sites. The downloaded mail templates can be read and edited on the mail composition screen.

- Maximum number of templates that can be saved P36

1 Select a mail template during site display


- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*

- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*
- To check the template: Select *Display*

3 Press

The mail template is saved in *Read templates*.

- To overwrite a saved template:  ▶ Select a template ▶ Select *Yes*
 - The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
- Display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used as the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

When a mail template downloaded from a site has a file attachment, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.

When a mail template downloaded from a site has the image that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal or the image that cannot be used on FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Deleting templates

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1  

2 Highlight a template ▶   

Deleting selected templates:    ▶ Select templates ▶ 

Deleting all templates:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- Maximum number of unsent mail that can be saved ▶P36

1   on the mail composition screen


i-mode Mail is saved in *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages.

- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

To automatically send a mail composed outside the service area:  



The mail is saved as auto-send mail in *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages.

- When the number of saved auto-send mails is 5, the mail is saved as normal mail.
- Auto-send mail is sent automatically once you enter the service area. When transmission fails, the mail is saved as auto-send failure mail.



- To cancel the auto-send setting: Highlight an auto-send mail in the unsent mail list ▶  ▶ Select *Yes*



INFORMATION


When auto-send mail is saved,  appears at the top of the screen.

Auto-send mail is sent about 1 to 2 minutes after entering the service area.  flashes at the top of the screen while auto-send mail is being sent. When transmission fails  flashes.

In the unsent mail list, select an auto-send mail to cancel the auto-send setting.

In the unsent mail list, highlight an auto-send failure mail and press  to cancel the auto-send setting. Also select an auto-send failure mail to display the reason for the failure and press  to cancel the auto-send setting.

• When a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears, you can display the broadcast address by pressing . Press  to cancel the auto-send setting.




 disappears when there is no auto-send failure mail in Unsent messages by canceling auto-send setting of auto-send failure mails, deleting them or replacing the UIM by another UIM.

Menu 14 / Menu 15


Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

Example Editing unsent mail

1 ▶ Select a folder

-  is displayed for SMS.
- To edit and send sent mail:   ▶ Select a folder

2 Select a mail

- To edit sent mail: Highlight a mail ▶ 

3 Edit the mail ▶

INFORMATION

You can also edit mail by pressing  on the sent mail view screen.

When *ON* is set for *Unsent message* and *Outbox* in Edit by Slide, you can display the edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is highlighted or displayed.

Composing mail quickly

Quick Mail

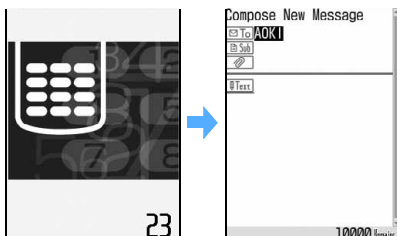
You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry for the party is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) ▶

The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail ▶ P232

Composing SMS: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ (for over a second)

- The SMS composition screen is displayed. The first phone number registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.
- Composing and sending SMS ◀P283

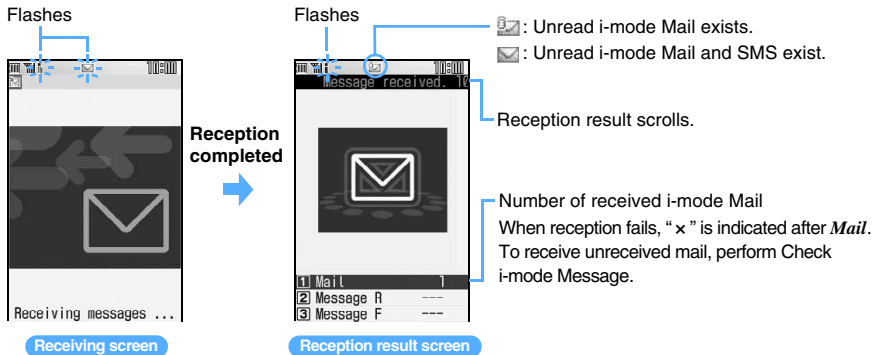
Receiving i-mode Mail

Mail Auto Receive

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator and/or call indicator. The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox.

- Maximum number of received mail that can be saved ◀P36

1 An i-mode Mail is received



and flash and *Receiving messages...* is displayed.

When reception is completed, the mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press (M) while receiving to stop reception but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. To return to the previous screen immediately, press (ch/227).

INFORMATION

The receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed depending on Display Priority. ◀P277

When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread i-mode Mail exists. When Receive Option Setting is on, you can select and receive only the mail you want without automatically receiving all mail.

When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center are also received. When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.

FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. ◀P261

Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.

The i-mode Center will delete the attachments that are not compatible with i-mode Mail and that are larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size). If an attachment has been deleted, [添付ファイル削除] (Attachment deleted) is inserted in the message. Attachable data size ◀P241

If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with *Limit Mail Size* in "Options" of iMenu, the attachments are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received.



When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". ●P107





• When more than one i-mode Mail is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator are activated according to the settings made for the party (sender) of the i-mode Mail received last.

Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:

- When the power is off
- During a video-phone call
- During PushTalk
- In Self Mode
- When reception fails
- While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
- During infrared communication
- When Receive Option Setting is on
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail

When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.

If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen (●P28). To receive new mail, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.

If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center,  or  (●P28) is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center (●P230) is reached, the icon changes to  or .

i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.

Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 on the reception result screen



- The received i-mode Mail is saved in **Inbox** folder of Inbox. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder Select a mail

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ●P275
- Displaying received mail ●P259
- Selecting a Message i- ppli folder starts the corresponding i- ppli.

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive


Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives



When Receive Option Setting is on, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and the message shown on the left appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring tone or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than  to clear the message.

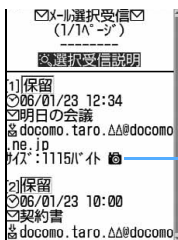
During All Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail stored to the i-mode Center. Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting. SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

Selecting mail to receive





You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center and select only necessary mail to receive. You can also delete unnecessary i-mode Mail without receiving it.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to *ON* in advance.

1



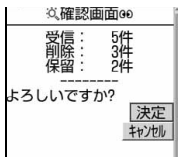
You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

-  : Image attached
-  : Melody attached
-  : i-motion attached
-  : ToruCa attached

2 Select 保留 (Hold) for each mail ▶ Select 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete) or 保留

- When 保留 is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message etc.
- To delete all mail stored at the i-mode Center, select 削除 for *i-モードセンターから全てのメールを* (All mail from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than one page, select 前ページ (Previous page) and 次ページ (Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 Select 受信 / 削除 (Receive/Delete) ▶ Select 決定 (OK)



Checking for mail

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off.

Also checks for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message.

1

Check i-mode Message is executed. If stored in the i-mode Center, i-mode Mail is received.

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto receive. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds.

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to received SMS for which *Payphone* or *Not support* is displayed as sender or to Short Mail sent from mova terminals (with i-mode subscription).
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 Select a folder

2 Highlight a mail

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

- When Quick Reply Setting is set to **OFF**, when a quick reply message is not registered or when you are replying to SMS, the quick reply message selection screen does not appear. Go to Step 4.

When FOMA terminal is closed:

When **ON** is set for *Inbox* in Edit by Slide, you can reply by opening FOMA terminal when the mail is highlighted or displayed.

Replying to all addresses of received mail:

- You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you.

3 Select a quick reply message



The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail in field (for only i-mode Mail), and the quick reply message and quote character ">" followed by the received message text in field.

- To cancel inserting a quick reply message, select *Compose Message*. The message text entry screen appears.

- 1 Quick reply message
- 2 Quote character ">" and received message

4 Edit the mail

- When you display the received mail list after sending, you will see the icon for the received mail change to or

INFORMATION

In the received mail view screen, press .

The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.

The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i- ppli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message) is not attached to reply mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.


When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.

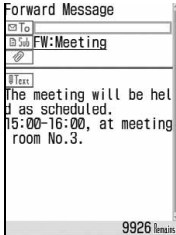
However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.



When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses by pressing or opening FOMA terminal, the mail addresses displayed in field differ depending on the screen. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is shown. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are displayed.

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.


1  **1** ▶ Select a folder



2 Highlight a mail ▶ 



“FW:” followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in  field (for only i-mode Mail) and the received message text in  field.

- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 Edit the mail ▶ 

- When you display the received mail list after sending, you will see the icon for the received mail change to  or .

INFORMATION

In the received mail view screen, press  and select **Reply/Forward** **Forward**.


Regarding the attachments to received mail (image, melody and ToruCa), files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forward mail.

Even if files are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, some melody files may not be attached depending on the type.

The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-ppli or melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message) is not attached to forward mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.

When forwarding the mail with an image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached.

When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.

When the maximum data size that can be sent is exceeded, a message indicating the mail cannot be sent is displayed when  is pressed.

When forwarding a mail with ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes in size attached, the ToruCa is not attached.

Saved images can be viewed from **Image** (My Picture) of Data Box or set for the stand-by display.

- Maximum number of images that can be saved ◀P36

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with an image attached



Image icon, file name and file size

- : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
- : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download
- : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded
- : Attachment of image of which download failed
- : Data error

Switching between displaying and not displaying image: Select the file name

- You can switch displaying and not displaying an image on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.

Checking the title: Highlight the file name ▶ 6 2

Displaying the URL for image exceeding 10,000 bytes: Highlight the file name ▶

6 3

- To display the URL before download: Highlight **保存期限** (Storage period) in the message ▶

6 2

2 Highlight the file name ▶ 6 3

- If the image is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (**File restricted** is displayed), its information cannot be changed. Go to Step 4.
- A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes is automatically downloaded and saved in **i-mode** folder of **Image** (My Picture). You cannot save the image again by pressing 6 3. When the image cannot be downloaded because reception is interrupted or there is not enough storage space available for images, you can download it by selecting **保存期限** in the message.

Saving an image displayed in Deco-mail: 4 4 ▶ Select an image

3 Select each item to set

- Follow Step 3 in “Downloading images from sites and messages”. ◀P209

4 ▶ Select the folder to save the image to

- Saved images can be set for the stand-by display. ◀P321

INFORMATION

To check the image title on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card, highlight the file name of an image, press and select **Attachment Check title**.

Images of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.

When received mail with an image attached is displayed, the attached image is automatically displayed. Note that, the image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of image to display the image.

The file name of image inserted in Deco-mail is not displayed in the mail view screen.

When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.

Some images may not be displayed correctly.



You can save images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.

File name of the downloaded image can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Images exceeding 352 horizontal x 288 vertical or 240 horizontal x 400 vertical view size cannot be used as frame.


Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes of 240 x 400 and larger cannot be used as stamp.



Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format and 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved images. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be shown by pressing .

Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

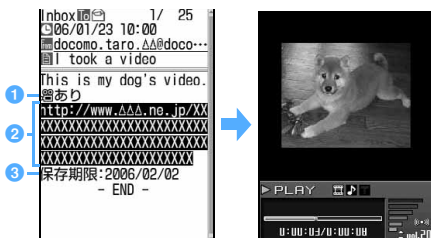
When video/i-motion is attached to mail and sent, it is stored at the i-motion Mail Center and mail containing a URL to view the i-motion is received. Select the URL to download and play or save the i-motion. Saved i-motion can be played from *i-motion* of Data Box or set for the stand-by display.

- Maximum number of i-motion files that can be saved 
- i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.
- The volume for playing i-motion follows Settings (i-motion).

1   ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion

2 Select the URL ▶ Select *Yes*

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback begins.




- Playback screen operating procedure 

- 1 Indicates that i-motion is attached.
- 2 URL for i-motion
- 3 Storage period of i-motion at the i-motion Mail Center

3 Select *Save* when the play ends

- To play the i-motion, select *Play*.
- To display information on the i-motion, select *File property*.

4  The i-motion is saved in *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.

- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.

Setting for the stand-by display: 1 ▶ **Select Yes**

- Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with replay restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the stand-by display.
- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged can be set to the same size or large size.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If *Yes* is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled and selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display.
- Operation of video/i-motion set for the stand-by display ◀P134

5 Select Back

INFORMATION

You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.

When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion saved at the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved video-i-motion. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Before deletion, you can play video/i-motion by pressing on the video/i-motion list and view detail information on it by pressing .

Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. ◀P466

Playing and saving attached melodies

Play/Save Melody

Saved melodies can be played from *Melody* of Data Box or used as a ring tone.

- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D701i, D901i, D901iS or D902i, the received melodies may not play correctly.
- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved ◀P36

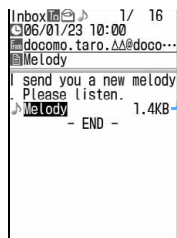
1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached

- There are 2 types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.



Displayed under message (SMF format)

Melody icon, file name and file size



Displayed in message (MFI format)

Melody icon, title and file size



- ♪ : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- ♪^x : Data error
- ♪₈ : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal

Playing the melody: Select the melody

The melody plays at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.

- To stop playback:


Checking the title:

- For melodies displayed under the message (SMF format): Highlight the melody ▶ 
- For melodies displayed in the message (MFi format): Highlight the melody ▶ 

Displaying the data as text (data display):

- This function is not available with melodies (SMF format) that appear under the message.

① Highlight the melody ▶

- To return to the title display: Highlight the first row of the melody data ▶ 


2 Highlight the melody ▶

3 Press

The melody is saved in *i-mode* folder of *Melody*.

- The set display name is displayed. Enter a name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) on the save melody screen to set the display name.



INFORMATION

To play and save the melody during data display, highlight the first row of the displayed data, press , and select *Attachment Play* or *Save*.

In the sent mail view screen, highlight a melody, press  and select *Attachment Save*.

You can play melodies attached to sent mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way.

When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved melodies. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete. Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

Displaying and saving ToruCa from i-mode Mail


Saved ToruCa can be viewed from *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

- Maximum number of ToruCa that can be saved ▶P36

1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode Mail with ToruCa attached



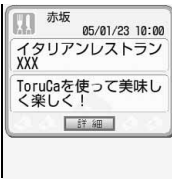
ToruCa icon, file name and file size




 : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal

 : Data error

Checking the title: Highlight the file name ▶

2 Select the file name




Saving without downloading ToruCa (details): Highlight the file name ▶   
The ToruCa is saved in *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

3 Select *詳細* (Details) ▶ Select *Yes*

The ToruCa (details) is received.

INFORMATION

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a message indicating the ToruCa cannot be saved appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete saved ToruCa. Before deletion, you can display ToruCa by pressing  on the ToruCa list.

You can display and save ToruCa from the sent mail view screen or mail template view screen in the same way as above. However, ToruCa cannot be saved from the mail template view screen.

Deleting attachments




Delete Attachment




You can delete images, melodies and ToruCa attached to received mail.

- Melodies (MFi format) displayed in the message or links to start i- ppli cannot be deleted.
- Images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be deleted only from *i-mode* folder of *Image* (My Picture).

Example Deleting an attached image

1   ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select i-mode Mail with an image attached**

2 **Highlight the file name** ▶   


- To delete all attachments:   

3 **Select *Yes***

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

When you delete an image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to received mail, the image cannot be selected in the mail displayed and the storage period will be dimmed.

In the sent mail view screen, highlight the file name of an image, melody or ToruCa, press , and select *Attachment Delete* or *Delete all*.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox



Inbox/Outbox

You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and SMS. The received i-mode Mail and SMS are saved to folders in Inbox and the sent i-mode Mail and SMS are to folders in Outbox. Folders in Unsent messages contains the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending and that failed to be sent and the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.

- Maximum number of mail that can be saved ◀P36


Example Displaying received mail

1 1

- To display sent mail:  5
- To display unsent mail:  4

2 Select a folder

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i- ppli folder to start the corresponding i- ppli.
- To display mail in a Message i- ppli folder without starting i- ppli: Highlight the folder ▶  1

3 Select a mail








- You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs. You can also register the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs in the phonebook and the URLs in Bookmark. In addition, you can copy text. ◀P267
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

Reading the folder list screen

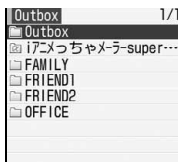
Reading the Inbox folder list screen



Page number/total page count and storage space status bar are displayed at the top of the Inbox folder list screen.

-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): No unread mail
-  : No unread mail (Privacy on)
-  : No unread mail (used for Message i- ppli)
-  : Unread mail exists
-  : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
-  : Unread mail exists (used for Message i- ppli)

Reading the Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



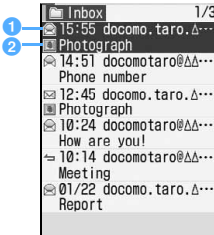
Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen.

-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): Mail exists
-  : Privacy on
-  : Message i- ppli

INFORMATION

Even if Message i- ppli has been deleted, the mail can be displayed if the Message i- ppli folder is left undeleted.

Reading the received mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the received mail list screen. Reception date/time, sender and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

- 1 : Unread : Unread (unable to reply) : Read : Read (unable to reply)
- : Read (replied) : Read (forwarded) : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)
- : Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)

- For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

- 2 : Image of up to 10,000 bytes : Melody : ToruCa
- : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes : Files of various types
- : SMS : i- ppli To : Message i- ppli

- When *Display 1 row* is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment.
- When an image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes, melodies or ToruCa are not displayed.
- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.

Reading the sent/unsent mail list screen

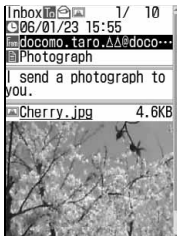


Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the sent/unsent mail list screen. Sent or saved date/time, receiver and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

- No icon: Unprotected : Protected
- : Auto-send : Protected (auto-send)
- : Auto-send failure : Protected (auto-send failure)
- : Image of up to 10,000 bytes : Melody
- : Image exceeding 10,000 bytes : i-motion
- : ToruCa : Files of various types
- : SMS : Message i- ppli

- When *Display 1 row* is set in Mail List Setting, is displayed before the subject of a mail with attachment in the sent mail list.
- When an i-motion or image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached images of up to 10,000 bytes, melodies or ToruCa are not displayed.
- In the sent or saved date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

Reading the received mail view screen



Receiver icon*1, status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the received mail view screen.

*1 TO, CC or BCC is indicated (for i-mode Mail).

- : Reception date and time
- : Sender
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Received SMS, Delivered report* or *Notify missed call* for SMS)
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- You can change the font size.
- For SMS which contains an error, is displayed.

Reading the sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the sent mail view screen.

- : Sent date and time
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject
- You can change the font size.

INFORMATION

For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked with the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked with the phone number field in the phonebook data. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". P107
The subject and sender of SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice
Subject	Received SMS	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

- When the phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field.
- When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:
User unset (message was sent by setting not to notify the caller ID)
Payphone (message was sent from a payphone)
Not support (message was sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID)

When there are attachments or links to start i- ppli, the icon, file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

- Description of image icons P254
- Description of melody icons P256
- Description of ToruCa icons P257
- Links to start i- ppli P301

When decorated mail is received from PCs, operations may not be the same as on PCs because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals.

When there is more than one data item attached in the message text (links to start i- ppli or melodies (MFI format) displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case, is displayed for the attached data.

When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.

Adding and deleting folders

Adding folders

- In Inbox, you can add up to 40 folders other than **Inbox** folder and Message i- ppli folders.
- In Outbox or Unsent messages, you can add up to 10 folders other than **Outbox** folder or **Unsent messages** folder and Message i- ppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders and Message i- ppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in Inbox

1



- Outbox ⌂P259
- Unsent messages ⌂P259

2



Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder ▶

3

Select each item to set

Folder name : Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy : When **ON** is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (**Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**).

4

Press

Deleting folders

- **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i- ppli folders cannot be deleted when the i- ppli for the folder exists.

Example Deleting a folder in Inbox

1



- Outbox ⌂P259
- Unsent messages ⌂P259

2

Highlight a folder ▶

3

Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select **Yes**

Checking number of mail items

Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

1




- Outbox ⌂P259
- Unsent messages ⌂P259

2

Highlight a folder ▶

INFORMATION





In the mail list screen, press  and select *Display* *Check No. of items*.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address



You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

Example Checking the mail address of a received mail

1   ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a mail**
· Outbox  P259 · Mail templates  P246

2 **Select a sender or receiver**

INFORMATION





To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press  on the mail view screen and select *Display* *Display address*. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, highlight the mail to display mail address, press  and select *Display* *Display address*. All receivers' addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and receivers (except you) for received mail (*TO:* and *CC:* are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail


Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders or the miniSD memory card.





Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1   ▶ **Select a folder**
· Outbox  P259 · Unsent messages  P259

2 **Highlight a received mail** ▶    
Moving selected mails:     ▶ **Select mails** ▶ 



Moving all mail in folder:    

Copying a mail to the miniSD memory card: **Highlight a received mail** ▶    
▶ **Select Yes**

Copying all mail to the miniSD memory card (backup):     ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Select Yes**

3  ▶ **Select the destination folder** ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

To copy an unsent mail to the miniSD memory card, highlight a mail in the unsent mail list, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Copy to miniSD* *One item*. To back up, press  in the unsent mail list and select *Move/Copy* *Copy to miniSD* *Backup*.

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message*. appears and the operation may be canceled.

When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i- ppli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Search the mails in Inbox and Outbox by sender/receiver or by received date/sent date.

- Received mails are searched by sender or received date.
- Sent mails are searched by receiver or sent date.

Example Searching received mails by sender

1 1
• Outbox P259

2 9 1 ▶ Select the phonebook to use for search



- To search by received date or sent date: 9 2 ▶ Select the date
- When you highlight a phonebook entry or a date, the first 2 mails that meet the search condition are displayed.
 - Press to display all mails in a list that meet the search condition.
 - If you search sent mails by receiver, the mails are searched also by the second address and so on (the first address is displayed on the screen).
- To display the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, activate Secret Mode.

3 Select a mail to display

- The search results screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.

INFORMATION

In the received mail or sent mail list screen, press and select *Message search With phonebook* or *With calendar*. Only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

Sorting received/sent mail

You can temporarily change the sorting order of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox. Closing the list resets the sorting order to *By date*.

- You can select from *By date*, *By sender (By address for Outbox)*, or *By title*.
- You cannot change the order of mail for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default By date

Example Sorting the received mail list

1 1 ▶ Select a folder
• Outbox P259

2 7 4 ▶ 1 to 3
Sorting the sent mail list: 5 ▶ 1 to 3

INFORMATION

When *By sender* or *By address* is set, the mail will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.

When *By title* is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, the mail may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

When *By title* is set, the mail will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if any SMS is saved in the same folder and beginning of the message is displayed as subject.


Changing the read/unread status of received mails

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mails.

Example Changing a read mail to unread




1   ▶ Select a folder




2 Highlight a mail ▶   

Changing an unread mail to read: Highlight a mail ▶   

Changing multiple read mails to unread:    ▶ Select mails ▶  ▶ Select Yes

Changing multiple unread mails to read:    ▶ Select mails ▶  ▶ Select Yes

Changing all mails in the folder to unread:    ▶ Select Yes

Changing all mails in the folder to read:    ▶ Select Yes

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail




You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- Maximum number of mail that can be protected ◀P36
- Unread mail cannot be protected.





Example Protecting a received mail

1   ▶ Select a folder

- Outbox ◀P259
- Unsent messages ◀P259

2 Highlight a received mail ▶   

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail :  (read)  (unable to reply)  (replied)  (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail : 




• To cancel protection: Highlight a mail ▶   

Protecting selected mails:    ▶ Select mails ▶ 


- Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected mail being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

Protecting all mail in folder:   

Canceling protection of selected mails:    ▶ Select mails ▶ 

Canceling protection of all mail:   

INFORMATION

In the mail view screen, press  and select *Protect* or *Cancel protection*.

When *Protect all* is selected, mails are protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mail at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

: Available x : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
All messages	All mail (including unread items)		x	x
Read in folder	Read mail in folder		*1	x
All in folder	All mail in folder (including unread items)		*1	x
7days past in fldr	All mail in folder that has been stored for longer than the specified number of days (including unread items)		*1	x
14days past in fldr			*1	x
30days past in fldr			*1	x
One item/Selected item*2	A selected mail item	x		
Selected items	Selected mail items	x		x
All search result	All searched mail	x	*2	x

*1 Not available from the mail search results list

*2 Available only from the mail search results list

1 Deleting all mail: ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Select a folder ▶
 • To delete one item: Highlight a received mail ▶

3 to
 Deleting selected mails: ▶ Select mails ▶
 Deleting all mail in folder: ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Select Yes

INFORMATION

In the mail view screen, press and select *Delete*.

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

Sent/unsent mail can be deleted in the following method:

: Available x : Unavailable


Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
<i>All messages</i>	All mail		x	x
<i>All in folder</i>	All mail in folder		x	x
<i>All items</i>	All mail in folder	x		x
<i>One item/Selected item</i> *1	A selected mail item	x		(sent mail only)
<i>Selected items</i>	Selected mail items	x		x
<i>All search result</i>	All searched mail	x	*1	x

*1 Available only from the sent mail search results list




Example Deleting a sent mail

1  

• Unsent messages P259

Deleting all mail:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 4

2 Select a folder

3 Highlight a sent mail ▶   

Deleting selected mails:    ▶ Select mails ▶ 

Deleting all mail in folder:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

In the folder list, press  and select *Delete message*.

In the mail view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

Useful functions of mail

When the message of i-mode Mail or SMS contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs, select them to make voice/video-phone/PushTalk calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To). You can also copy characters in the i-mode Mail or SMS and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites.
- When mail is received from a PC etc., the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template being displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen or phonebook registration screen.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied.
- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text on the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- Highlight the item to copy when copying a selected item.



- When a template is displayed, press .

3 Select the copying method

- Copy text* : Copies a specified range of the message text.
- Copy title* : Copies the subject.
- Copy selected item* : Copies a highlighted item.

- For *Copy text*, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in “Copying the URL” ◀P213

4 Display a character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be copied and pasted and saved to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Making calls from received/sent mail

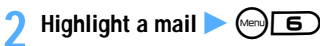
Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”) and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are registered in the phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making a call from received mail

1 Display the received mail list



- In the received/sent mail view screen, highlight the party to call (sender/receiver) and press



- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the mail address to make a call to.

3 Set dialing conditions


4 Select Yes



Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in phonebook


You can register mail addresses, phone numbers and URLs in the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data as a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

Example Registering data on the received mail view screen


1 Display the mail containing an item

2 Highlight the item  4

3  to register a new entry or  to add to an existing entry

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook".  P213

INFORMATION

In the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the miniSD memory card, press  and select *Save*. Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing a URL

2 Highlight the URL  4 

3 Select a folder

INFORMATION

Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal

Mail Setting

Menu 193

Sorting mail automatically into designated folders

Sort Criteria

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

Setting sort criteria

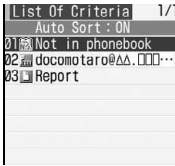
- To set and activate the criteria, set auto sort to *ON* for received mail and sent mail. It is set to *ON* by default. P272
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- You can sort normal mail to Message i- ppli folders. The sort criteria for Message i- ppli take precedence.

Example Sorting received mail

1 [Envelope] [9] [3]

2 [1]

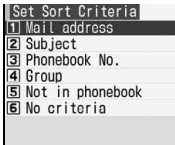
- To sort sent mail: [2]



Auto sort on/off is displayed in the first row. From the second row, the registered sort criteria are listed in the order of priority.

- [To] : Receiver mail address [From] : Sender mail address [No.] : Phonebook No.
[Not in phonebook] : Not in phonebook [Subject] : Subject [Group] : Group
[No criteria] : No criteria

3 [Menu] [1] ▶ Set the sort criteria



Sort criteria setting screen

Specifying a mail address:

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

① [1] [2] ▶ Enter the mail address ▶ [OK]

- To search the phonebook: [1] [1] ▶ Select a phonebook entry
▶ Select a mail address

Specifying a subject:

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

① [2] ▶ Enter the subject ▶ [OK]

Specifying a phonebook No.:

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified FOMA terminal phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

① [3] ▶ Enter the phonebook No. ▶ [OK]

② Select a phonebook entry

Specifying a group:

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group.

① [4]

② [1] to search the FOMA terminal phonebook or [2] to search the UIM phonebook

③ Select a group

Specifying "Not in phonebook": [5]

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

Setting no criteria: **6**

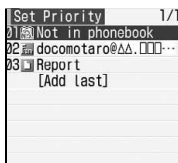
Sorts all mail without setting criteria.

4 Select the folder to sort mail to



- When a Message i- ppli folder is selected, a message indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i- ppli appears. To set mail sorting to the folder, select *Yes*.

5 Specify the priority



- The new criteria is added above the selected row.
- To set the first criteria in the list: Select *[Add last]*.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list: Select *[Add last]*.
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, *[Move to last]* is displayed instead of *[Add last]*.

INFORMATION

The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:

- ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
- ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in *Inbox* folder or *Outbox* folder.

If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when “mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp” is specified in the criteria.

When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the FOMA terminal phonebook addresses are given priority for sorting. The sort priority set in this function may not apply.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 **9** **3** **1** or **2**

2 Select the sort criteria

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

Changing registered sort criteria:

- ① **Highlight the sort criteria** **2**
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Setting sort criteria”. •P270
- ② **Select Yes**

Changing the priority: **Highlight the sort criteria** **5** **Select the position**

- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select *[Move to last]*.

Deleting criteria: **Highlight the sort criteria** **3** **Select Yes**

- To delete all : **4** Enter the terminal security code **Select Yes**





Setting auto sort

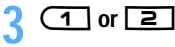
- Even if *ON* is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default got mail criteria: **ON** sent mail criteria: **ON**

Example Sorting received mail automatically



- To sort sent mail automatically:    



Menu 194

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

- You can enter up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters.

Default Auto insert: **Yes** Signature: **not set**



2 Select each item to set

Auto insert : Sets whether to insert signature automatically.

- To cancel auto insert, select *No*.


Signature : Enter the signature text.

3 Press

INFORMATION

The signature text is counted as characters in the message.


When **Auto insert** is set to *Yes*, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying and forwarding.

When a signature is registered, you can insert the signature by pressing  in the message text entry screen and selecting *Add signature*, regardless of this function's setting.

When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

The signature cannot be inserted when composing SMS if the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting.

The signature cannot be inserted when replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to *English*.

Menu 164 / Menu 2732 /  732

Setting items to inquire to i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

- **Mail**, **MessageR**, and **MessageF** are all selected as by default. If you do not want to check for any item, change it to .

Default selected (all)



2 Select the item to inquire

- You cannot save the setting with no items selected.

3 Press


Menu 1972

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

Default OFF

1 ▶ or

- When *ON* is selected, a message indicating that mails will not be automatically delivered appears. Press .

Menu 196

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1

2


Renaming a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶  

Copying a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶  

Deleting a mail group: Highlight a mail group ▶    ▶ Select *Yes*

Deleting all mail groups:    ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*

3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶

- To add another group: 


4 Select a mail group

Editing a mail address: Select a mail address (or name) ▶ Edit the mail address ▶ 

Deleting a mail address: Highlight a mail address (or name) ▶   ▶ Select *Yes*

Displaying mail address details:   ▶  after checking the details

5 ▶ Select each item to set

Address Type : Sets TO, CC and BCC. 

Address : Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).


- To search the phonebook:  

6

- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.
- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat from Step 5

7 Press

The mail addresses are registered in the mail group.

- Highlight a mail group and press  to compose i-mode Mail.

INFORMATION

If there is no TO address entered, mail cannot be sent.
Using a mail group to enter addresses ◀P233

Menu 1951

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote: Yes Quote characters: > (one-byte character)

1  9 5 1

2 Select each item to set

Quote : Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

- When *Yes* is selected, *Quote characters* can be set.

Quote characters : Enter a quote character (up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character).

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

3 Press

Menu 1952

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying

Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS messages.
- Even if *ON* is set, a quick reply message cannot be inserted when not registered.

Default ON

1  9 5 2 ▶ 1 or 2

Menu 1953


Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying

Quick Reply Template

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, select and edit or delete a default message.

Default OK です。(OK) NG です。(No good) ありがとう！(Thank you!)
ゴメンなさい！(Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)

1  9 5 3 ▶ Select a message

2 Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters) ▶  ▶ Select *Yes*

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

Viewing a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list ▶ 

Deleting a registered message: Highlight a message in the quick reply message list ▶

Menu 1 ▶ Select Yes

Registering a new message: Select <New reply template> in the quick reply message list ▶

Enter the message ▶

Restoring the default settings: Menu 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Menu 1975

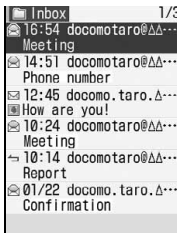
Setting the display style of the mail list

Mail List Setting

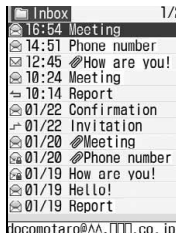
The display style of the mail list can be set for Inbox and Outbox.

- The 2-row display applies to Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows



Display 2 rows



Display 1 row

Sender address of the highlighted received mail (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 [Envelope] 9 7 5 ▶ [1] or [2]

Menu 1973

Setting whether to receive attachments

Incoming Msg. Attach.

You can set whether to receive images, melodies and ToruCa attached to i-mode Mail.

Default Image/Melody/ToruCa

1 [Envelope] 9 7 3 ▶ [1] to [4]

INFORMATION

When *Not receive* or *Melody only* is set, images inserted in a message cannot be received.

Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.

Melodies in MFI format pasted in the message are received regardless of this setting.

Menu 1974 / Menu 2733 / ▼733

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F play automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 [Envelope] 9 7 4 ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

When *Auto play* is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the volume for phone set in Ring Volume Setting. When more than one melody is attached, the melodies play one after another. Press **ch/2VD** to stop the play.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed. Closing the list resets the setting to *Display all items/Display all*.

- For Inbox, you can select from *Display all items*, *Unread item only*, *Read item only*, or *Protected item only*.
- For Outbox, you can select *Display all* or *Display protected*.
- You cannot select the display type for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default | Display all items (for Inbox)/Display all (for Outbox)

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

1 **Ⓜ** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

- Outbox ◀ P259

2 **Ⓜ** **7** **2** ▶ **1** to **4**

INFORMATION

When *Read item only* is set, protected mail is not displayed.

Changing the mail font size

Font Size

You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail, mail template, etc.

- The setting applies to all mail including received mail, sent mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card.
- The font size cannot be changed while composing and editing mail.

Default | Medium (standard)



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard):
20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen


1 **Ⓜ** **1** ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select a mail** ▶ **Ⓜ** **3** **1**

- When a mail template is displayed, press **Ⓜ** **4** **1**.

3 **1** to **3**

INFORMATION

In the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the miniSD memory card, press  and select *Font size*.
The new font size is retained until it is changed.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mail

Incoming Msg. Setting


You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

Default Select mail ring tone: *Melody/ パターン 2 (Pattern 2)* Incoming msg. lighting: *Flash/Aqua*
Set vibrate alert: *OFF* Ring time (sec): *10*

1   

2 Select each item to set

Select mail ring tone : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion.
To disable the ring tone, select *OFF*.

• Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion P126

Incoming msg. lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.


• When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press 

INFORMATION

When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence. P109

Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Incoming msg. lighting* or *Set vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.








Menu 1971

Setting mail reception notification

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default Show message

1       or 

Continue operation : Displays neither the receiving screen nor reception result screen.

Show message : Displays the receiving screen and reception result screen.

INFORMATION

Even when *Show message* is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated during a voice call, PushTalk, data communication, camera use, i- ppli operation, streaming type i-motion play, or alarm sounding.

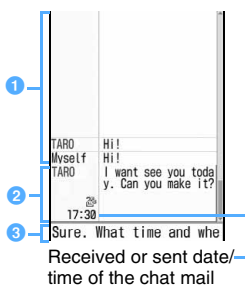
When *Continue operation* is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated in the following conditions:

- Not in stand-by (other function is running)
- During All Lock
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- During PIM Lock

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as a chat member in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is on or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject “チャットメール (Chat mail)”. If a mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” is sent from a registered chat member who uses a non-compatible terminal, FOMA terminal can receive it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mail to/from multiple parties is the same as that for sending broadcast mail.

Chat mail screen



1 Sent/received log

Press to scroll the log when is displayed in the guide row.

- To scroll by a page:
- To move to the first row:
- To move to the last row:

2 Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.

- When the details cannot be displayed in a page, is indicated at the lower left and right corner. Press to switch between pages.

: Broadcast address not registered as a chat member

3 Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered. You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

1

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen is displayed. To add another member, press and go to Step 3.

2 Select *Yes*

3

4 Select *Address* field ▶ Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook, and then register only the phone number for chat member.

Searching the phonebook: ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Select a mail address

5 Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)


- When the mail address matches the address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in *Nickname* field.
- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select *Font color* field ▶ Select a color

- The color not used for registered member is displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange, and black.
- The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7 

The chat member is displayed.

- To add another member:  ▶ Repeat Step 4 to 7

8 Press **Composing and sending chat mail**

- Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in *Outbox* folder of Outbox. However, when the sent chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1  

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select *Yes* and register.

2 Select the text entry field ▶ Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

- When *ON* is set for *Chat mail* in Edit by Slide, you can display the text entry screen by opening FOMA terminal on the chat mail screen.

Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:**① Highlight a chat mail   ▶ Specify the range**










- Specifying the range ◀P442

② Select the text entry field ▶ Highlight a paste location  **Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail:   ****Selecting members to send mail:   ▶ Select addresses ****3 Press **

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

Chat mail can be displayed by the following operations:

- In the received mail list, highlight a chat mail and press   .
- In the sent mail list, highlight a chat mail and press   .
- In the received/sent mail view screen, press   .

If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in *Unsent messages* folder of Unsent messages. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in *Unsent messages* folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in *Unsent messages* folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.


- When chat mail has been started, the ring tone, vibrator or call indicator does not activate even if a chat mail is received.
- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, it is saved in **Inbox** folder of Inbox. Display the mail on the chat mail screen following the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in **Inbox** folder of Inbox as i-mode Mail.

- When received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Highlight the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list 

- In the received mail view screen, press .
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to register the sender address. Select **Yes** and register.
 - P278
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in i-mode Center**1**  **on the chat mail screen**

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

When the indicator light is set to **ON** in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread chat mail exists.

Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.

When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time. You can reply to chat mail as i-mode Mail using the same procedure as for i-mode Mail.

Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function is not available. The i- ppli To function is also unavailable. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from Inbox, these functions become available.

When you delete chat mail from Inbox, the nickname appears as “-----”, date/time as “--/--” and text as **Deleted.** on the chat mail screen.


The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in Inbox.

When mail is sent or received from Message i- ppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen ▶ 4

- When a broadcast address is not registered as a chat member, *Not recorded* appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press  to display the mail address.

Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member: Highlight an address ▶

- Follow the procedure from Step 5 in “Adding chat members”. ➔P279

Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address ▶ 2

Deleting the chat mail log

All chat mail on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mail in Inbox or Outbox is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 9 on the chat mail screen ▶ Select *Yes*

Editing chat members

You can edit chat member information, add and delete members. The information on registered members can be checked and all registered members can be replaced.

1 7 on the chat mail screen

2 Select a member ▶ Edit

Deleting a member: Highlight a member ▶  2 ▶ Select *Yes*

Displaying member details:

①  3

②  after checking the details

Adding a member: 

Replacing all members by mail group:  5 ▶ Select a mail group ▶ Select *Yes*

All members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

3 Press

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 8 on the chat mail screen



2 Select *Nickname* field ▶ Enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters)

- When no nickname is entered, *Myself* is displayed on the chat mail screen.

3 Select *Text color field* ► Select a color

4 Press 

Quitting chat mail

1  or  on the chat mail screen

2 Select *No*

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail log is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When *Yes* is selected, all chat mail is deleted. In this case, the chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted except for protected mail.

Menu 192

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Incoming Chat Mail Setting

- Set the operations for incoming chat mail when chat mail has not been started.

Default Incoming setting: Same:Msg setting

1   

2 Select each item to set

Incoming setting : Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow Incoming Msg. Setting.

- When *Customize* is set, the following items can be set.

Ring tone : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select *OFF*.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ►P126

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.

- When you set the lighting pattern to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set.

Vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press 

INFORMATION

When more than one mail is received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Lighting* or *Vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

INFORMATION

Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side. The font type and whether to receive the delivered report are set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the SMS Center while composing SMS. When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in *Outbox* folder of *Outbox*. However, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder. When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.

When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and SMS is saved in *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. You can edit and send the SMS from *Unsent messages* folder. ➡P248

When you set the delivered report to *Request* and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in *Inbox*.

Even if *Not notify* is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent. If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the maximum number of characters. Reduce the number of characters and send it again.

When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from *Unsent messages*. ➡P267

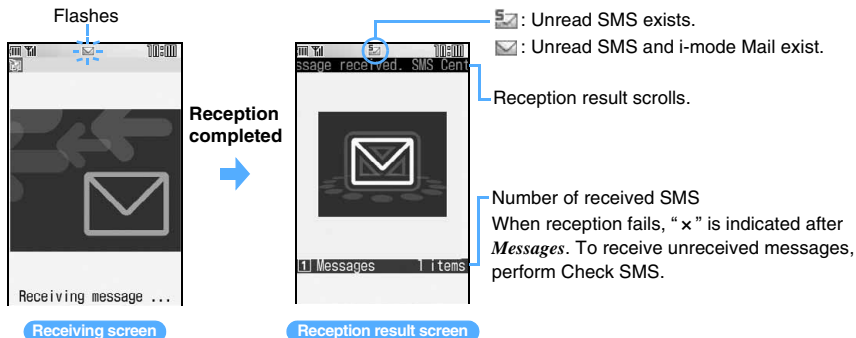
When SMS is received

Receive SMS

When there is incoming SMS, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received SMS is saved in *Inbox*.

- Maximum number of received messages that can be saved ➡P36

1 An SMS message is received





✉ flashes and *Receiving message...* is displayed.

When reception is completed, the mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.


- Press while receiving the message to stop reception.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

Reading the received SMS immediately:  or  **on the reception result screen** ▶
Select a folder ▶ **Select an SMS message**

- You can reply to () or forward () the received SMS.
The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail. You cannot reply to the message for which *Payphone* or *Not support* is displayed in the sender field.

INFORMATION

The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority. When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread SMS exists. Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.









When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. For details on checking with the phonebook, see "Name displays". 

- When more than one SMS message is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator operate according to the settings of the SMS received last.

When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, "+" is added before the sender address. If the sender address with "+" in front of it is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.

When there is not enough available storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.

- When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen (). To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in Inbox.  or  is indicated on the screen (). Move to FOMA terminal () or delete SMS from the UIM ().

When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.

Menu 162

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1

If the SMS Center stores any messages, they are received.

INFORMATION

It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Menu 174

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change *SMSC*, *Address* and *Type of Number* settings.

Default Font type: Japanese Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international

Next

1

2 Select each item to set

- Font type** : Select Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.
- Delivered report** : Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.
- Keep in SMS center** : Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.
- SMSC** : Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.
• When **Others** is set, select **Address** field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).
- Type of Number** : Select either **international** or **unknown**.
• When you set **Others** for **SMSC** and enter only numbers or numbers plus “*” or “#” in **Address** field, select **unknown**.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the SMS composition screen, press and select **SMS settings**. In this case, only **Delivered report** and **Keep in SMS center** can be set. The settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.

The settings for **Font type**, **Keep in SMS center**, **SMSC** and **Type of Number** are also stored on the UIM.

Saving SMS to the UIM

Save SMS to UIM

You can move or copy sent and received SMS from FOMA terminal to the UIM.

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- Maximum number of messages that can be saved in the UIM ●P36
- SMS in Unsent messages cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to **Received SMS** (UIM) together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM

1 ► Select a folder

- SMS in Outbox ●P259

2 Highlight an SMS message ►


Moving selected messages: ► Select messages ►

Copying a message: Highlight a message ►

Copying selected messages: ► Select messages ►

3 Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

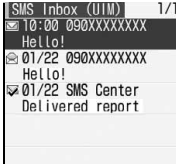
In the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* → *Move to UIM* or *Copy to UIM*.
When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM.
Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.
The protection setting is not moved/copied to the UIM.

Menu 172 / Menu 173






Displaying SMS in the UIM




Example Displaying received SMS

1   

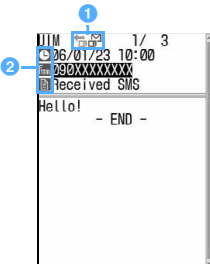


Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows in the received SMS (UIM) list screen. The received date/time and the sender or receiver are displayed in the first row, and the beginning of the message, *Delivered report* or *Notify missed call* is in the second row.











-  : Unread (able to reply)
-  : Unread (unable to reply)
-  : Read (able to reply)
-  : Read (unable to reply)
-  : Delivered report/missed call notice

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS:   

2 Select an SMS message



Message number/total message count is displayed at the top of the received SMS (UIM) view screen.

- 1  : Received (able to reply)
-  : Received (unable to reply)
-  : Sent
-  : Delivered report/missed call notice
-  : SMS in the UIM
- 2  : Date and time
-  : Receiver
-  : Sender
-  : Sender (unable to reply)
-  : Subject (*Received SMS*, *Sent SMS*, or *Delivered report*)

- *SMS Center* is displayed as the sender of delivered report and *DoCoMo SMS* as the sender of missed call notice.
- When sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM.

INFORMATION

From SMS in the UIM, you can also reply to or forward received messages, resend sent messages, change the font size, register in the phonebook, and perform other operations. The operation is the same as for received/sent SMS in FOMA terminal.


























When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in Outbox of FOMA terminal.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

Move or copy SMS saved on the UIM to Inbox or Outbox of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to Inbox together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

- 1   
 - To move/copy sent SMS:   
- 2 **Highlight an SMS message**   
 - Moving selected messages:**     **Select messages** 
 - Copying a message: Highlight a message**   
 - Copying selected messages:**     **Select messages** 
- 3   **Select a folder to move the message to**  **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION























In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to phone* or *Copy to phone*.

When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Also, unprotected i-mode Mail and/or SMS are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mail/messages.


Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message from the UIM

- 1   
 - To delete sent SMS:   
- 2 **Highlight an SMS message**   
 - Deleting selected messages:**     **Select messages** 
 - Deleting all messages:**     **Enter the terminal security code**
 - Deleting all delivered reports:**     **Enter the terminal security code**
- 3 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

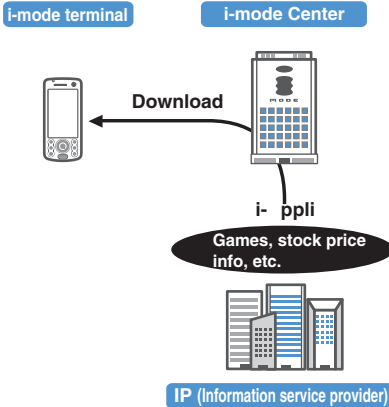
In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

i- ppli

i- ppli.....	290
Downloading i- ppli from sites.....	291
Starting i- ppli.....	293
Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut.....	One-key Shortcut 300
Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut.....	Two-key Shortcut 300
Automatically starting i- ppli.....	300
Starting i- ppli from a site or mail.....	i- ppli To 301
Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display.....	i- ppli Stand-by Display 302
Managing i- ppli.....	302
Using various functions from i- ppli.....	305

i- ppli

Downloading i- ppli software from sites allows more convenient use of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i- ppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i- ppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i- ppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i- ppli software.



- Downloading i- ppli ➔P291
- Starting i- ppli ➔P293
- Automatically starting i- ppli ➔P300

INFORMATION

Some i- ppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.

Some i- ppli attempts to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ➔P294

Using saved data

Some i- ppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box

INFORMATION

Any image saved by i- ppli is stored in the *i-mode* or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture) and/or the i- ppli respectively.

Some i- ppli software may not be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*, *My picture* or *Schedule*).

i- ppli DX

i- ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i- ppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i- ppli DX allows you to compose mail on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of an incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i- ppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data

Some i- ppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as mails, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i- ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons).

The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- View phonebook
- Use icons
- Add bookmarks
- Save schedules
- Use Mail menu
- Use mail composition screen
- View latest redial
- View latest received call
- View latest unread mail
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save images in Data Box
- Save video in Data Box
- Save ring alert in Data Box
- Change image settings (stand-by display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming/outgoing video-phone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)

INFORMATION

With i- ppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i- ppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i- ppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i- ppli.

Activating i- ppli DX requires Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.

Any image, video and ring alert saved by i- ppli DX is saved in the *i-mode* or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image, i-mode* folder of *i-motion/Melody* or the i- ppli DX respectively.

Some i- ppli DX cannot be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion* or *Schedule*).

Message i- ppli

Message i- ppli is a type of i- ppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i- ppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Mail messages used in Message i- ppli may not be correctly displayed.

Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli

Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli allows you to read and write the data in the IC card and use convenient functions such as downloading electronic money or tickets or referring to the balance and usage history on FOMA terminal.

- Using Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli sends the information in the IC card to IP (Information service provider) of the service that you subscribe to.
- Mobile Wallet ◀P312

Other convenient functions

i- ppli stand-by display

On the i- ppli stand-by display, i- ppli can be used as the stand-by display screen, which allows directly receiving mails and making phone calls. Also the i- ppli stand-by display enables you to check the latest news and weather forecast on the screen or to have your favorite character inform you of incoming messages and alarms. ◀P302

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting the i- ppli stand-by display.

i- ppli auto start

i- ppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i- ppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i- ppli. ◀P300

Shooting with camera

Images can be taken with the FOMA terminal camera from i- ppli.

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting shooting with camera. ◀P305

Infrared communication

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i- ppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ◀P305

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i- ppli. ◀P355

For example, the preinstalled G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV programs. ◀P297

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared remote control. i- ppli that supports the device to control is required.

Downloading i- ppli from sites

You can download your favorite i- ppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of software that can be saved ◀P36
- If i- ppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., i- ppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing i- ppli ▶ Select i- ppli

The selected i- ppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading: (⊗) ▶ Select Yes


When Software Info Display is set to ON:

i- ppli information is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.

- To check the detail information of i- ppli to be downloaded: 

When downloading i- ppli that uses saved data or serial number of the mobile phone/ UIM:

A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.

- When *Guide* is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i- ppli can be checked by .

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded:

Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i- ppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded to upgrade.

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded to a UIM:

A confirmation screen asking whether to overwrite or not is displayed. Select *Yes* to overwrite the downloaded i- ppli.

2 Select a folder to save i- ppli

3 Select each item to set

Set i- ppli display :

For i- ppli which supports i- ppli stand-by display, sets whether to use it for the i- ppli stand-by display.

Set NW transmission :

Set whether to allow the communication by i- ppli.

Use icons :

Set whether to allow i- ppli to use icons such as mail and battery level.

- With some i- ppli applications, some setting items or operation setting screens are unavailable.

4 Select *Yes*

The downloaded i- ppli starts.

- To return to the site screen: Select *No*

INFORMATION

When there is not enough available storage space to save or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i- ppli. Deleted i- ppli cannot be restored even when i- ppli download has failed.


Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli cannot be downloaded while IC Card Lock is on.

Depending on the amount of data in the IC card, even if there is enough storage space available for i- ppli, some Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli cannot be downloaded. In this case, download the i- ppli again after deleting saved Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli until enough storage space is available in the IC card according to the instructions on the screen. Note that some i- ppli applications cannot be deleted depending on the type of the i- ppli to be downloaded. In addition, some i- ppli applications must be started to delete the data in the IC card before being deleted.

When *Use icons* is set to *No*, some i- ppli may not operate.

Downloading Message i- ppli

When Message i- ppli is downloaded, folders for Message i- ppli are automatically created in the lists of *Outbox*, *Inbox* and *Unsent messages*. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i- ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i- ppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i- ppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i- ppli is exceeded, Message i- ppli cannot be downloaded. In that case, delete Message i- ppli before downloading. 
- If the number of folders for Message i- ppli exceeds 5, Message i- ppli cannot be downloaded.
- If Message i- ppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, i- ppli can be updated if a new version is available.

INFORMATION

If a Message i- ppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i- ppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select *Yes*, the Message i- ppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i- ppli. In addition, when you attempt to re-download or upgrade versions while Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), enter the terminal security code to continue the download or version update.

If received mail that supports Message i- ppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created at the time of downloading. When you select *Yes*, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (*Hide Secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i- ppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

You set whether to display i- ppli information when downloading.

Default OFF



Menu 31

Starting i- ppli

1 (for over a second)

Displaying only the IC card software (Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli): **5** **4**

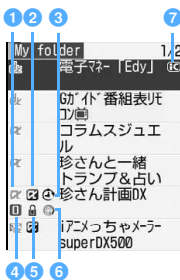
The IC card software list screen is displayed. Go to Step 3.

2 Select a folder

: No i- ppli

: i- ppli present

3 Select an i- ppli application to start



1 : Normal i- ppli

: i- ppli DX

: Message i- ppli

2 : i- ppli that can be set for i- ppli stand-by display

: i- ppli that is set for i- ppli stand-by display

3 : i- ppli with Auto Start

: i- ppli at stopped condition by IP (Information service provider)

4 to : i- ppli registered in Two-key Shortcut

5 : Protected i- ppli

: i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages

: Protected i- ppli which was downloaded from SSL pages

6 : i- ppli registered in One-key Shortcut

7 : Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli

- On the IC card software list screen, only is displayed before the i- ppli name.

- When *Confirm every session* is set for NW transmission of i- ppli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

Quitting i- ppli

Quit i- ppli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i- ppli by pressing and selecting *Yes*.

INFORMATION

Because of the 3D polygon^{*1} engine loaded, 3 dimensional image can be displayed with i- ppli.

*1 By combining polygons (triangles and squares), 3 dimensional image with depth can be displayed.

Whether the Easy Selector Plus is effective for 4 or 8 directions depends on i- ppli.

The volume of the sound which sounds during i- ppli operation is subject to Ring Volume Setting for phone. Note that when *STEPTONE* is set in Ring Volume Setting, the volume is level 4. Some i- ppli applications do not make sound.

i- ppli is interrupted in the following cases. When you quit the function being used and running, i- ppli is resumed. To resume i- ppli without quitting the current function, press and select *i- ppli*. However, i- ppli may not be resumed by depending on the function running. Some i- ppli may not return to the state before interruption when resumed.


- When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to *0 sec*)
- When a PushTalk call arrives (excluding the case where *i-mode preferred* is set in i-mode Arrival Act: PT)
- When the time set in the schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
- When you switch to another function

When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i- ppli may not start or not operate correctly.





Images used on i- ppli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i- ppli are images shot with the camera while i- ppli is activated, images obtained using the i- ppli infrared communication function, images downloaded by i- ppli from i-mode or Internet websites, or images obtained by i- ppli from Data Box.

For some i- ppli, the IP (Information service provider) can access i- ppli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. In this case, starting, setting for stand-by or upgrading of the i- ppli cannot be performed and only deleting and displaying the detailed information of software can be performed. To use again, please contact the IP (Information service provider) to release suspension of i- ppli.

For some i- ppli, the IP (Information service provider) may send data to i- ppli saved in the mobile phone.

When the IP (Information service provider) requests to stop/restart i- ppli or send data to i- ppli, FOMA terminal communicates and  blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required.

To i- ppli creators

If i- ppli being created does not operate normally, trace display may help. Pressing     on the stand-by display displays the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i- ppli created to record trace information is not saved.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data Security Error History

When i- ppli ended because of an error such that i- ppli cannot use the saved data, the name of i- ppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.



- Last 20 records of security error history are recorded.




Deleting the history:  ▶ Select Yes

Displaying i- ppli detail information Detail Info




Detail information such as the name and version of i- ppli can be checked.

-  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- Highlight i- ppli ▶ 
- Check detail information

- The displayed items differ depending on i- ppli.
- For i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by .

Setting the operating conditions of i- ppli

Settings

-  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- Highlight i- ppli ▶  
- Select each item to set

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i- ppli.

Set i- ppli display :

Used to set whether to set i- ppli which supports i- ppli Stand-by Display as your stand-by display.

- Only one i- ppli application can be set for i- ppli Stand-by Display.

Set NW transmission during i- ppli display :

Used to set whether to allow automatic connection while the i- ppli stand-by display is operating.

Set NW transmission :

Used to set whether to allow automatic connection while i- ppli is operating.

Use icons :

Specifies whether to enable i- ppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser :

Used to set whether to start i- ppli from sites (i- ppli To).

Start from mailer :

Used to set whether to start i- ppli from mail (i- ppli To).

Start from external :

Used to set whether to start i- ppli from external devices (i- ppli To).

*Allow ring tone/image changes by software*1 :*

Specifies whether to allow i- ppli to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the stand-by display. If Yes is set, the ring tone and image of the stand-by display may be changed automatically.

*Confirm all changes*1 :*

Specifies whether i- ppli displays a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/call records by software*1:

Specifies whether to allow i- ppli to refer to the phonebook or call log. If *Yes* is set, the phonebook or call log may be referred to automatically. This also applies to ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal.

*1 This setting is available only for i- ppli DX.

4 Press

- When *Set i- ppli display* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to set i- ppli as the stand-by display. Selecting *Yes* sets the i- ppli stand-by display.

INFORMATION

When *Set NW transmission during i- ppli display* and *Set NW transmission* are set to *Yes*, FOMA terminal will automatically connect to the network.

When i- ppli that connects to networks for communication is set as the i- ppli stand-by display, communication may automatically be carried out depending on i- ppli.

Depending on this setting, network communication from i- ppli and icon information (unread mail, remaining battery level, etc.) may not be able to be used.

Note that if you set *No* for *Set NW transmission*, i- ppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i- ppli.

If *Yes* is set for *Use icons*, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.

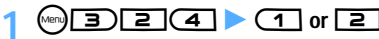
Setting the lighting and vibrator during i- ppli running

Light/Vibrate Setting

Setting display light

- The i- ppli stand-by display light operation depends on the settings in Display Light Setting for the display.
- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the light does not operate while i- ppli is running even if *Use software setting* is set.

Default Use phone setting



Use phone setting :

The light is turned on according to the settings in Display Light Setting for the display. ●P141

Use software setting :

The light comes on according to i- ppli.

Setting vibrator

Allow the vibrator operation by i- ppli.

- While Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while i- ppli is running regardless of this setting.

Default ON



Starting another i- ppli application from i- ppli

You can start i- ppli specified by some i- ppli applications, and enjoy it without returning to the software list.

1 If a message appears indicating that the specified i- ppli will be started, press

INFORMATION

If the i- ppli to start is not specified, select i- ppli. When the i- ppli does not exist in the software list even if specified, it is necessary to download it.

Using pre-installed i- ppli

The following i- ppli applications are registered by default:

- コラムスジュエル (Columns Jewel)
- 珍さんと一緒 トランプ&占い (Mr. Chin's Cards & Fortune Telling)
- i アニメっちゃメーラー superDX500 (i-anime Mailer superDX500)
- Gガイド番組表リモコン(G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money "Edy")
- 便利!多機能電卓 (Useful! Multifunction Calculator)
- 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス (Mr. Chin's Scheduled Cashbook)

Select each i- ppli application from the list to start.

- Some i- ppli names may be different from those on the display.
- i アニメっちゃメーラー super DX 500 and 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス can be set as the i- ppli stand-by display.

- If you delete i-ppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style".

To access "My D-style",

iMenu ③ メニューリスト
(Menu list) ケータイ電話
メーカー (Mobile phone
manufacturer) (as of October
2005).



QR code for
website access

コラムスジュエル (Columns Jewel)

In this game, you arrange the same type of jewels that drop from the top of the screen to eliminate them. There are 3 game modes: in ストーリーモード (Story Mode), you play against five opponents, in ひたすらモード (Score Mode), you try to achieve the highest score and in パズルモード (Puzzle Mode), you can take the challenge to solve a total of 40 puzzles.



©SEGA

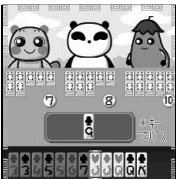
Arrange three or more of the same jewels vertically, horizontally or diagonally to eliminate them.

- ⊖ : Rotate the jewel (one down)
- ⊕ : Rotate the jewel (one up)
- ⇄ : Move to left/right
- ⊙ : Increase the dropping speed

You can select the game mode, set options and display Help in the menu screen on the top page. For details, see ヘルプ (Help).

珍さんと一緒 トランプ & 占い (Mr. Chin's Cards & Fortune Telling)

You can play card games with "Mr. Chin" the panda, and other unique characters. You can enjoy a fortunetelling game in addition to 3 games: 大富豪 (Ultrarich), ページワン (Page One) and ポーカー (Poker).



- ⊖ : Select a card(s)
- ⊙ : Draw/discard a card(s)
- ⊕ : Make the card selection
- MENU : Display the menu
- Ⓜ : Rule explanations
- ✳ : Pass (大富豪 only)

i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 (i-anime Mailer superDX500)

You can compose 3D エフェクトメール (3D effect mail) and えほんメール (Cartoon mail).

3D エフェクトメール (3D effect mail)



You can compose fun mail by adding color or moving effects to the text or adding animated characters and background music.

Select 3D エフェクトメール of 新規メール作成 (New) on the top screen. Enter an address and title and select 本文 (Message) to enter the message (up to 750 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte characters).

To set an effect, press Ⓜ and select an effect item.

1. ステージエフェクト (Stage effects):

You can select either stage effects (background color/ background pattern) or background animation.

- If you select the color white, some patterns are not visible.

2. テキストエフェクト (Text effect):

You can set the font color and size, and text motion.

3. モチアニメ (Emotional animation):

You can insert the 3D animated panda "Mr. Chin" (up to 5 characters in one mail message). Select one of the inserted animation characters to enter the text you want the character to say.

4. アニメっちゃ絵文字 (Animation pictogram):

You can enter the pictogram of i アニメっちゃメール superDX500.

5. アクション (Action):

You can set the effect of "Mr. Chin" to present or erase the text.

6. エフェクト解除 (Clear effect):

You can clear the text effect.

0. プレビュー (Preview):

You can confirm the set effect.

After confirming the effect, press Ⓜ and select メール送信 (Send mail). If you select メール保存 (Save mail), you can save the mail being composed (you can only save one mail message).

えほんメール (Cartoon mail)



You can send mail by composing a story using four frames. At the end of the story, the entered text is displayed.

Select えほんメール of 新規メール作成 on the top screen. Enter an address, title and message (up to 500 characters regardless of one-byte or two-byte) and select a story from the 6 different story types. If you press and select プレビュー (Preview), you can confirm the story. After confirming the story, press on the mail composition screen and select メール送信. If you press メール保存, you can save the mail being composed (you can only save one mail message).

Other features

受信ボックス (Inbox) :

Displays received mail.

送信ボックス (Outbox) :

Displays sent mail.

未送信ボックス (Unsent messages) :

Displays mail that failed to be sent.

保存データ (Saved data) :

Displays mail saved before being sent.

センター問い合わせ (Check new message) :

Shows the Mail menu of FOMA terminal where you can perform Check i-mode Message.

待受画面設定 (Stand-by screen setting) :

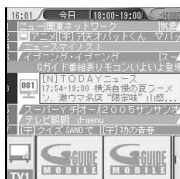
You can set the received mail as the stand-by display.

- Only the mail received from i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 and sent or saved using i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 can be shown.

INFORMATION

Other parties also need to support i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 to receive the mail composed with this function. The mail composed with i アニメっちゃメール superDX500 cannot be shown correctly with the FOMA terminal's mail function or any mail software of PC.

G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- The display shown here represents an example. It differs from the actual display. Programs according to the home area are displayed.

This is a convenient application, with no monthly subscription fee, containing a TV program table and an AV remote control.

You can simply acquire the analog or digital terrestrial TV program information no matter when or where. You can receive information of program titles, contents, starting and ending time and the G-code[®]. You can bookmark your favorite program and register the starting date and time of the program in Scheduler in FOMA terminal, and set to emit an alarm when the program starts. It is possible to search for the program information using keywords such as the TV program genre or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video deck and DVD player remotely (some devices do not support this function).

- When using it for the first time, it is necessary to make initial setting and consent to the agreements for use.
- Packet communication fee is separately required.
- For more information, see "i-mode User's Manual".

電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money "Edy")

電子マネー「Edy」is a simple and useful prepaid type electronic money service that you can make payment by touching the reader/writer.

電子マネー「Edy」is a service provided by bitWallet, Inc. When using this service, make initial setting after checking precautions and agreeing the covenant of utilization.

Initial setting/Service registration (no charge)

Charge (deposit)

Charge (deposit) Edy at stores
Charge (deposit) Edy by i-mode*1

Useful functions

Checking balance/usage history
Receiving Edy gifts
Edy to Edy (Sending/receiving Edy money to/from other terminals)

Use (payment)

Payment at stores
Mobile Edy (payment on the Web)*1

Support

Procedure regarding Edy at model change*1
Procedure regarding Edy for failure*1

*1 Advance registration is required.

See the Internet web page and i-mode site, or contact Edy emergency call for information regarding detail service information of 電子マネー「Edy」or usable stores, and procedures of 電子マネー「Edy」for model change/failure/loss of FOMA terminal.

- For information about this service, contact bitWallet, Inc.
- See the following Edy i-mode site or web page for information about Edy:
i-mode site:

iMenu ③ メニューリスト (Menu list) ぐらしの情報 (Life information) 電子マネー「Edy」 of 生活総合 (Total life)



QR code for website access

Internet web page: <http://www.edy.jp>

- If you have any problems regarding the procedures of Edy, please contact the following:
Edy emergency call: 0570-081-999 (PHS is unavailable)
Office hours: 9:30 to 21:00
 - Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the information of Edy set in FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

Packet communication fee is charged when using i-mode communication e.g. during initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」 or use of the function of the 主なメニュー (Main menu) or サービスメニュー (Service menu).

When *Set NW transmission* is set to *No* for Settings for software or when Self Mode is on, i-mode communication cannot be made. Therefore note that you cannot make initial setting of 電子マネー「Edy」 or use the function of 主なメニュー or サービスメニュー.

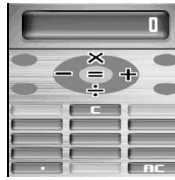
To use Mobile Edy (payment on the Web), you need to receive the payment start message from the Edy Center. When you set your terminal to receive mail from specified domains, register the domain "@bitwallet.co.jp".

When you change FOMA terminal models, note that the old Edy compatible FOMA terminal can still be used as an Edy card. Take care when discarding the terminal.

便利！多機能電卓 (Useful! Multifunction Calculator)

In addition to basic calculation, this i- ppli provides several useful calculation functions such as calculation for splitting a bill.

Basic calculation



When you select 基本計算 (Basic) from the title screen, the calculator screen is displayed.

The calculation methods are the same as with usual calculators. Use \oplus to select "+", "-", "×", or "÷". \odot displays the calculated value. To change entered incorrect digits, press C . To renew the calculation from the beginning, press $\#$.

- When you press D and select 計算一覧表示 (Details), the details of current calculation are displayed. When you select 過去計算一覧表示 (Last calculations), up to 5 past calculations are displayed.

Useful calculations

Select a calculation type from the title screen.

ワリカン計算 (Splitting) :

When you set the rate of splitting the bill (0.1 to 2.0) and the number of persons for each attribute such as male/female and select ワリカン! (Split!), the amount of money per person is displayed for each attribute.

ゴチルーレット (Roulette) :

Determines the amount of money to be paid by a roulette for each person. When you set the total amount of money, number of persons, seriousness (difference of money for each person) and select 開始 (Start), the roulette starts to spin. When you press \odot the amount of money is displayed. Then each person presses D to start the roulette and \odot to determine his or her share.

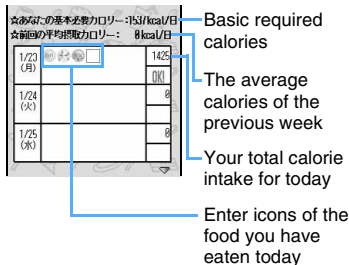
時間計算 (Time duration) :

Calculates the time duration from the start date/time to the end date/time. To set the start date/time and end date/time, press \odot , highlight the position to be changed with \oplus , change the digits with \odot and then press \odot . When you select 決定 (Enter) after setting the date and time, the time duration is displayed on the screen.

Press D to select the units to display the time. In addition, by selecting あと何日? (How many days remain?), you can calculate the time duration from the present to the specified date/time, or selecting あれから何日? (How many days past?), you can calculate the duration from the specified date/time to the present.

カロリー計算 (Calories):

Calculates the total calories of food intake. Enter the sex and age, and the calories calculation screen is displayed.



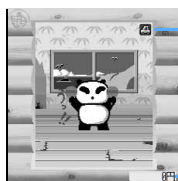
- Move the cursor to the entry position and press to select the food from the list. An icon indicating the calorie level is displayed. Select the icon to check the food name.
- This calorie calculation gives only rough results and not the precise value.
- Whether the calories are insufficient or excessive is determined by referring to the standard reference for calories according to the sex and age.

いろいろ変換 (Conversion):

You can convert the units of distance, space, weight, Christian/Japanese year, and the like. Enter the value in the unit you want to convert, and the value in each unit will be displayed.

珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス (Mr. Chin's Scheduled Cashbook)

This i-ppli has scheduler and cashbook functions. It is compatible with i-ppli Stand-by Display.



- Icon for the schedule
- Money in hand
To change the display position or to turn off the display, press , select **所持金表示設定** (Display setting) and select **右下** (Right down), **左下** (Left down), or **非表示** (No display).

Scheduler function

You can register a schedule. If you set this i-ppli for the i-ppli stand-by display, the icon is displayed on the specified date of registration.

Registering:

- Press , select **予定設定** (Set schedule), set the contents of schedule and press .
- The number of the schedules which can be registered in a day is up to 3.

Checking:

- Press and select **予定確認** (Check schedule). Press and select **修正** (Edit) or **削除** (Delete) to edit or delete the schedule.

Cashbook function

You can record monthly incomes and expenses. The interior of the room of Mr.Chin changes by the amount of money in hand.

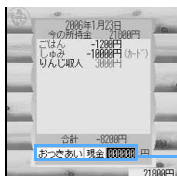
Setting pocket-money:

- Press , select **おこづかい設定** (Set pocket-money) and set the income day, the present money in hand or the monthly income amount. registers the data.
- When the current day is set as the income day, money is not put in until the next month will come. Add the income of the current month to the money in hand.
- If this setting has not been activated for two months or more, pocket-money will be put in for only one month of the previous month.

Setting fixed payment:

- Press , select **毎月の支払い** (Set fixed payment) and set the amount of money paid every month such as house rent.

Entering daily expense, casual income:










- Press , select **おこづかい帖** (Cashbook), select the detail of expenses and manner of payment from the write-in field and enter the amount of money (in ¥ 100 unit).
- Select **ワンジ収入** (Casual income) to add the entered amount of money to the money in hand.
- To display the previous cashbook, select the detail of expenses in the write-in field and press .

Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut


One-key Shortcut

Registering i- ppli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i- ppli can be registered. By default, 電子マネー「Edy」 of i- ppli is registered.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶   
 - To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ▶   

Starting i- ppli with One-key Shortcut

- 1  (for over a second)

INFORMATION












You can check the registered i- ppli. ▶P304

Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut




Two-key Shortcut

Registering i- ppli to Two-key Shortcut








- Up to 10 i- ppli can be registered.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶   
 - To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ▶   
- 3 Select the registration destination
 - Number  to  correspond to the dial key  to  used to start i- ppli.

Starting i- ppli with Two-key Shortcut

- 1 Dial key ( to ) ▶  (for over a second)

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

- 1    
 - To start: Highlight i- ppli
 - To display details: Highlight i- ppli ▶ 
 - To cancel registration: Highlight i- ppli ▶  

Automatically starting i- ppli

Select whether to use auto starting and set different auto starting conditions for each i- ppli.






- Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal is required to start i- ppli automatically.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

- When set to *OFF*, Auto Start is also disabled for i- ppli even if *User* of Auto Start Info Setting is set to *ON*.

Default ON




- 1     ▶  or 

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting

Set Auto Start ON/OFF or the start time for each i- ppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i- ppli.
- Some i- ppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to *OFF*, this setting is not available.

- 1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  
- 3 Select each item to set

User :

- Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.
- When *OFF* is set, the following items cannot be set.

Time :

Enter the time to automatically start i- ppli.

Repeat :

- Select the condition for repetitive automatic starting of i- ppli.
- When *OneTime* is set, set the date for auto starting in *Date* field.
- When *Daily* is set, i- ppli starts automatically at the time set in *Time* field every day.
- When *Weekly* is set, set the day of week for auto starting in *Weekly* field.

Weekly :

Set the day of week for auto starting when *Weekly* is set for *Repeat*.

Date :

Set the date for auto starting when *OneTime* is set for *Repeat*.

Software :


Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i- ppli.

i- ppli 1 to 4 :


Depending on i- ppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specify whether to enable the settings.

4 Press

INFORMATION

Even when auto starting is set, i- ppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If i- ppli is not started for the following reasons (except for the ones marked with *1),  is indicated on the stand-by display and the name of i- ppli, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.

- When FOMA terminal power is off*1
- When UIM operation is restricted (except for pre-installed i- ppli)
- When UIM cannot be detected
- When Auto Start is set to **OFF***1
- The interval of auto start is too short
- During a call, communication, or a PushTalk call
- When a screen other than the stand-by display is displayed or i- ppli stand-by display operation is in progress
- When any other function is running (excluding the function during the list display and the frame composition of My Picture, the list display, replay, and edition of i-motion, the list display and replay of melody, or the list display and replay of Music Player)
- In All Lock or PIM Lock
- When Privacy Mode is on (while *Authorized access* is set to i- ppli)
- While an alarm or schedule alarm is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the time for Auto Start)
- When i- ppli usage is stopped by the IP (Information service provider)


When two or more i- ppli applications are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one i- ppli is activated. The failed i- ppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  is not displayed on the stand-by display.


In the *User* settings, the same setting set for other i- ppli cannot be set.

If all of the start time are set before the time set in Date and Time Setting, auto starting will be disabled.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i- ppli fails

Start Failure History

If automatic start of i- ppli fails,  appears on the stand-by display and the i- ppli name, the date and time and the failure reason are registered.

- Up to 20 start failures are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next automatic start is successful,  on the stand-by display disappears.



Deleting the history:  ► Select **Yes**

Starting i- ppli from a site or mail

i- ppli To

Select a link item that can start the site or i- ppli of the site or i-mode Mail and then start the i- ppli (i- ppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i- ppli from the site or i-mode Mail

2 Select **Yes**

The connection to the site is terminated and i- ppli is started.

INFORMATION



If the i- ppli you attempt to start with i- ppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, the message that there is no specified i- ppli is displayed and i- ppli cannot be started. Note that some i- ppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.


- For i- ppli that starts just after downloaded from a site, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
- When you quit i- ppli started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i- ppli. Note that some i- ppli may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal.

If the specified i- ppli is set not to start with i- ppli To, a message is displayed and i- ppli is not started. ●P294

Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display

i- ppli Stand-by Display

When i- ppli is set for the stand-by display, you can start i- ppli from the stand-by display to operate.  or  is indicated at the top of the display when the i- ppli stand-by display is set.

- It is necessary to set i- ppli for the stand-by display beforehand. 

INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is turned on with i- ppli Stand-by Display set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i- ppli stand-by display. When you select *Yes*, the i- ppli stand-by display starts. When you select *No*, the i- ppli stand-by display setting is canceled. If you operate nothing within 5 seconds after the confirmation screen appeared, the i- ppli stand-by display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i- ppli stand-by display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

When you set i- ppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.



If All Lock, PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (*i- ppli* is set to *Authorized access*) is activated while setting the i- ppli stand-by display, the stand-by display will be canceled temporarily. If you cancel All Lock, PIM Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i- ppli stand-by display restarts.

If the use of i- ppli set to the i- ppli stand-by display is stopped by IP (Information service provider), the i- ppli standby display is canceled. While the i- ppli stand-by display is activated, if an error that makes it difficult to continue the i- ppli stand-by display occurs, a confirmation screen appears asking whether you will cancel or not. When you select *Yes*, the i- ppli stand-by display setting is canceled. At this time, the name of i- ppli and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.

You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i- ppli stand-by display.





Starting i- ppli of the i- ppli stand-by display




1 in the i- ppli stand-by display

The screen is changed to the i- ppli screen and  or  blinks at the top of the display.


Quitting i- ppli to return to the i- ppli stand-by display

1 while i- ppli is running Select *End*

i- ppli is ended and the i- ppli stand-by display is activated. The icon at the top of the display switches from  to , or from  to .

- The procedure to quit i- ppli and return to the i- ppli stand-by display depends on the type of i- ppli.  makes some types of i- ppli return.
- Even if *End* is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display setting is not canceled. To cancel, select *Cancel*.  and  at the top of the display disappear.

INFORMATION

In addition, in the software list, select i- ppli set for the i- ppli stand-by display, press  and select *i- ppli display* to cancel i- ppli.

Displaying the exit history of i- ppli stand-by display

Abnormal Exit History

When an error that makes it difficult to continue the i- ppli stand-by display occurs, the name of i- ppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When there are more than 20 abnormal exits, the 21st exit is written over the oldest one.
- In the normal end, exits are not registered.

1

Deleting the history:   Select *Yes*

Managing i- ppli

Upgrading i- ppli

Upgrade

When i- ppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i- ppli whose usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider) cannot be upgraded.

1 (for over a second) Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli Select *Yes*

- When upgrade is unnecessary, the message that i- ppli is the newest is displayed.

INFORMATION


When you upgrade i- ppli, data such as game scores stored by the i- ppli may be erased. Some i- ppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i- ppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it. Some i- ppli may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders


Folders can be created to sort out i- ppli. Also folders can be moved up or down or deleted.


Creating a folder


- Up to 20 folders can be created including *My folder*.

1  (for over a second)

2  4


Changing the folder name: Highlight the folder ▶  1

Moving up or down the folder: Highlight the folder ▶  5 or 6

3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ 

Deleting folders

- Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i- ppli. Cancel the protection, and then delete it.

1  (for over a second)

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  2 1

- To delete a folder with any i- ppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*

- If there is any Message i- ppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the mail folder at the same time. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i- ppli or mail folder even when you select *Yes*.

- If the folder to delete contains any Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i- ppli other than that.

INFORMATION

When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ●P259



When the mail folder for Message i- ppli to be deleted is being used (including being displayed in the list), the i- ppli may not be deleted.


Protecting i- ppli

- Maximum number of software that can be protected ●P36

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  3 1

i- ppli is protected and  or  is indicated on the software list.

- To cancel: Highlight i- ppli ▶  3 1

Switching the protection of selected items on/off:  3 2 ▶ Select i- ppli ▶ 


Switching the protection of all items in the folder on/off:  3 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Deleting i- ppli


- For some i- ppli, the data in the IC card is also deleted.
- Some i- ppli cannot be deleted unless you start i- ppli and delete the data in the IC card.
- Some Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli may not be deleted.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶  2 1

Deleting selected items:  2 2 ▶ Select i- ppli ▶ 


Deleting items in the folder:


 2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *All* or *w/o protect*

3 Select Yes

- When you attempt to delete Message i- ppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i- ppli or mail folder even when you select *Yes*.
- If the i- ppli to be deleted by *Selected items* or *All items* includes Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete i- ppli other than that.

INFORMATION

When deleting all i- ppli in a folder from the folder list, highlight the folder, press , and select *Delete Delete software*.

When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. 

The protected i- ppli cannot be deleted by *One item* or *Selected items*. To delete protected i- ppli, cancel its protection first and then delete it. Alternatively, select *All items*, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i- ppli by selecting *All*.

If the folder for Message i- ppli to be deleted is in use (as while displaying a list), i- ppli may not be deleted.

Moving i- ppli to another folder




1  (for over a second) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight i- ppli ▶   
Moving the selected items:    ▶
Select i- ppli ▶ 

Moving all items in folder:   

3 Select the folder to move to ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION



When you press    on the stand-by display and only Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli is listed, i- ppli cannot be moved to other folders.

Sorting i- ppli

Software Sort

Default By download time


1    


2  to 


- For *By download time* and *By access time*, i- ppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
- For *By name*, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabetic characters are included in the name of i- ppli.
- For *By access frequency*, the frequency does not include the number of being started as the i- ppli stand-by display. The access frequency is carried over even when i- ppli version is upgraded.
- For *By software size*, the total of the software size of i- ppli and scratchpad to be used is sorted from large to small.

Checking the number of i- ppli in a folder

Software in Folder


1  (for over a second)

2 Highlight a folder ▶ 

- Meaning of the mark 

Checking current settings of i- ppli

Software Information

1  (for over a second)

2 Press 

Storage :

Total size of i- ppli saved is indicated in bar and numeric.

Software count :

Total number of i- ppli saved is displayed.

i- ppli display :

Name and storage folder of i- ppli set as the i- ppli stand-by display are displayed.

One-key shortcut :

The name and storage folder of i- ppli registered to One-key Shortcut are displayed.

Auto start :

Name, storage folder and start time of i- ppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Using various functions from i- ppli

- Downloading i- ppli that supports individual functions beforehand is required.
- The operation varies for each i- ppli application and some i- ppli may not be used.

Making calls from i- ppli

1 Select a phone number ► Set the call conditions

- Setting of the call conditions ◀ P56

2 ► Select Yes

A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, i- ppli is interrupted.

Connecting to sites from i- ppli

1 Select Yes when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites

i- ppli is ended and the site is displayed.

Using Camera from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to use Camera

INFORMATION

When Camera has been activated from i- ppli, a shot image or video is saved in the *i-mode* folder or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture), *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* or in the i- ppli. Saved images or videos may be automatically sent from i- ppli to the server by communication.

Some i- ppli can change the image size or shooting size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to scan barcodes

- A message that scan results are used and saved in the i- ppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i- ppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i- ppli to perform infrared communication

- i- ppli can also be started by receiving i- ppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending/receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

Using ToruCa from i- ppli

Saving ToruCa from i- ppli

1 When a confirmation screen asking whether to save ToruCa appears, select Yes(*NewEntry*)

ToruCa is saved in the *ToruCa* folder in the ToruCa list.

To overwrite ToruCa to save: Select *Yes (OverWrite)* ► Select a folder ► Select ToruCa
Displaying ToruCa: Select *Preview*

Using ToruCa from i- ppli


1 When a message prompting to select ToruCa appears, press ► Select a folder ► Select ToruCa

MEMO

i-channel

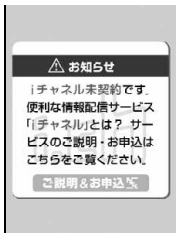
i-channel	308
Displaying i-channel.....	Channel List 309
Changing i-channel settings.....	Ticker Setting 309

i-channel

i-channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP (Information service provider) delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-channel compatible terminals. Users can receive information regularly, and read latest information as it appears on the stand-by display as tickers, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-channel compatible key () (Displaying the channel list ◀P309). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list.

- i-channel information is displayed in Japanese only.
- For important notes on using i-channel and detail information about how to use i-channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Not signed

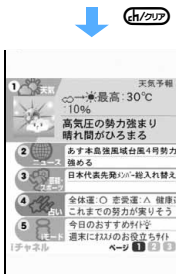



Before you sign up for i-channel.

After sign-up



After you sign up for i-channel, tickers automatically run on the stand-by display as you display the channel list.



Pressing  displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.

↓ Connect



You can select each channel to view detail information.

- The screens shown above are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

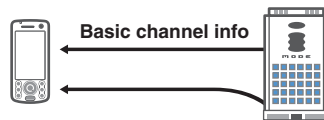
There are 2 types of channels: “Basic channel” and “Optional channel”. Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to Basic channel is included in the i-channel service fee. Optional channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs (Information service providers) and users register their desired channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Optional channel are not included in the i-channel service fee.

Please note that only Basic channel information appears as tickers on the stand-by display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Optional channels.
- Some Optional channels require separate sign-up to the IPs (Information service providers) who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Optional channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-channel service fee.

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



Optional channel info

IP (Information service provider)



i-channel is a pay service for which subscription is required.

(You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-channel.)

- Operating i-channel ◀P309
- Compatible devices: 701i and 902i series

Trial channel

Basic channels are available for free of service charge for a set period of time to i-mode subscribers who use an i-channel compatible terminal, and who have never signed up for the subscriber line.

However, packet communication fee caused by viewing detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.

- For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see "i-mode User's Manual".

In principle, Trail channel automatically begins after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-channel compatible terminal goes into use. If Trial channel does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing **CH/2117**.

Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line.

Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the launch. For information about how to stop the channel, see "i-mode User's Manual".

INFORMATION

 blinks during reception of information.

Neither ring tone nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. Likewise, the call indicator does not light or flash.

Tickers are not displayed while the animation is being played on the stand-by display.

You may not receive the information in the default status. In that case, if you press **CH/2117**, the information automatically appears on the ticker of the stand-by display.

In case FOMA terminal has been turned off or the information cannot be received due to the out-of-service area, press **CH/2117** and select a channel for the subscriber that has not signed up. Then you can receive the information.

You can configure i-channel whether to run tickers of i-channel information on the stand-by display. You can also set their speed.


If you cancel i-channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed.

Pressing **CH/2117** displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing **CH/2117** may display the last received information in the channel list.


Changing the i-channel host


You can change the i-channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).

① **CH/2117**

② **Highlight the user host**  **Enter your terminal security code**

③ **Select each item to set** 

- *Host address2* should be filled with the address of the i-channel host (up to 30 one-byte characters).
- *Host address* is the host for i-mode.  P214

④ **Select the host you have edited** 

If you enter or change the address of *Host address2*, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed on the stand-by ticker. Sometimes, the information will not be updated automatically. When you press **CH/2117** on the stand-by display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and the tickers are shown on the stand-by display.

Menu 281

Displaying i-channel

Channel List

1 **CH/2117**

The channel list appears.

- When video/-motion or i- ppli is set as the stand-by display: **CH/2117**

(i-channel cannot be displayed even if **CH/2117** is pressed.)

2 **Select the channel**

Your terminal connects to the site and the information appears.

- Depending on the situation, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

Menu 282 / Menu 8215

Changing i-channel settings

Ticker Setting

You can set whether to run tickers of received i-channel information on the stand-by display.

- In the default state or when the UIM is replaced, or when the host address 2 is changed, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press **CH/2117** to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set the ticker setting.



2 Select each item to set

Show ticker :

Select *Yes* or *No*.

- If *No* is selected, *Ticker speed* cannot be set.

Ticker speed :

Select from *Slow*, *Normal*, or *Fast*.

3 Press

- If *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears when video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli is set on the stand-by display. If you select *Yes*, video/i-motion, Chara-den or i- ppli is released.

INFORMATION

When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the stand-by display each time the display appears until the display items disappear.

In the following cases, i-channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.

- In All Lock
- In PIM Lock
- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- When UIM not inserted

Mobile Wallet/ToruCa

Mobile Wallet.....	312
Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli.....	313
What's ToruCa?	314
Obtaining ToruCa	314
Displaying ToruCa	315
Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa.....	ToruCa Setting 317
Preventing use of IC card functions	IC Card Lock 318

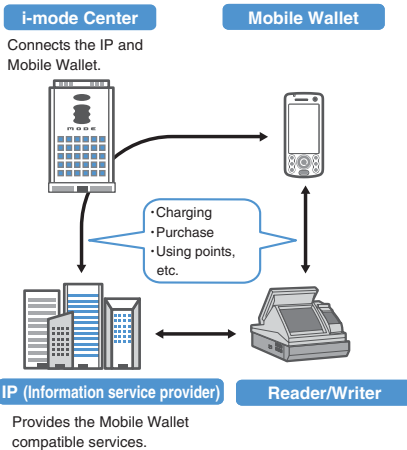
Mobile Wallet

The i-mode terminal that is equipped with an IC card and provides useful functions of i-mode (i-mode FeliCa) using the IC card is called "Mobile Wallet".

FeliCa is the contactless IC card technology, which allows reading and writing data just by holding an IC card over a reader/writer.

The Mobile Wallet can be used conveniently in daily life, as electronic money for payment, as airplane tickets, or as reward point cards, just by holding it over a compatible reader/writer*. Also, compared to a conventional contactless IC card compatible with FeliCa, the Mobile Wallet provides more useful functions; you can charge electronic money from sites into the IC card of the terminal, check the balance and usage history.

* A reader/writer is used to read and write the data in an IC card.



- To use the IC card functions, download Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli that supports the IC card functions.
- Subscription and usage of Mobile Wallet compatible services differ from each service. Contact the service provider such as IP (Information service provider) for details. Before using Mobile Wallet compatible services, see "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for usage precautions.
- Keep secure your terminal security code and take care not to reveal the password to anyone.

- Take a separate note of the name and contact information for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. Data in the IC card may be lost or modified due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of your Mobile Wallet terminal. Please note that you will be required to delete the data before repair. If the data in the IC card should be lost or modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data. If you delete the data in the IC card or the data is accidentally lost or modified, the response differs for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. For details contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) beforehand.
- Data in the IC card cannot be copied to a new terminal when you replace your Mobile Wallet terminal at a DoCoMo Shop (including the case of failure). The method differs for each Mobile Wallet compatible service. For details contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) beforehand.
- Be careful not to lose your Mobile Wallet terminal. If the terminal should be lost, contact your service provider such as IP (Information service provider) for information regarding the Mobile Wallet compatible service. Please note that use of the IC card functions cannot be restricted.

Using the Mobile Wallet

Step 1 Download Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli ◀P291

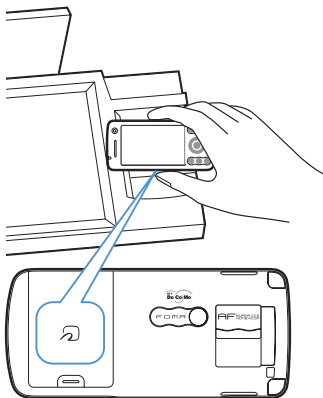
Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli, 電子マネー「Edy」(Electronic money "Edy") is registered by default.

Step 2 Start Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli to read and write data in IC card ◀P313

Use Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli to charge electronic money and tickets and to check the balance and usage history.

Step 3 Hold FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

You can use FOMA terminal as electronic money for shopping or as tickets by holding the FeliCa mark on the terminal over a reader/writer. This function can be used without starting Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli.



INFORMATION

If the IC card is not recognized when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, try again by changing the position, angle, etc.

Do not expose FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.

The IC cards can be used during a call or i-mode connection by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, you cannot start Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli during i-mode connection. The IC card can be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer even when the power is off, but not when the battery pack is removed. When you use an IC card function, attach the battery pack. When the battery pack is attached, if it is not used for an extended period or is not charged after a low battery alert, the IC card may not be used. In this case, charge the battery.

When the power is off, you cannot start Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli to read and write data in the IC card. You cannot acquire ToruCa either.

i-ppli may start when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, no i-ppli starts when the target i-ppli is not saved or is set not to start with i-ppli To.

Starting Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli

1

2 Select Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli

- Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli can be auto started, deleted and its folders managed in the same way as normal i-ppli.

Quitting:

Quit the Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli using the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit by pressing and selecting *Yes*.

INFORMATION

When Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli is started, the IC card may not be used by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer.

Some of Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli operations may not be available during a video-phone call.

When any of the following conditions occurs, Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli under operation and reading and writing data in the IC card are interrupted. In that case, the data may be discarded:

- When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time for Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to *0 sec*)
- When a PushTalk call arrives (excluding the case where *i-mode preferred* is set in i-mode Arrival Act: PT)
- When the date and time set in Alarm Clock or Scheduler arrives
- When you switch to another function

When you press during a call or alarm sounding to switch to the Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli screen, the operation varies for each Mobile Wallet compatible service that you subscribe to.

Some functions of Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli may not start or operate correctly when your terminal is outside the service area or cannot use the saved data.

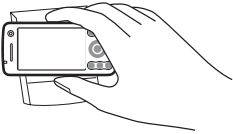
What's ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that is available through Mobile Wallet, which can be used as a flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

You can obtain ToruCa from the reader/writer and sites and exchange the obtained ToruCa easily by using mail, infrared communication, and miniSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in *ToruCa* in *Tools* menu.

Procedure for using ToruCa



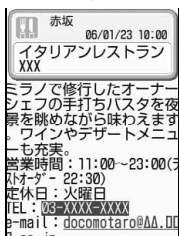
Hold the Mobile Wallet over the reader/writer to obtain ToruCa.



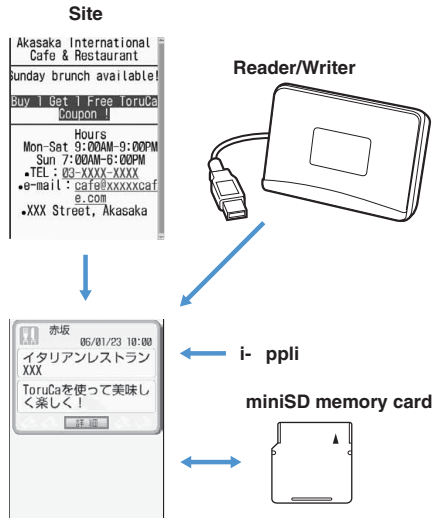
Select obtained ToruCa from *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.



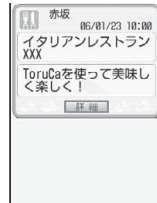
You can see detailed information by using *詳細* (Details) button.



How to get ToruCa



Exchange ToruCa between i-mode terminals.



INFORMATION

ToruCa is available only on terminals supporting ToruCa.

Exchanging ToruCa in i-mode communication needs packet communication fee.

Obtaining ToruCa

- Maximum allowable number of cards ●P36
- The ToruCa size that can save data is up to 1 Kbytes per item. For ToruCa (details), up to 100 Kbytes can be saved.
- The obtained ToruCa are saved in *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list. ●P316

- If you download detailed information from saved ToruCa, it is not saved as another file, and the detailed information is added in original ToruCa. Obtaining ToruCa (details) from ToruCa ➤P315

INFORMATION

You can also obtain ToruCa by the following methods:

- Received mail or Message R/F ➤P257
- Infrared communication ➤P352
- miniSD memory card ➤P343

Obtaining ToruCa from a reader/writer

- *ToruCa receive* must be set to *ON* in ToruCa Setting.
- You cannot obtain cards while IC Card Lock is on.


1 Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

You will hear a sound that lets you know ToruCa is obtained and the call indicator lights or flashes.

Downloading ToruCa from sites

Download ToruCa from a site, and then display and save it.


1 Display the site ▶ Select ToruCa

- Pressing  while downloading cancels the downloading.

2 Select *Save*


- To display the card: Select *Display*
- To cancel saving: Select *Back* ▶ Select *No*

INFORMATION

ToruCa downloaded from a site is regarded as being read even if being saved without *Display* selected. When there is not enough available storage space to save or the maximum allowable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete the saved ToruCa or not is displayed. Follow the instructions on the screen to delete it. To view unwanted ToruCa before deleting it,  in the ToruCa list.

Displaying ToruCa

1 ▶ Select the folder

- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: 
- How to handle the miniSD memory card ➤P345

Sending ToruCa via mail as an attachment: **Highlight ToruCa** ▶

- When sending ToruCa, it is sent in the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). If there is details information in the site, the receiver can obtain ToruCa (details) again.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent.

2 Select ToruCa

Obtaining ToruCa (details): Select *詳細 (Details) in the ToruCa view screen* ▶ Select *Yes*



Connect to i-mode and save ToruCa (details).













Updating ToruCa (details): in the **ToruCa (details) view screen** ▶ Select *Yes*



Connect to i-mode and update and save ToruCa (details).

INFORMATION

If the displayed text includes the phone number, mail address, and/or URL, you can use Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To.

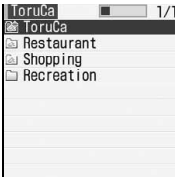
To send ToruCa via mail as an attachment from the view screen, press  .

To register new data in the phonebook, highlight the phone number and mail address on the details screen and press   . To update the data in the phonebook, press   . To register a URL in Bookmark, highlight the URL and press   . To save an image,    and select the image.

To replay the animation on the details screen, press  .

Reading the folder list/ToruCa list screen

Reading the folder list screen

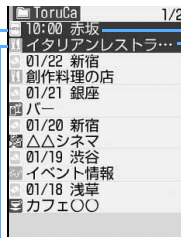


The storage area usage and page number/total pages are displayed at the top.

ToruCa can be categorized and saved in *ToruCa* folder and a maximum of 20 other folders.

- : No ToruCa
- : No unread ToruCa
- : Unread ToruCa exists

Reading the ToruCa list screen



The folder name and page number/total pages are displayed at the top.

Obtained date or time, index

Time is displayed for today and the date for days other than today.
Title

Category mark

: Unread : Read : Protected

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- You can create up to 20 folders in addition to *ToruCa* folder.
- You cannot change the folder name or sort order of *ToruCa* folder.

1

Changing the folder name: Highlight the folder

Changing the order of folders: Highlight the folder or

The selected folder goes up or down by one line.

2 Enter the folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

Deleting a folder

- Deleting a folder having ToruCa also deletes the ToruCa in the folder. If the folder has any protected ToruCa, however, the folder cannot be deleted. Delete the folder after releasing the protection.
- You cannot delete *ToruCa* folder.

1 **Highlight the folder**

2 Enter the terminal security code **Select Yes**

Moving/copying ToruCa into a folder

1 **Select the folder**

2 Highlight ToruCa

Moving multiple cards: **Select ToruCa**

Moving all ToruCa in a folder:

Copying it in another folder:

3 Select the folder to move/copy the cards to

4 Select **Yes**

INFORMATION

In the view screen, press .

Even if protected ToruCa is copied, copy destination ToruCa will not be protected.

Checking the information of the saved ToruCa

1

Information such as the number of ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal and the percentage of the used area to the total capacity is displayed.

Checking the number of ToruCa in a folder: Select the folder

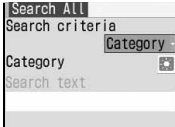
Searching for a ToruCa

1

- To search a folder: Select the folder

2 Select the search condition ▶ **1** to

3



- When you select *Category*, select the *Category* field and select the category mark to search.
- If you select *Title* or *Index*, select the *Search text* field and enter the title or index to search for (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index).
- You can make a search by entering only a part of a title or index. Two-byte characters can be distinguished from one-byte characters, but the cases of alphabets are ignored.
- You cannot search the data with the obtained date or time.

3 Press **⏏**

Sorting ToruCa

Sort

You can change the sorting order of the ToruCa list temporarily. Ending the display returns to normal.

- You can select the order by date, category, title, or index.

Default By date

1 **Menu** **6** **3** **1** ▶ Select the folder

2 **Menu** **6** **2** ▶ **1** to **4**

INFORMATION

When you quit display of the ToruCa list, the sorting order returns to the order by date.



In the sorting order by title or index, cards may not be sorted in the order of Japanese syllabary if the titles or indexes have both two-byte and one-byte characters.

Protecting ToruCa

- Maximum number of protected cards **☛**P36
- Unread ToruCa cannot be protected.
- All the item can neither be protected nor canceled while displaying searched results.

1 **Menu** **6** **3** **1** ▶ Select the folder

2 Highlight ToruCa ▶ **Menu** **4** **1**

ToruCa is protected and the mark changes from  to .

• To cancel: Highlight ToruCa ▶ **Menu** **4** **4**

Protecting multiple cards: **Menu** **4** **2** ▶

Select ToruCa ▶ **⏏**

Protecting all: **Menu** **4** **3**

Canceling protection of multiple cards:

Menu **4** **5** ▶ **Select ToruCa** ▶ **⏏**

Canceling all: **Menu** **4** **6**

INFORMATION

In the view screen, press **Menu** **7**.

If the number of protected cards reaches the maximum number of protected cards before all data are protected, the cards dated later are protected up to the limit.

Deleting ToruCa

- Protected ToruCa cannot be deleted. Cancel protection first and then delete it.

1 **Menu** **6** **3** **1** ▶ Select the folder

2 Highlight ToruCa ▶ **Menu** **3** **1**

Deleting multiple cards: **Menu** **3** **2** ▶

Select ToruCa ▶ **⏏**

Deleting all ToruCa in a folder:

Menu **3** **3** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

In the view screen, press **Menu** **8**.

Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa

ToruCa Setting

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa from a reader/writer and the actions for obtaining ToruCa.

Default ToruCa receive,
Lighting alert: ON
Lighting color: Aqua
Receive alert volume: Level4

1 **Menu** **6** **3** **2**

2 Select each item to set

ToruCa receive :

Specify whether to obtain ToruCa.

Lighting alert :

Specify whether to make the call indicator flash.

- If you set this to *OFF*, you cannot set the lighting color.

Lighting color :

Set the color of the call indicator.

Receive alert volume :

Set the volume of the sound that you hear when you obtain ToruCa.

3 Press

INFORMATION

ToruCa Setting is interlocked with Alert Lighting Setting and the alert volume for ToruCa. In this function, if *Lighting alert* and *Lighting color* are changed, Alert Lighting Setting is also changed (☛P145); if *Receive alert volume* is changed, the alert volume for ToruCa is similarly changed (☛P66).

INFORMATION

Removing the battery pack automatically sets IC Card Lock. To cancel IC Card Lock, attach the battery pack and then turn on the power. Even if the power is turned off or the battery runs out during IC Card Lock, the setting will not be canceled.

Menu 8314

Preventing use of IC card functions


IC Card Lock


IC Card Lock disables use of the IC card by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer. It also disables acquisition of ToruCa and download of Mobile Wallet compatible i-appli.


- The setting is retained even if the power is turned off.
- IC Card Lock cannot be set when All Lock is active. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, first set IC Card Lock and then set All Lock.
- Activating Remote Lock automatically sets both IC Card Lock and All Lock.


Default OFF

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select *Yes*

IC Card Lock is set and  appears on the stand-by display.

- To handle by a shortcut: Enter the terminal security code ▶  1

Canceling:  (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- To handle by a shortcut: Enter the terminal security code ▶  2

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of images	
Displaying images	My Picture 320
Editing still images	322
Setting the operating conditions of images.....	Settings (My Picture) 327
Making full use of video/i-motion	
Playing video/i-motion	i-motion 327
Editing video/i-motion	330
Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion...	Settings (i-motion) 333
Making full use of Chara-den	
Chara-den	334
Displaying Chara-den.....	Chara-den 334
Recording Chara-den	Record Chara-den 335
Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den	Settings (Chara-den) 337
Making full use of melodies	
Playing melodies	Melody 337
Setting the operating conditions of melodies.....	Settings (Melody) 338
Making full use of the miniSD memory card	
miniSD memory card.....	339
Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card	342
Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card	343
Displaying data in the miniSD memory card.....	345
Managing the miniSD memory card.....	347
Managing various data	
Using the album.....	348
Checking/editing detail information of the data	View/Edit Detail Info 349
Deleting data	351
Sorting data.....	Sort 351
Making full use of infrared communication	
About infrared communication	351
Sending data by infrared communication	Send Ir Data 352
Receiving data by infrared communication	Receive Ir Data 353
Activating infrared communication mode	Infrared Communication Mode 355
Using the infrared remote control function.....	355
Setting operations for data transfer.....	Data Transfer Setting 356
Making full use of Sound Recorder	
Recording sound with Sound Recorder	Sound Recorder 356
Changing the recording settings	358
Making full use of PDF compatible viewer	
Displaying the PDF data.....	My Document 359
Utilizing bookmarks or marks	362
Saving the image of the page	Capture Screen 363
Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer	Settings (My Document) 363
Making full use of Music Player	
Playing music data on the miniSD memory card	Music Player 363

Displaying images

My Picture

You can display images saved in **Image** (My Picture) in Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Select a folder

The following images are stored in each folder:

Camera :

Still images shot by Camera or Chara-den and still images captured from video/i-motion or PDF data

i-mode :

Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i- ppli

Deco-Mail picture :

Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or read by Bar Code Reader

Item :

Frame images preinstalled by default and item images downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :

Images preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

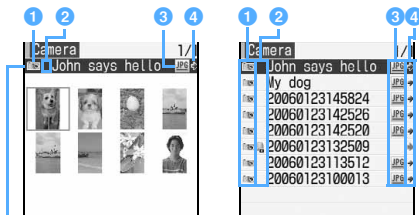
Images read by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from miniSD memory cards and images received via data communications

Album :

Images moved from another folder

- Not displayed by default. To create **P348**
- You can enter any name of album in creating.
- To switch to the folder list display of the miniSD memory card: press **F1** **1** or **2**
- Using the miniSD memory card **P345**

2 Highlight an image



Data display name at the cursor and icon

Thumbnail display

Title display

Image list

1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

: Camera : Frame/Stamp
 : Data transfer : Chara-den

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image

: Created animation

: Animation/Flash movie

3 File format

: GIF image : JPEG image

: SWF (Flash movie)

No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

(in blue) : Without file restriction

(in gray) : With file restriction

- Each time you press **F2**, thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Images with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed with in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified. **P349**

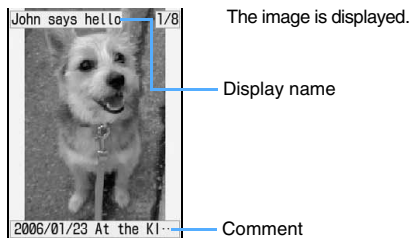
Sending mail with images attached:

Highlight an image **F2**

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select **Yes** to paste in the mail message and select **No** to attach to mail.
- Depending on the image size or file size of the still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (QVGA) or save it to Data Box. **P242**
- Images that can be attached to mail **P241**

3 Press **F2**








The image is displayed.


Display name

Comment

- Press **F2** to display the previous or next image.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies are replayed automatically when displaying. During playback, the following operations are enabled:



-  : Pause/replay
-   : Retry (replay from the beginning)
-  : Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Created animation)
-  : Full-screen display

Displaying images at the same magnification:   **to scroll**

- It is available for only the image that the size exceeds 240 x 400.
- Animation, Created animation and Flash movies cannot be displayed at the same magnification.
- Terminating displaying at the same magnification: 

Displaying the image using full-screen display: 

The display name and guide row disappears and the image is displayed in the entire screen.

- Press  to display the previous or next image.
- The image smaller than the screen is not enlarged.
- In case the auto scroll setting during full-screen display is on in Settings, when the image of the JPEG format is larger than the screen, the image is displayed by magnification to fit either vertically or horizontally and scrolled automatically.
 - Press  during the auto scroll to suspend/restart.
 - When the vertical and horizontal sizes of the image have about the same ratio as that of the screen, the entire image is displayed and not scrolled.
 - Even when the vertical or horizontal size is smaller than that of the screen, the image is not enlarged.

Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook data


1   **Select a folder**

2 **Highlight an image**  


3 **Select an item**


Setting to the stand-by display:  

Select Yes





- The display size of the still image may be selected depending on the size.  P133
- If the i-ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Setting may be unavailable depending on images.


Adding to the phonebook: 




- Registering entries to the phonebook  P107

Updating and registering to the registered phonebook:   **Select phonebook data**





- If an image has already been set, the image is replaced by the selected image.

Setting as call image:    or 







Setting as video-phone call image, substitute image or on-hold image: 

  to 

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal can be set only as call image.

Setting as outgoing/incoming msg. image or Retrieving Image:    to 

- The outgoing/incoming msg. image is also displayed even when Message R/F or SMS is sent or received.
- Flash movies cannot be set as retrieving image.

Setting to the menu icon:  or    to  or 

The selected image is set as a menu icon of *Custom1* or *Custom2* of tile display.

- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as a menu icon.

INFORMATION

If images set to the stand-by display or phonebook are deleted, each image returns to the default setting.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Created animation, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 cannot be saved to Created animation.
 - Still images saved in Created animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.
 - Still images shot continuously by the camera are saved as Created animation.
- Canceling the setting returns to each still image.

1   **Select a folder**

2    

To cancel the setting: highlight the Created animation   

3 Select images



The number is displayed on the image in the order of selection.

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Canceling all the selections:

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two- byte)



In the image list, and the display name are displayed. In the thumbnail display, the first cartoon panel is displayed.

INFORMATION

When still images shot continuously are canceled, the number such as "-1" and "-2" is appended at the end of the file name.

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in *Image* (My Picture). The editing items and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Editing items	Maximum editable image size (dot) ^{*1}
<i>Change size</i>	1728 x 2304 (240 x 400 or 352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
<i>Clip</i>	1728 x 2304 (The still image of 1728 x 2304 cannot be clipped specifying the range.)
<i>Brightness/Tone</i>	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
<i>Effects</i>	240 x 400
<i>Reverse/Rotate</i>	480 x 640
<i>Frames</i>	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
<i>Paste stamp</i>	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
<i>Paste text</i>	240 x 400 or 352 x 288
<i>Cut</i>	240 x 400
<i>Size limitation</i>	1728 x 2304
<i>Adjust</i>	240 x 400 or 352 x 288

*1 When the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size using *Change size*.

- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, Created animation, Flash movies, images in *Item* folder and images in *Preinstalled* folder

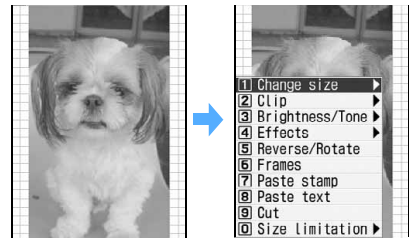
- Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
- Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots
- Editing of *Brightness/Tone* or *Effects* displays the image smaller. The image size is not influenced. Save as it is. The size of saved images is correct.
- Areas in a still image edited which are transparent on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.

1 Select a folder

2 Highlight a still image

- The still image edit screen appears.
- Adjustment P326

3



Still image edit screen

Edit menu screen

4 Select an editing item Edit the still image

- 1 : *Change size* P323
- 2 : *Clip* P323
- 3 : *Brightness/Tone* P324
- 4 : *Effects* P324
- 5 : *Reverse/Rotate* P324
- 6 : *Frames* P324
- 7 : *Paste stamp* P325
- 8 : *Paste text* P326
- 9 : *Cut* P326
- 10 : *Size limitation* P326

5 Select *Save* after editing

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as an image for frame or stamp. Images that can be available as frame/stamp P350

INFORMATION

Larger still images than display area are reduced. However, images are displayed at same magnification in the case of *Paste stamp*, *Paste text*, *Cut* and *Zoom in/out* of *Change size*.

After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.

When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Save the image after deleting unnecessary images first.

Changing the size

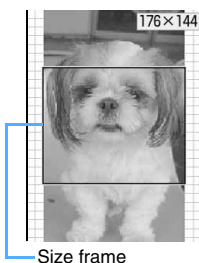
- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

1 [1] on the edit menu screen

2 Change the image size

Changing it to the specified size: [1] to [9]

If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears. If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. Press [0]/[4] to adjust the position of the size frame, and press [5] to change the area encompassed by the size frame to the specified size.



- Putting the whole still image in the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio: [6]
- Putting the entire still image in the specified size by maintaining the aspect ratio: [7]

Zooming in/out:

1 [0] [4] to zoom in/out



You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size and the rate of zoom in/out are displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press [6] to zoom out by 20% or press [7] to zoom in by 20%.

- The portrait still image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the landscape still image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of the either).
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either of horizontal or vertical.

2 [5]

The still image edit screen reappears.

Clipping images to desired sizes

You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

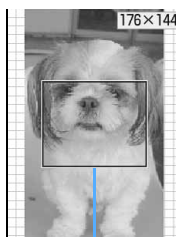
- When the original still image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 [2] on the edit menu screen

2 Clip the still image

Clipping the image to the specified size:

1 [1] to [9] [0]/[4] to adjust the clipping position



- Switching the vertical/horizontal of the clipping frame: [8]
- Changing the clipping size: [9]
- Specifying the clipping range: [0]

2 [5]

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image edit screen reappears.

Specifying the range and clipping:

1 [0] [4] to adjust the position of [5]



The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and [5] is displayed on the lower right of the frame.

Range specification frame

② to adjust the position of

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press instead of to change the position of the upper left again.
- after pressing to move the range specification frame.

③

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image edit screen reappears.

Changing brightness and tone

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Change the brightness and tone

Adjusting the brightness:

① to adjust the brightness



- Maximizing :
- Minimizing :

②

The still image edit screen reappears.

Changing the tone to monotone or sepia:

or

The tone is modified and the still image edit screen reappears.

Applying special effects

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Select the type of effect

The effect is applied to the still image and the still image edit screen reappears.

Soften : Softens the image.

Spherical: Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphasizes concavity and convexity.

Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.

Shiny : Attaches a mark as glistening.

Mosaic : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 on the edit menu screen

2 Reverse/rotate the still image

- : Reverse up and down
- : Reverse left and right
- : Rotate 90 degrees to the left
- : Rotate 90 degrees to the right

3 Press

The still image edit screen reappears.

Overlaying a frame

1 on the edit menu screen

The same size frames as the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Select a frame

3 Check the still image



The still image edit screen reappears.

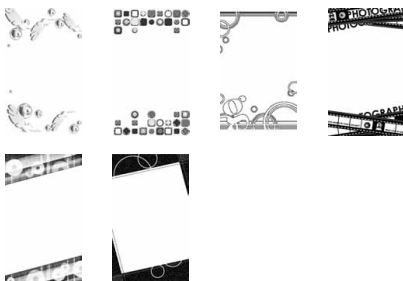
- Switching frames:
- Rotating a frame 180 degrees:

Frames set by default

- If the frames registered by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style". P296

Size for stand-by (240 x 400)

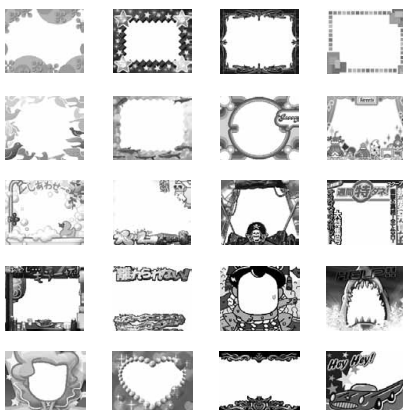




VQGA size (240 x 320)



QCIF size (176 x 144)



Pasting stamps

1 on the edit menu screen

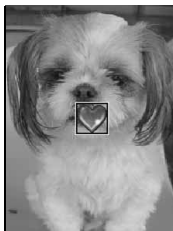
The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info and stamps preset by default are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Select a stamp

The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

3 to move the stamp



A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

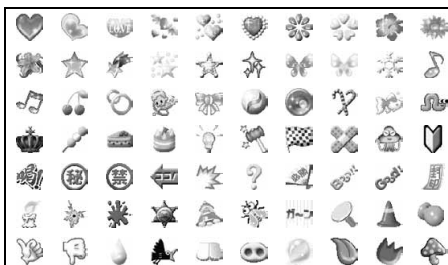
- You can paste stamp in another location continuously.

- Deleting all the pasted stamps:
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.


4 Press


The still image edit screen reappears.

Stamps set by default





Pasting characters Paste Text

- 1  on the edit menu screen
- 2 Select each item to set
 - Text* : Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).
 - Font type* : Sets the text type.
 - Font size* : Sets the text size.
 - Font color*: Sets the text color.
 - Font border color* :
Sets the text bordering color.
 - Background color* :
Sets the text background color.
 - Paste method* :
If *By block* is set, text is pasted at the same time. If *By character* is set, text can be pasted on a different position by character.

- 3 



The text (in case of *By character* set for *Paste method*, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.


- 4  to move the text 

A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.

 - You can paste text in another location continuously.




- When *By character* is set for *Paste method*, each pressing of  pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.
- Deleting all the pasted text: 
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.




- 5 Press 


The still image edit screen reappears.

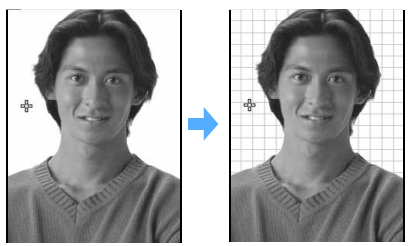
Cutting a desired section out

You can select a color and cut the section of the similar color.


- 1  on the edit menu screen

- 2  to place  to the color to cut and 

The section with a similar color as the color at  is cut out.




- You can cut another area continuously.

- 3 Press 

The still image edit screen reappears.

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to a size below 9,000 bytes for *Msg attach:Small* and a size below 500 Kbytes for *Msg attach:Large* for saving.


- 1  on the edit menu screen ▶ Select a size

The image is saved as a new image with a size below the specified size in the same folder.


 - Still images with a size larger than 240 x 400 or 352 x 288 cannot be set as *Msg attach:Small*.

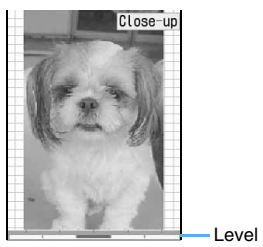
Adjusting brightness and tone balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

- 1  on the still image edit screen

The still image adjustment mode is activated and the current adjustment mode is indicated in the upper right of the screen.

- 2  to switch the adjustment mode



Close-up : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.

Near view : Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.




Distant view : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.

Beautiful skin : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.



Tanned : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.

Drunk : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

• The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and  to .

3 to adjust the level

- Maximizing : 
- Minimizing : 

4 Press

The still image edit screen reappears.

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings (My Picture)

Default View format: Display 16 icons
Display title: Yes
Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
Scale up image: No Sound effect: Yes
Auto scroll mode: No

1

2 Select each item to set

View format :
The thumbnails appear when setting to **Display 16 icons**, and the title display appears when setting to **List view**.

Display title :
Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.

Display number :
Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.

Display comments :
Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.

Scale up image :


Sets whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area by maintaining its aspect ratio when displaying it.

- Even when set to **Yes**, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect :


Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

Auto scroll mode :

Sets whether the auto scroll is enabled when  is pressed on the image display screen.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the image list and image display screen, press  and then select **Settings**.

Menu 52

Playing video/i-motion


i-motion


You can play video/i-motion saved in **i-motion** of Data Box in FOMA terminal.


- Video/i-motion files (MP4 files and ASF files) with an image size from 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 can be played.


1 Select a folder


The following video/i-motion files are stored in each folder:




 **Camera** :
Videos recorded with Movie Camera or Chara-den and sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and movie memos

 **i-mode** :
i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion Mail

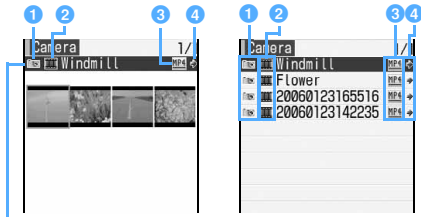
 **Preinstalled** :
Videos preinstalled by default

 **Data transfer** :
Video/i-motion files moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by data communication

 **Album** :
Videos/i-motion files moved from other folders

- Not displayed by default. To create P348
- You can enter any name of album in creating.
- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: 
- Handling the miniSD memory card P345

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file



Data display name at the cursor and icon

Thumbnail display

Title display

Video/i-motion list

1 Originated

- : Preinstalled
- : Camera
- : Chara-den
- : i-mode
- : Data transfer
- : Video-phone

2 Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number of times
- : Restriction on expiration
- : Restriction on period

3 File types

- : MP4
- : ASF^{*1}
- : MP4 with bookmark
- : ASF with bookmark^{*1}

*1 Only the files saved in the miniSD memory card can be played.

4 File restriction

- (in blue) : Without file restriction
- (in gray) : With file restriction

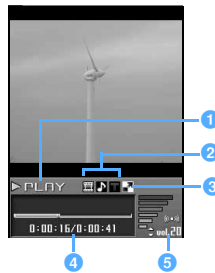
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder or video/i-motion only with sound (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is displayed as and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction function set is displayed as in the thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be modified.

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached (i-motion Mail): Highlight a video/i-motion file

The mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail

3 Press



The video/i-motion is played.

1 Playing status

- : in play
- : in stop
- : in pause

2 File types

- : only image
- : only sound
- : only text
- : image + sound
- : image + text
- : sound + text
- : sound + image + text

3 Enlargement/reduction

- : enlarged
- : reduced
- No icon:

Displayed at the same magnification

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.



4 Playing duration



: Indicates the current playing time/full duration in numeric and bar.

5 Play volume



: Indicates the current volume.

- In case *Size adjustment* is set to *Normal* in *Settings*, a confirmation message appears when trying to replay the video reduced. Press .
- For video/i-motion files with a bookmark set, a confirmation screen asking whether to play from the bookmark position is displayed. If you select *Yes*, video/i-motion is played from the bookmark position and if you select *No*, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.
- The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:
 - : Pause/replay, Play from the beginning (after stopping)
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play at fast speed
 - : Rewind and play
 - : Return to the list
 - : Stop


Setting a bookmark: During playback,  at the position to set a bookmark  Select Yes

- The number of the bookmark to be set is only one in all the video/i-motion of FOMA terminal, and all the video/i-motion of the miniSD memory card. If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set.
- Playing continuously: 
- Canceling the bookmark: Stop the playback and 
- You cannot set from i-motion whose replay restriction is set. In addition, when playing from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, setting screen for sound and display and i- ppli, a bookmark cannot be set.

Playing horizontally: 

- Each time you press, horizontal and vertical size of the image are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.
- Video/i-motion with an image size of 320 x 240 is enlarged to fit to the full width of the screen by pressing  while playing horizontally (Play wide). The top and bottom parts exceeding the screen are not displayed. Press  again to restore the normal replay.

INFORMATION

When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as  in thumbnail display.

When the replay restriction is set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Replay restriction types and contents to check are as follows:


Restriction on the number of times

Status	Description
Playback counts remain	<i>Available to replay x (x/all) time(s). Play? is displayed. To play, select Yes; to stop, select No.</i>
Maximum number of plays reached	<i>This data can no longer be replayed. Delete? is displayed. To delete, select Yes; to cancel, select No.</i>

Restriction on expiration

Status	Description
Within expiration	<i>Available to replay until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play? is displayed. To play, select Yes; to stop, select No.</i>
After expiration	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete? is displayed. To delete, select Yes; to cancel, select No.</i>

Restriction on period

Status	Description
Within period	<i>Available to play From year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour: minutes. Play? is displayed. To play, select Yes; to stop, select No.</i>
Before period	<i>Replay period has not yet started. is displayed. Press  to return to the video/i-motion list.</i>
After period	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete? is displayed. To delete, select Yes; to cancel, select No.</i>

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and playback period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for an extended period of time. If this happens, i-motion with a replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

Setting video/i-motion to the stand-by display or phonebook data

- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the stand-by display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- The video/i-motion for which *Available* is set for ring tone and receive display settings in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the following video/i-motion:
 - Video/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or other FOMA terminal using infrared communication or the data link software

- Video/i-motion files copied/moved to FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your terminal again after saved in the miniSD memory card)
- Video/i-motion with sound only can be set for the PushTalk ring tone.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file ▶

3 Select each item to set

Setting to the stand-by display:  ▶

Select Yes

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged is set to the same size of image by selecting **YES (Same size)** and set to enlarged size in accordance with display area by selecting **YES (Large size)**.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.
- Playing the video/i-motion set as the stand-by display ◀P134



Adding to the phonebook: 

- Registering entries to the phonebook ◀P107




Updating and registering to the registered phonebook:  ▶ **Select phonebook data**

- If video/i-motion has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.


Setting as Movie ringtone:  ▶

 to 




Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):

①  ▶  or 

② **Select the phonebook data**

③ **Check the content** ▶ 

- If any tone has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering the phonebook No. ◀P118, Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries"

Setting as incoming image (voice call, video-phone call):  ▶  or 

- If an incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

Some video/i-motion files may not be set as the stand-by display and other items.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. In addition, some video/i-motion such as the video in ASF format cannot be edited depending on the file format.
- Icon definitions and key operations when playing video/i-motion during editing ◀P328

Clipping the still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.
- The size of the still image is the same as that of displayed video/i-motion.

1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Select a video/i-motion file

The selected video/i-motion is played.


3 at a desired position to capture

- Retrying the capturing:  ▶ Select **Yes**

4 Check the image ▶



The still image is captured and saved in **Camera** folder of **Image (My Picture)**.

- Capturing continuously:  ▶ Repeat Step 3 to 4

Sending mail with the captured still image attached: (M)

The captured still image is saved in *Camera* folder in *Image* (My Picture) and the mail composition screen with the still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select *Yes* to paste in the mail message and select *No* to attach to mail.

Clipping video/i-motion

Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

1 (M) (2) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file



The custom edit mode is activated and (M) is displayed above the playing duration.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 (M) (start position) ▶ (M) at the position ending the clipping (end position)



Current file size/
Maximum file size

- Press (ch/200) to retry the operation after pressing (M) (start position). Press (M) to cancel clipping.
- If you have played until the end without pressing (M) (end position), clipping is terminated automatically. In this case, the end position is set before the end of file a little.
- In case the size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 490 Kbytes regardless of the limit size.

Setting the limit of clipping size:

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.

1 (M) in the screen before pressing (M) (start position)

2 Select Msg attachment: S (290 Kbytes), Msg attachment: L (490 Kbytes) or No settings (the size of the original file)

- When the file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of file exceeds 490 Kbytes, *No settings* is not available.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) (M)

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion: (M)

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
▶ P241

Clipping video/i-motion by specifying the file size

Edit by Size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- The file size which you can specify is from 10 to 490 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion.

1 (M) (2) ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file



- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip

Settings to the size that can be attached to mail:

- This setting is available only when the original file size is larger than 290 Kbytes.



② **Select *Msg attachment S (290 Kbytes)* or *Msg attachment L (490 Kbytes)***

- When *Msg attachment S* is selected, the clip size is set to “290”. When *Msg attachment L* is selected, the size is set to “490”.

4 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion:

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:



The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with the video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
☛P241

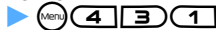
Inserting tickers

Edit Ticker

- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. In case of inserting a new ticker, tickers already inserted are all deleted.
- Video/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion).

1 ② ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a video/i-motion file



- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If *Yes* is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

Deleting tickers: ④ ③ ② ▶

Select *Yes*

All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.

3 Select each item to set

Time interval to show :

Set to *User specified* to specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Specify the number of tickers when setting to **Regular interval**. Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers :

Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting **Time interval to show** to **Regular interval**.

4

- When **Time interval to show** is set to *User specified*, a confirmation message appears and is displayed above the playing duration. Go to Step 5.
- If **Regular interval** has been set for **Time interval to show**, go to Step 7.

5 to start the replay ▶ at the ticker insertion position



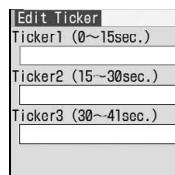
Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press , the inserting position of tickers is set.

- Ending the insertion position setting:

- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- When playback of a video/i-motion file ends or you have set up to 9 tickers, the settings are automatically ended.
- To display one ticker from the beginning to the end: to start the replay ▶

6 Select *Yes*

7 Select the ticker entry field ▶ Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)



Decorating tickers:

① Highlight a ticker ▶

② Select each item to set

Ticker 1 to 10 :

Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. Enter characters.

Font color :

Sets the text color. When it is set to *Default*, white is set.

- The font color has no effect on pictograms.

Background color :

Sets the background color of tickers. When it is set to *Default*, black is set.

Scroll :

Sets a text scrolling.

- Setting *Scroll in* gradually bring characters into view.
- Setting *Scroll out* gradually sends characters out of view.
- Setting *Scroll in & out* brings into view characters and sends them out of view.
- When setting to *None*, characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction :

Sets the scroll direction when set to other than *None*.

Word alignment :

Sets the display position of characters.

Font size :

Sets the size of characters.

Under line :


Sets whether to underline the characters.

Blink :

Sets whether to blink the characters.

③

8

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the *Msg attachment S* size is exceeded. Press  to insert the tickers anyway.

9 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Replaying the video/i-motion: 

Sending mail with video/i-motion attached:

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail
▶ P241

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion

Settings (i-motion)

Default

View thumbnails: Yes

Size adjustment: Normal

Repeat play: ON Backlight: Always on

Volume: Level20 Surround: OFF

1 2 5

2 Select each item to set

View thumbnails :

The thumbnails appear when setting to *Yes*, and the title display appears when setting to *No*.

Size adjustment :

If *Zoom* is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with aspect ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable.

Setting *Normal* does not zoom in/out. However, when video/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is played, it is reduced to fit the area by maintaining the aspect ratio.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to repeat play while playing an album or video/i-motion in the miniSD memory card is replayed continuously.

Backlight :

When *Always on* is set, the display light is always on while displaying and playing the video/i-motion list. When set to *Terminal settings*, it depends on Display Light Setting (▶ P141).

Volume :

Sets the sound volume during play.

Surround :

Sets whether to enable the surround effects during play.

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, press **MEMO** and select **Settings**.

The setting of **Repeat play**, **Volume** and **Surround** is also reflected for Player Setting of Music Player.

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen instead of your self image when you use the video-phone. By pressing dial keys during a video-phone call, you can move the character and make it express a feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the stand-by display and have Chara-den make specific actions on stand-by or for missed calls. The displayed still image and video of Chara-den can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den can move their mouths in time with the sounds from the microphone.
- Chara-den can be downloaded from sites and stored.
- Action of Chara-den consists of **Action** (whole acts) and **Action of Parts** (partial acts). Some Chara-den have only either or no action.



Action: 喜ぶ(Joy)



Action of parts:
足 ジャンプ(Jump)

Displaying Chara-den

Menu 54

Chara-den

The following Chara-den images are registered in **Preinstalled** folder by default:



ブンブン (bunbun)
(Dimo)

©BVIG



女の子 (Girl)

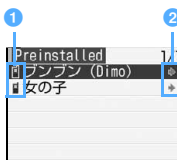
- If Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style". ●P296

1 Select a folder

The following Chara-den is saved in each folder:

- i-mode** : Chara-den downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Chara-den preinstalled by default
- Folder** : Chara-den moved from another folder
 - Not displayed by default. To create ●P348
 - You can enter any name of folder in creating.

2 Highlight a Chara-den image



Chara-den list

1 Originated

- ☐ : i-mode
- ☐ : Preinstalled

2 File restriction

- ➔ (in gray): With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. ●P349

Making a video-phone call using Chara-den:

- 1 Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ **☑**
- 2 Select the phone number field ▶ Enter the phone number ▶ **☑**
 - Phone number can be entered from the phonebook by pressing **☑**.
 - Press **MEMO** to set the conditions and make a video-phone call. ●P56
 - Operating procedure of the video-phone ●P78
 - Using Chara-den while making a video-phone call ●P83

Setting Chara-den to the video-phone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ **☑**

- You can also set by holding down **☑** for over a second in Chara-den display screen.

Setting Chara-den to the stand-by display:

- 1 Highlight a Chara-den image ▶ **MEMO** **4**
- 2 Set the type of action and the interval of actions ▶ **☑**
 - The contents of the setting is the same as Step 2 to 3 in "Setting action of Chara-den". ●P133

③ Select YES (Same size) or YES (Large size)

- If the in-ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it continuously.

3 Press



The Chara-den image is displayed.

Action mode

: Action

: Action of parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the number.
- Stopping the action:

Switching between large size and same size: for large size and for same size

Switching Chara-den images:

① ② ▶ Select a folder

② Select a Chara-den image

Displaying action list:

The action list for the current action mode is displayed.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den.
- Highlight the action and press to confirm the details.

Switching between Action and Action of Parts: (for over a second)

- Each time you hold down, Action and Action of Parts are switched.

List of preinstalled Chara-den actions

ブンブン (bunbun)(Dimo)

Action

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 嬉しい (Glad) | 2 ごめんなさい (Sorry) |
| 3 びっくり (Surprised) | 4 ラブラブ (I love you) |
| 5 病気 (Sickness) | 6 酔っぱらい (Drunken) |
| 7 着ぐるみ (Costume) | 8 拾ってください (Please pick up.) |
| 9 成金 (Upstart) | |

女の子 (Girl)

Action

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 喜ぶ (Joy) | 2 ガッツポーズ (Victory pose) |
| 3 愛情 (Affection) | 4 怒る (Angry) |
| 5 泣く (Weep) | 6 ダメ (Refuse) |
| 7 挨拶 (Greeting) | 8 うなづく (Nod) |
| 9 さよなら (Goodbye) | #1 悩む (Worried) |
| #2 称える (Praise) | #3 お願い (Do me a favor) |
| #4 あきれる (Amazed) | |

Action of parts

- 11 頭 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the head right (loop))
- 12 頭 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the head left (loop))
- 13 頭 上を向く (ループ) (Turn the head up (loop))
- 14 頭 下を向く (ループ) (Turn the head down (loop))
- 15 頭 左右に振る (Shake the head right and left)
- 16 頭 上下に振る (Shake the head up and down)
- 17 頭 回転する (Turn around the head)
- 21 胴体 右を向く (ループ) (Turn the body right (loop))
- 22 胴体 左を向く (ループ) (Turn the body left (loop))
- 23 胴体 後ろを向く (ループ) (Turn around the body (loop))
- 24 胴体 前に傾く (ループ) (Tilt the body forward (loop))
- 31 右手 挙げる (ループ) (Right hand up (loop))
- 41 左手 挙げる (ループ) (Left hand up (loop))
- 51 足 しゃがむ (ループ) (Squat on heels (loop))
- 52 足 ジャンプ (Jump)

INFORMATION

Chara-den cannot be edited or saved by attaching mail or data transfer out of FOMA terminal.

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

- Still images and videos shot are saved in the same file format as still images and videos shot with the camera. Image file saving format P171

1 **4** ▶ Select a folder

2 Highlight a Chara-den image

The Chara-den recording screen appears.

3 to switch the recording types



- You can also switch by pressing to after pressing .

Video + Voice :

Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone. For Chara-den that reacts with sounds from the microphone, the mouth in the image moves in time with the sounds.

Only video (w/ mic) :

Records only the image. The microphone is only valid for Chara-den that reacts with the sounds and moves its mouth in time with the sounds from the microphone. Sounds are not recorded.

Only video (w/o mic) :

Records only the image. Microphone becomes invalid.

Still image :

Shoots still images

- Icon definitions of other than recording types or action modes
- The size of images or the size restrictions of still images cannot be changed.
- The memory to save, quality or size restrictions of video can be changed in Still Image Setting/ Video Setting of Record Chara-den.

Switching Chara-den images:

▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a Chara-den image

4 Execute an action to shoot

In case of shooting still images, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording videos, the shutter sound is heard and the shooting is started. Recording is stopped by pressing or if the size of video file exceeds the limit and the video is saved after the shutter sound is heard.

- The still image/video recorded is saved in *Camera* folder of *Image* (My Picture) or *i-motion* when FOMA terminal is selected as the memory to save and in case the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, it is saved in *My picture* folder or *Movie* folder of the miniSD memory card.
- Press during recording video to pause. Press to restart recording.
- Actions can be executed during recording the video as well.

When Auto save is set to No in Still Image Setting or Video Setting

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

- : Save the still image/video
- : Cancel (Delete the still image/video without saving)
- : Switch the memory to save
- : Compose mail
- : Replay (only video)

Checking the saved still image/video immediately: ▶ Select the still image/video

- After checking, press twice to return to the Chara-den shooting screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, press , select the folder and select the still image/video. Press 3 times to return to the Chara-den recording screen.

INFORMATION

For the notice for recording, refer to INFORMATION of “Shooting still images” () and INFORMATION of “Recording videos with Movie Camera”. ()

Chara-den that reacts with the sounds from the microphone may not make motions correctly depending on the volume of the sounds from the microphone.

When there is not enough available storage space to save, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number, delete unnecessary image/video files following the instruction of a screen.

Default

Still Image Setting
 Quality: Standard Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
 Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
 Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
 Display size: Large
 Set lighting: Terminal settings
 Video Setting
 Quality: STD (Standard)
 Size restriction: Msg attach:Small
 Shutter sound: Shutter sound1
 Rec.File Restriction: File unrestricted
 Auto save: Yes Save to: Terminal
 Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

1 on the Chara-den recording screen

2 Select each item to set

Quality (Still Image Setting) :

Sets the quality of still images to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of still image file.

Quality (Video Setting) :

Sets the quality of video to shoot. Higher quality requires a larger size of video files.

Size restriction (Video Setting only) :

Sets the size restrictions of the video to record. When the size of video file exceeds the limit while recording, recording is automatically stopped.

Shutter sound :

Selects the shutter sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5.
 • Selected sound is played.

Rec.File Restriction :

When you send still images/videos to the other mobile phone via mail attachment or data transfer, you can set whether to restrict sending still images/videos to the other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.
 • Downloaded Chara-den with *File restricted* preset cannot be set to *File unrestricted*.

Auto save :

When *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the shot still image/video is automatically saved in the specified destination. When setting *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after shooting.

Save to :

Sets the memory to save.

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.
 • The setting takes effect the next time the shooting screen is displayed.

Set lighting :

When *Always on* is set, the display light is always on while shooting Chara-den. If you set *Terminal settings*, it depends on Display Light Setting (●P141).

3

INFORMATION

If file restriction in detail information is set for *Rec.File Restriction* for Chara-den, the still image/video taken (except for the case with *Rec.File Restriction* set with your terminal) cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail.

If file restriction in detail information is set for *Rec.File Restriction* for Chara-den, the still image/video taken (except for the case with *Rec.File Restriction* set with your terminal) cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card. Even when setting the memory to save to *miniSD*, it is changed to *Terminal*.

Setting the operating conditions of Chara-den Settings (Chara-den)

Default Display size: Large Set lighting: Terminal settings

1

2 Select each item to set

Display size :

Specifies whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display in the same size.

Set lighting :

When *Always on* is set, the display light is always on while displaying the Chara-den list or Chara-den. If you set *Terminal settings*, it depends on Display Light Setting (●P141).

3 Press

Menu 53
 Playing melodies Melody

Play melodies saved in *Melody* of Data Box in FOMA terminal.

1 Select a folder

The following melodies are saved in each folder:

i-mode :
 Melodies downloaded from sites or i-mode Mail

Preinstalled :
 Melodies preinstalled in FOMA terminal

Mail Attach Melody :

Melodies for attaching to mail, which are preset by default

Data transfer :

Melodies read by Bar Code Reader, melodies moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or melodies received via data communication

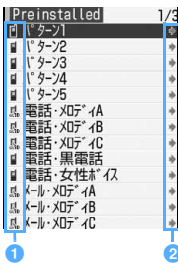
Album :

Melodies moved from another folder

- Not displayed by default. To create P348
- You can enter any name of album in creating.

- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: P345
- Handling the miniSD memory card P345

2 Highlight a melody



1 Originated

- : i-mode
- : i-mode + 3D sound supported
- : Data transfer
- : Data transfer + 3D sound supported
- : Preinstalled
- : Preinstalled + 3D sound supported
- 3D sound P127

2 File restriction

- (in blue) : Without file restriction
- (in gray) : With file restriction

- Display name and other items can be modified. P349

Sending mail with melodies attached:

Highlight a melody

The mail composition screen with the melody attached is displayed.

- If the receiver is other than FOMA D701i, D901i, D901iS or D902i, the received melody may not be correctly played.
- Melodies that can be attached to mail P241

3 Press



The melody is played.

1 Play bar

Indicates the current play position.

2 Play volume

Indicates the current volume.

- The following operations are available while playing a melody:

: Adjust volume

: Play the previous/next melody

: Stop

Setting melodies for ring tone

- Melodies in the folder of *Mail Attach Melody* cannot be set as the ring tone.

1 Select a folder

2 Highlight a melody 2

3 Select the type of sound to set

Setting as ring tone for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F, video-phone or PushTalk: to 7

Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail):

1 or Select phonebook data to set

2 Check the content

- If a ring tone has already been set, the ring tone is replaced by the selected melody.
- Entering the phonebook No. P118, Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries"

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings (Melody)

- Default Volume: Level 3
- Lighting pattern: Sync melody
- Lighting color: Rainbow
- Vibrator: OFF
- Play position: Play all
- Play background: Standard
- Stereo/3D sound: ON



2 Select each item to set

Volume :

Sets the volume in playing melodies.

Lighting pattern :

Sets the lighting pattern of the call indicator in playing melodies. When *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, *Lighting color* cannot be set.

Lighting color :

Sets the color of the call indicator in playing melodies.

Vibrator :

Sets the vibrator pattern in playing melody.

Play position :

Specifies whether to play the whole (*Play all*) or part of the melody (*Play portion*) in playing melodies.

Play background :

Sets the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melodies. To set an image in *Image* (My Picture), set to *Select* and select an image.


Stereo/3D sound :

Set to *ON* to play melody with broadening stereophony. Set to *OFF* for monophonic replay.

- 3D sound ◀P127

3 Press

INFORMATION

In the melody list and melody play screen, press  and select *Settings*.

Even if *Sync melody* is set for lighting pattern or vibrator, it may not be synchronized for some melodies.



Even if *Play portion* is set for play position, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

miniSD memory card

You can save data such as shot still images, videos or melodies in the miniSD memory card or make backup of data such as the phonebook entries or schedules. In addition, video files and sound data created with external devices (PC, etc.) can be saved in the miniSD memory card for playing on FOMA terminal (▶P466, P467) or the data of the miniSD memory card can be operated from a PC (▶P406).

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.
- Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before they can be used. The operation of the miniSD memory card whose format is stopped is not guaranteed. ▶P347
- The miniSD memory card formatted by such as a PC may not operate in FOMA terminal correctly (formatting may be unavailable).
- Images in the miniSD memory card cannot be set as an icon, background image or stand-by image. Move or copy images to FOMA terminal before setting.
- FOMA terminals support commercial miniSD memory cards of up to 128 Mbytes (as of October, 2005). Perform the following procedure to see the updated information:
 - From FOMA terminal:
 - iMenu* メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) *My D-style* クイックマニュアル *D902i* クイックマニュアル (D902i Quick Reference Manual)
 - From PC:
 - Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's website at http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902i/FAQ_miniSDメモリーカード (miniSD memory card)
- To connect a PC with FOMA terminal, the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required.

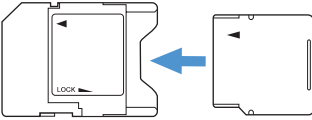
Usage precautions of the miniSD memory card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or formatting. The data may be corrupted.
- Subjecting FOMA terminal with the miniSD memory card to strong impact such as dropping may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the miniSD memory card.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.
- While data is being copied, moved, deleted, or when the miniSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated,  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area). FOMA terminal will not be available to make phone calls, i-mode connection or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .

- The miniSD memory card cannot be used while All Lock or PIM Lock is on.
- In the miniSD memory card in which the data has been written and protected with other devices such as a PC, the data cannot be saved, deleted and formatted.
- Data saved from other devices into the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the miniSD memory card you are using, the saved video may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the miniSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Using with devices supporting the SD memory card

The miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use miniSD memory cards with devices which support the SD memory card.

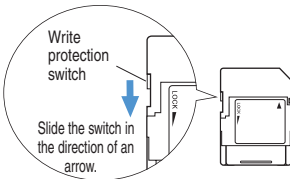


Insert a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter.

- To remove the card, pull it out.

Preventing erroneous deletion

When you use the miniSD memory card with a miniSD memory card adapter, the write protection switch on the adapter will allow you to prevent erroneous deletion of data on the card.



- Slide the write protection switch to the "LOCK" side.
- Use something with a fine tip to slide the switch.
- Be careful not to give damage to the miniSD memory card.

miniSD memory card folder structure

Displaying on FOMA terminal

The folder structure is as shown below. Saving destinations are classified by the type of data.

Folder structure		Maximum allowable number of saved items*2
<i>Data Box</i>	<i>My picture</i> *1	9,999 items
	<i>Other image</i> *1	9,999 items
	<i>Movie</i>	4,095 items
	<i>Melody</i>	9,999 items
<i>PIM</i>	<i>Phonebook</i>	9,999 items in total
	<i>Schedule</i>	
	<i>Received message</i>	
	<i>Unsent message</i>	
	<i>Sent message</i>	
	<i>Note</i>	
	<i>Bookmark</i>	
<i>My document</i>		999 items
<i>ToruCa</i>		999 items

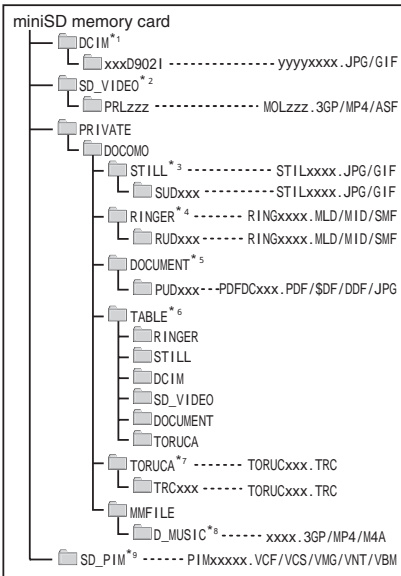
*1 Still images shot with the camera, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard) and images in GIF format are saved in *My picture*. Still images in JPEG format (DCF non-standard) and Animation GIF are saved in *Other image*. (DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.)

*2 Maximum data items which can be saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal regardless of the capacity of the miniSD memory card.

Inserting to and displaying on a PC

When data is moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or still images or videos shot with the camera are saved directly to the miniSD memory card, the folder compatible with the file is automatically created in the miniSD memory card. When the contents of the miniSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the structure of the folders and files is as follows.

When saving data in the miniSD memory card from a PC, etc., save in the specified folder with the following file format and file name. If data is saved in the wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on FOMA terminal.



- *1 Shot images, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard) and images in GIF format are saved.
 - *2 Video/i-motion (including sound data) are saved. Files with extension of 3GP or MP4 are treated as MP4 format.
 - *3 Still images in JPEG format (DCF non-standard) and Animation GIF are saved.
 - *4 Melodies in MFI and SMF formats are saved.
 - *5 PDF data are saved. Supports the long file name format up to 64 one-byte characters including the extension as well. An extension of \$DF means PDF data that failed to be downloaded. When the rest of the data has been downloaded and saved, the extension is changed to PDF. The extension of DDF means the files managing the information of bookmarks or marks, and JPG means data for thumbnail display. The file name without extension is as same as that of corresponding PDF data.
 - *6 Folders for data management. Never delete or rename a file in this folder. FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.
 - *7 ToruCa is saved.
 - *8 Music data is saved for replaying on Music Player. An optional folder can be created under *D_MUSIC* folder. The file name (xxxx) of music data is optional. The number of characters for the file name is up to 256 bytes (256 characters in one-byte) including the path name and the extension.
 - *9 The phonebook, schedule, received mail, sent mail, unsent mail, notes and bookmarks are saved.
- The rule of folder name and file name is as follows (Characters are all one-byte.):
- 100 to 999 are placed in xxx of xxxD9021.
 - A to Z (upper case), 0 to 9 and _ (underbar) are placed in yyyy of yyyyxxxx and 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx.

- A hexadecimal value of 001 to FFF in zzz of PRLzzz and MOLzzz (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters from 0 to 9 and A to F.)
- 0001 to 9999 are placed in xxxx of STILxxxx and RINGxxxx.
- 001 to 999 are placed in xxx of SUDxxx, RUDxxx, PUDxxx, TRCxxx, PDFDCxxx and TORUCxxx.
- 00001 to 65535 are placed in xxxxx of PIMxxxxx.

INFORMATION

On FOMA terminal, to use data copied to the miniSD memory card with a PC, etc., update of the miniSD memory card is required on FOMA terminal. If you change or delete the folder name in the miniSD memory card on a PC, etc., FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data. Even if an image larger than 1728 x 2304 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size is saved in the miniSD memory card, it cannot be displayed on FOMA terminal.

Images/videos/melodies/PDF data/ToruCa available in the miniSD memory card

The value of file size restrictions or availability for each data format is as follows.
For details on mail attachment ◀P241

Images and video/i-motion

Upper row: file size Lower row: image size

Operation Data	Copy/move to the miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Still image in JPEG format	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Still image in GIF format	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4, 3GP format (including sound data)	Unlimited	500 Kbytes
	Unlimited	Unlimited
Video/i-motion in ASF format	Not supported	Not supported
	Not supported	Not supported

Operation Data	Mail attachment	Contents display
Still image in JPEG format	500 Kbytes	2.6 Mbytes
	Unlimited	1728 x 2304
Still image in GIF format	10,000 bytes	2.6 Mbytes
	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4, 3GP format (including sound data)	500 Kbytes	Unlimited
	176 x 144, 128 x 96	48 x 48 to 320 x 240*1
Video/i-motion in ASF format	Not supported	Unlimited
	Not supported	176 x 144, 320 x 240

*1 Even if video/i-motion data exceed the playable image size, in case the sound format is playable or a ticker that can be displayed exists in the data, the sound or ticker is replayed.

Other data

Value: file size

Operation Data	Copy/move to the miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal
Melody in MLD format	Unlimited	100 Kbytes
Melody in MID, SMF format	Unlimited	100 Kbytes
PDF data	Unlimited	2 Mbytes
ToruCa	321 bytes*1	1,024 bytes

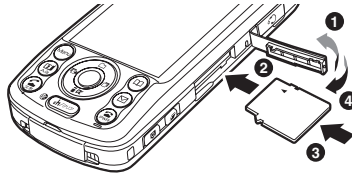
Operation Data	Mail attachment	Contents display
Melody in MLD format	Not supported	100 Kbytes
Melody in MID, SMF format	10,000 bytes	100 Kbytes
PDF data	Not supported	Unlimited
ToruCa	321 bytes*1	1,024 bytes

*1 It may vary depending on ToruCa.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

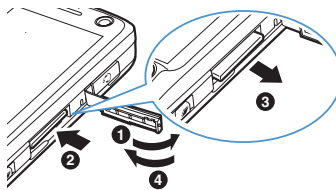
- Turn the power off before inserting/removing the miniSD memory card.
- In the miniSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the miniSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the miniSD memory card.
- Insert the miniSD memory card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying data or making backup if you have not the miniSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the miniSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove it.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.

Inserting the miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover
- 2 Insert slowly the miniSD memory card into the slot with its printed surface upward
- 3 Insert the miniSD memory card further until it clicks
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

Removing the miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover
- 2 Push the miniSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger
The miniSD memory card pops out a bit.
- 3 Remove the miniSD memory card slowly
Pull it straight out.
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

You can copy/move data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card and back up FOMA terminal data into the miniSD memory card.

Data type and operation contents exchangeable are as follows:

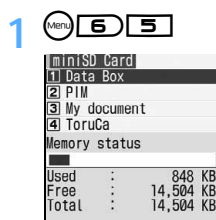
Data type		Contents of operation
Data Box	Image	One item, Selected items, All items (copy)
	Video/i-motion	One item, Selected items, All items (move)
	Melody	
PDF data		
ToruCa		
PIM	Phonebook*1	One item (copy), Backup, Recovery
	Schedule	
	Mail	
	Bookmark	
	Note	Backup, Recovery

*1 In case of backing up/recovering, it is available for the PushTalk phonebook. The PushTalk phonebook cannot be copied by copying single data item.

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Checking free space in the miniSD memory card

Check free space in the miniSD memory card before copying or making backup of data.



Memory status :

The rate of used area to full capacity is indicated in bar.

Used :

The current used area is indicated in numeric.

Free : The current free space is indicated in numeric.

Total : Full capacity of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is indicated in numeric.

INFORMATION

If the used area is not 0 KB with no data (including music data for Music Player) saved, format the miniSD memory card.

The miniSD memory card capacity actually available is smaller than the capacity specified on the miniSD memory card.

If free capacity of the miniSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Save data after deleting unnecessary data or attaching another miniSD memory card.

Copying/moving data from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with the same terminal and data in *Data transfer* folder are excluded.
- Created animation cannot be copied/moved.
- PDF data downloaded partially cannot be copied/moved.
- PIM data can be copied, but cannot be moved.
- UIM phonebook cannot be copied.
- Copying/moving may be unavailable depending on ToruCa.
- Protected ToruCa cannot be moved.
- When copying/moving ToruCa, it is saved as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). Return to FOMA terminal to obtain ToruCa (details) again.

Example When copying/moving images to the miniSD memory card

- 1 Select a folder
- 2 Select an image 5 4 or 5
- 1

Copying/moving selected items:

 - 2 Select images
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 -

Coping/moving all items:
- Select Yes**

Images are copied/moved in the miniSD memory card.

 - To cancel copying/moving:

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list or ToruCa list, press and select *Move/Copy Move to miniSD* or *Copy to miniSD One item, Selected items or All items*.

In the phonebook list, press and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM Copy to miniSD card*.

In the schedule day view screen, press and select *IrDA/miniSD Copy to miniSD card*.

In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press **Menu** and select *Move/Copy Copy to miniSD One item*.

In the bookmark list, press **Menu** and select *Move/Copy Copy to miniSD Copy one item*.

When copying or moving the image, video/i-motion, melody, ToruCa on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, a file name will be automatically changed to the name for management. In case of the PDF data, the file name may be changed to the name for management depending on the data.

If images are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal, the file size displayed on the miniSD memory card may be larger than that displayed on FOMA terminal. In this case, the file size displayed on the miniSD memory card is the actual size.

When the phonebook data is copied, images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, in case of displaying the phonebook data in the miniSD memory card, the images are not displayed. When returning the data to FOMA terminal, the images are displayed.

Even if the phonebook data is copied, the saved videos are not copied.

In case attached files (except video/i-motion) exceed 10,000 bytes, the attached files are not copied.

Even when sent mail or unsent mail is copied, the attached video/i-motion file is not copied.

The member list or image saved in the schedule is not copied.

Some data of images, video/i-motion or melodies saved on D902i may not be displayed or replayed on other FOMA terminals because of the difference in the data size limit.

The setting of data protection is not copied on the miniSD memory card.

Copying/moving data from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

- Maximum number of saved items in FOMA terminal ◀P36

Copying/moving data in Data Box/PDF data/ToruCa to FOMA terminal

1 **Menu** **6** **5**

2 Select the type of the data

Copying/moving data in Data Box: **1** ▶
1 to **4**

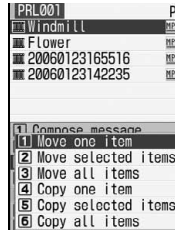
Copying/moving PDF data: **3**

Copying/moving ToruCa data: **4**

3 Select a folder

4 Select data ▶ **Menu** **3** for data in Data Box and **Menu** **2** for PDF data and ToruCa

5 **1** or **4**



Copying/moving selected items:

1 **2** or **5** ▶ Select data

2 **Menu**

Copying/moving all items: **3** or **6**

6 Select Yes

Data is copied/moved to Data Box (each *Data transfer* folder in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion*, *Melody* and *My Documents*) in FOMA terminal or *ToruCa* folder in the ToruCa list.

- To cancel copying/moving: **Menu**

INFORMATION

If you search the data and display the list screen, copying/moving all items cannot be performed.

Copying PIM data into FOMA terminal

- Backup data (data with or) cannot be copied. Perform recovery to restore the data to FOMA terminal.

1 **Menu** **6** **5** **2** ▶ **1** to **7**

2 Select data ▶ **Menu** **1** **1** ▶ Select Yes

Backing up data saved in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Make a backup of each PIM data in FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card at once.

1 6 5 2 ▶ 1 to 7

2 1 4

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select

Yes

The selected PIM data is backed up to the miniSD memory card as one data item integrated.

- To cancel the backup:
 - The backup data will be discarded.

INFORMATION

Operation is available from the phonebook list, schedule list, mail list or Bookmark list as well.

- In Phonebook list, press and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM Backup to miniSD*.
- In the day view screen of the schedule, press and select *IrDA/miniSD Backup to SD card*.
- In the received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list or bookmark list, press and select *Move/Copy Copy to miniSD Backup*.

When the phonebook is backed up, the PushTalk phonebook is backed up as well.

Restoring backup data in the miniSD memory card

There are 2 ways of the recovery: recovery by adding and overwritten recovery.

- Note that when overwritten and restored, each PIM data in FOMA terminal is overwritten and original data is deleted.

1 6 5 2 ▶ 1 to 7

2 Select backup data ▶ 1
▶ 2 or 3

: Phonebook : Schedule
 : Received mail, unsent mail or sent mail
 : Note : Bookmark

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved as the data other than the one saved in FOMA terminal.
- If overwritten recovery is performed, the data saved in FOMA terminal will be overwritten.
- When the phonebook is recovered by adding, a member of the PushTalk phonebook is recovered without being registered in a group. A group name is not recovered.

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select

Yes

- To cancel the recovery:
 - Backup data processed before canceling are restored in FOMA terminal.

Displaying data in the miniSD memory card

- If data in the miniSD memory card is changed or deleted by PCs, etc., the data in the miniSD memory card is not displayed properly on FOMA terminal. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information.

Displaying data in Data Box/PDF data/ToruCa

1 6 5

2 Select the type of the data

Displaying data in Data Box: 1 ▶ 1
to 4

Displaying PDF data: 3

Displaying ToruCa: 4

3 Select a folder

Switching to the folder list of FOMA terminal:

4 Select data

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched (excluding melodies and ToruCa).

Sending mail with data attached (excluding PDF data): Select data ▶

Displaying the detail information (excluding ToruCa): Select data ▶ 2
for data in Data Box and 1 for PDF data

Deleting one item:

① Select data ▶ 4 1 for data in Data Box and 3 1 for PDF data/ToruCa

② Select Yes

Deleting selected items:

① **4** **2** for data in Data Box and
3 **2** for PDF data/ToruCa ▶
Select data

② ▶ **Select Yes**

Deleting all items:

① **4** **3** for data in Data Box and
3 **3** for PDF data/ToruCa

② **Enter the terminal security code** ▶
Select Yes

Jumping to the specified page: ▶

Enter the page number

- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

Searching for data in the miniSD memory card (excluding ToruCa):

① **5** for data in Data Box and
4 for PDF data

② **Enter the date** ▶

Continuously playing video/i-motion (only video/i-motion):

5
 Video/i-motion in a folder is replayed continuously. You can make the following operations during continuous play:

- : Pause/replay : Adjust volume
- / : Play the previous or next video/i-motion title
- : Stop

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion:

7 ▶ **Select each item to set** ▶

- For settings

5 ▶ **Confirm data**

- Refer to the following pages for operating procedure of video/i-motion, melody, PDF data or ToruCa.
 - Video/i-motion
 - Melodies
 - PDF data
 - ToruCa (Details cannot be obtained.)
- The following operations are available while the image is displayed:
 - : Display the detail information
 - : Full-screen display (the auto scroll is unavailable.)
 - : Switch display/hide the file name
 - : Compose mail

Displaying the PIM data

1 **6** **5** **2**

2 **1** to **7**

3 **Select data**

Deleting one item:

① **Select data to delete** ▶ **2** **1**
 ② **Select Yes**

Deleting selected items:

① **2** **2** ▶ **Select data to delete**
 ② ▶ **Select Yes**

Deleting all:

① **2** **3**
 ② **Enter the terminal security code** ▶
Select Yes

Jumping to the specified page: ▶

Enter the page number

- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

Searching for data in the miniSD memory card:

① **3**
 ② **Enter the date** ▶

4 ▶ **Confirm data**

- For the display, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook
 - Schedule
 - Mail
 - Bookmark
- When selecting one PIM data item, the detail of selected data is displayed.
- When selecting backup data, all the data contained in backup data are listed as title.

INFORMATION

You cannot make a call or send mail from the detail screen of the phonebook or schedule saved in the miniSD memory card. And in the mail detail screen, replying, forwarding, editing and protecting cannot be executed.

The images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed. Returning to FOMA terminal allows to display.

The PushTalk phonebook entries included in the backup data of the phonebook are not displayed. Restoring is available.

Schedules saved in the miniSD memory card do not sound an alarm on the set date and time.

Select the mail address in the mail view screen, press **MEMU** **3** **1** to register the mail address to the phonebook, or press **MEMU** **3** **2** to register the mail address to the phonebook by updating. Also, select the image or melody attached and press **MEMU** **4** **1** to display/play, or press **MEMU** **4** **2** to check the title.

However, images or video/i-motion beyond 10,000 bytes and the number of items cannot be displayed.

Managing the miniSD memory card

Formatting the miniSD memory card Format

Format a miniSD memory card when you delete all the data (including the music data for Music Player) saved in the miniSD memory card or when a new miniSD memory card is used in FOMA terminal.

1 **MEMU** **6** **5** **▶** **☐**

2 Select the format method

Quick format :

Only the data management area in the miniSD memory card is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only when the miniSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format :

Both the data management and data areas in the miniSD memory card are formatted. This method is used to format a new miniSD memory card.

3 Enter the terminal security code **▶** Select

Yes

- To suspend formatting: **☑**

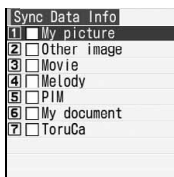
Updating the miniSD memory card information Sync Data Info

If the data is no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal because data in the miniSD memory card are changed, added or deleted using the other devices, update information in the miniSD memory card.

- If information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows:
 - In case of the data in *My picture* or *Other image*, the display name is changed to the same as the file name.
 - In case of the data in *Movie*, *Melody* or *My document*, the display name is changed to the same as the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.
 - The data within *ToruCa* is changed to the same name as the title name. However, in case the data has no title name, it is changed to 無題 (Untitled).

1 **MEMU** **6** **5** **▶** **☑**

2 Select an item



3 **☑** **▶** Select Yes

- To cancel Sync Data Info: **☑**

INFORMATION

When there are many data items saved on the miniSD memory card, updating information will take some time.

If available capacity becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a miniSD memory card with other devices, data saved in the miniSD memory card may be no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal.

Checking the miniSD memory card Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the miniSD memory card and restore it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the miniSD memory card.

1 **MEMU** **6** **5** **▶** **☑**

2 Select Yes

Using the album

You can create albums (folders) in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion*, *Melody*, *Chara-den* or *My Documents* in Data Box in FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in *i-motion* and *Melody* can be replayed at one time.

- In *Chara-den* or *My Documents*, the album is referred to as folder.
- Names of the fixed folder registered by default cannot be changed or deleted.



Creating albums

- Up to 100 albums in *Image* (My Picture) and up to 10 albums respectively in *i-motion*, *Melody*, *Chara-den* or *My Documents* can be created.
- No album is set by default.


Example Creating the album in *Image* (My Picture)

1  

2  


Changing the album name: Select the album  

Deleting albums:


① **Select the album**  


- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② **Select Yes**

3 **Enter the album name (up to 20 one- or two-byte characters)** 

INFORMATION

In the folder list of *i-motion*/*Melody*, press  and select *Create album*.

In the folder list of *Chara-den*/*My Documents*, press  and select *Create folder*.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.






- Data can be moved between *Deco-Mail picture* folder in *Image* (My Picture) and other folders as well.
- Data saved in *Preinstalled* folder or *Mail Attach Melody* folder cannot be moved.


Example Moving data in *Image* (My Picture)

1    **Select a folder**

2 **Select data**    

Moving selected items:

①      **Select data**

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.


② 

Moving all the data in folder:


   


3 **Select the destination album**  **Select Yes**


INFORMATION


In the video/i-motion list, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to album One item, Selected items or All items*.

In the melody list, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to album Move one item, Move selected items or Move all items*.

In the image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to album*.

In the melody play screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to album Move one item or Move all items*.

In the Chara-den list, press  and select *Move One item, Selected items or All items*.

In the Chara-den display screen, press  and select *Move*.

In the PDF data list, press  and select *Move/Copy Move to folder One item, Selected items or All items*.

Returning album data to the fixed folder


Example Returning album data in *Image* (My Picture) to the fixed folder

1    **Select an album**

2 **Select data**    





Returning selected items:

①      **Select data**

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.


② 


Returning all the data in the album:


   


3 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, press  and select *Move/Copy Return to folder One item, Selected items* or *All items*.

In the melody list or PDF data list, press  and select *Move/Copy Restore to folder One item, Selected items* or *All items*.

In the image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Return to folder*.

In the melody play screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Restore to folder One item or All items*. In *Deco-Mail picture* folder, preinstalled images are moved to *i-mode* folder by returning data to the fixed folder.

Operation of returning to the fixed folder is unavailable for Chara-den.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Created animation, images in *Item* folder, images in *Preinstalled* folder in *Image* (My Picture)
 - i-motion whose replay restriction is set
 - Melody, Chara-den
 - Data set to *File restricted* in file restrictionNote that the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with FOMA terminal and data in *Data transfer* folder are excluded.


Example Copying data in *Image* (My Picture)

1   ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select data** ▶   

The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.





INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, PDF data list or image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy Copy*. If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves to the same fixed folder as the original data.

Playing the entire album data






You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion for which replay restrictions are set cannot be played.





1   for *i-motion*, or   for *Melody*

2 **Select an album** ▶  

The following operations are available while the video/i-motion album is played:

- : Pause/replay
- : Adjust volume
- / : Play the previous or next data item
- : Stop

The following operations are available while the melody album is played:

- : Adjust volume
- : Play the previous/next melody
- / : Stop

Checking/editing detail information of the data



[View/Edit Detail Info](#)




Check the detail information of data. The contents of some information can be changed.

Checking detail information


Example Displaying the image detail information


1   ▶ **Select a folder**


2 **Select an image** ▶   

- Press  or  to scroll by screen.
- Press  to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press  and select *Detail Info View*.

In the video/i-motion play screen, press  and select *Detail Information*.

In the Chara-den recording screen, press  and select *View detail info*.

Changing detail information


Example Changing the image detail information

1   ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Select an image** ▶   

3 **Select each item to set** ▶ 

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, Chara-den list, Chara-den display screen, melody list, melody play screen or PDF data list, press  and select *Detail info Edit*.

For video/i-motion, Chara-den and melody, selecting *Back to original* returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as “Changeable” in the list.

: Changeable : Displayed only - : Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Video/ i-motion	Chara-den	Melody	PDF data
<i>Display name</i>					
<i>Title (Original)</i>	-				-
<i>File name</i>					
<i>Type</i>		-	-	-	-
<i>File restriction</i>					
<i>Rec. file Restriction</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Creator</i>					-
<i>Copyright</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Description</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Format/File format</i>			-		
<i>Sound</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Display size</i>				-	-
<i>File size</i>					
<i>Duration/Playing time</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Saved date & time</i>					
<i>Use as frame</i>		-	-	-	-
<i>Use as stamp</i>		-	-	-	-
<i>Comment</i>		-	-	-	-
<i>Ring tone</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Receive display</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Replay restriction</i>	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Originated</i>					
<i>Transfer for repair</i>		-	-		

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name :

Title to be displayed on FOMA terminal (Up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available except for melody, and up to 50 one or 25 two-byte characters are available for melody when changing).

Title : Original title preset in data

File name :

File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, “.”, “-” or “_” are available when changing).

- “.” cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Type : Type of image

File restriction :

When you send data to the other mobile phones via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to the other mobile phones from the received party’s mobile phone.

- i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.

Rec. file Restriction :

Whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/video shot with Record Chara-den

Creator :

Creator’s name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

- The name registered in Own Number appears in *Creator* when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, *Creator* is not set.

Copyright :

The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Description :

Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Format/File format :

File type (“---” for Flash movie)

Sound :

Sound data type

Display size :

Display size of data (dot) (not displayed for Flash movie)

File size : The file size of data

Duration/Playing time : Playing time of data

Saved date & time :

Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame :

Classification whether or not to set the image to be able to be pasted as frame image

- Images larger than 240 x 400 or 352 x 288, or merged with item images cannot be set.

Use as stamp :

Whether or not to set the image to be pasted as a stamp image

- Images larger than 240 x 400 or merged with item images cannot be set.

Comment :

Description of data (Up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte are available when changing)

Ring tone :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring tone

Receive display :

Classification whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Replay restriction :

Replay restrictions on video/i-motion

Originated : Origination of data

Transfer for repair :

Classification whether your data can be moved at a DoCoMo’s designated repair office when your FOMA terminal is repaired

- Please note that DoCoMo will assume no responsibility for the data loss in case your data cannot be moved or is lost or modified.

INFORMATION

Even if *Yes* is set for *Use as frame* or *Use as stamp* in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in *Item* folder.

Ring tone is always set to available for the video/sound recorded with the recording type of *Video + Voice* or *Voice only* set with your FOMA terminal, or the video/sound clipped from the same video/sound. However, for the video with the display size of 320 x 240 or with an inserted ticker, *Ring tone* is not available.

Detail information stored in the miniSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

Deleting data

- The data saved in *Preinstalled* folder of *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion*, *Melody* or *My Documents* or in *Mail Attach Melody* folder cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data in *Image* (My Picture)

- 1 ▶ **Select a folder**
 - 2 **Select the data** ▶
Deleting selected items:
 - ① ▶ **Select the data**
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 - ②**Deleting all the data in a folder:**
▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- 3 **Select *Yes***

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press and select *Delete One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.

In the image display screen or Chara-den display screen, press and select *Delete*.

In the melody play screen, press and select *Delete One item* or *All items*.

If data set for the stand-by display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.

If you delete Created animation, the original images composing Created animation are also deleted.

In the case where Chara-den registered by default has been deleted, you can download it from the i-mode site "My D-style". ◀P296

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Default **Sort criteria:** *Saved date & time*
Order: *Descending*

Example Sorting data in *Image* (My Picture)

- 1 ▶ **Select a folder**
 - 2
 - 3 **Select each item to set** ▶
- Sort criteria** : Sets the sorting method.
Order : Sets the sorting order of data.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, melody list, Chara-den list or PDF data list, press and select *Sort*.

If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display name, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

About infrared communication

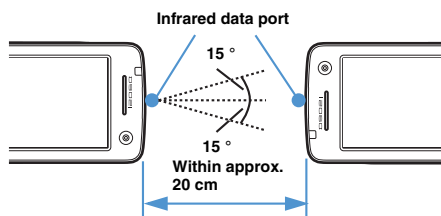
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i- ppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is not available while All Lock, PIM Lock or Self Mode is on.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to *File Restricted* with the same terminal and data in *Data transfer* folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication, is displayed on the top of the screen, and the terminal is in data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .

- The infrared communication function of this terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminals. Even when sending to i-mode terminal, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is approximately 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.

Notes in receiving the data from the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail.
- If you receive mail, usual mail may be stored in the folder for the Message i- ppli in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages.
- With reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- Bookmarks received from the terminal other than D902i may be stored in the top folder.
- Images, video/i-motion or melodies received from the terminal other than D902i may be saved as notes.

Notes on sending the data in D902i to the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save images, video/i-motion or melodies because of the difference in the data size limit.

Sending data by infrared communication

Send Ir Data

You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • PushTalk phonebook and Own Number data are also sent when sending all is performed. • Sending one item is unavailable for the PushTalk phonebook. • Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. • When <i>Ph.book image sending</i> is ON for Data Transfer Setting, still images saved in the phonebook data can be sent together. However, images may not be received depending on the recipient.
Schedule *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. • Date and Time Setting is required.
Received mail *1 Sent mail *1 Unsent mail *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attached data in the text (link items that activate i- ppli) are deleted.
Note *1	—
Bookmark *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the recipient. • When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. • Data of over 500 KB cannot be sent.
Video/i-motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Melody	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
PDF data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDF data which is over 512 KB or downloaded partially cannot be sent.





Data type	Remarks
ToruCa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Data is sent as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details). ToruCa (details) can be obtained again with the destination terminal. In case the size exceeds 321 bytes, ToruCa cannot be sent (it may vary depending on ToruCa). Some ToruCa may not be able to be sent.
Own Number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Images may not be received depending on the recipient.

*1 Sending all is enabled.


- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with the terminals other than D902i or the infrared communication devices. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver side are discarded.


Sending single data item


Example Sending a phonebook entry


- 1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive**
- 2 Search the phonebook ▶ Select the phonebook data to send ▶**   
- 3 Select Yes**
 - To cancel Send Ir Data: 


INFORMATION

In the sent mail list, unsent mail list or received mail list, press  and select *Send Ir data Selected item*.

In the bookmark list or list of notes, press  and select *Send Ir data Send*.

In the image list, video/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list or ToruCa list, press  and select *Send Ir data*.

In the day view screen of the schedule, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD Send Ir Data*.

In the details screen of Own Number, press  and select *Send own number*.

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

- 1 Make FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive**

2    

- 3 Select the data type ▶ Enter the terminal security code**


- 4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password**


The entered authentication password is masked with “ * ”.


- 5 Select Yes**


- To cancel Send Ir Data: 

INFORMATION

In the bookmark list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, received mail list or list of notes, press  and select *Send Ir data Send all*.

In the folder list of the bookmark, sent mail, unsent mail or received mail, press  and select *Send all Ir Data*.

In the phonebook list, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM (IrDA/Phone mem in the UIM phonebook) Send all Ir data*.

In the calendar screen or day view screen for schedule, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD Send all Ir data*.

When all the data items are sent, the order of data may change in receiver's side.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal, or are saved in FOMA terminal after the data are saved temporarily in *INBOX* of Receive Ir Data and checked. The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook*1	Phonebook
Schedule*1	Scheduler
Received mail*1	Inbox
Sent mail*1	Outbox
Unsent mail*1	Unsent messages
Note*1	Notepad
Bookmark*1	Bookmark
Image	<i>Data transfer folder of Image (My Picture)</i>
Video/i-motion	<i>Data transfer folder of i-motion</i>
Melody	<i>Data transfer folder of Melody</i>

Data type	Storage after receiving
PDF data	Data transfer folder of <i>My Documents</i>
ToruCa	<i>ToruCa</i> folder of <i>ToruCa list</i>
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Receiving all is enabled.

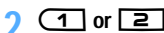
- Received data are saved in order as follows:
 - Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
 - Schedules and mails are saved in order of date/time.
 - Notes are saved in order of reception.
 - Bookmarks, images, video/i-motion, melodies, PDF data and ToruCa are added in the top of the list.
- If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except the phone number is overwritten.
- If you receive all phonebook items, in case received data includes the data of the PushTalk phonebook, it is saved in the PushTalk phonebook.
- Phonebook data cannot be received when Keypad Dial Lock is set.
- Date and Time Setting is required for receiving a schedule.
- When invalid characters are included in the received data, they are replaced by blank spaces or cut away.

Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.



The receive method selection screen appears.



Confirm & save :

Received data are saved temporarily in *INBOX*. Cannot be selected if *INBOX* has no free space. After receiving is finished, the *INBOX* data list appears.

Save :

Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the receive method selection screen reappears without displaying *INBOX*.

3 Select *Yes*

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

4 Send single data item on the sender side

When **Confirm & save** is selected in Step 2, *INBOX* screen appears after receiving data. Saving method of data P355, Step 2 and following steps of "Saving received data" When **Save** is selected, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving data.

- To cancel Receive Ir Data:

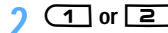
Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note and bookmark via infrared communication.

- To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Decide a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.



The all receive method selection screen is displayed.



Confirm & overwrite :

Received data are saved temporarily in *INBOX*. Cannot be selected if *INBOX* has no free space. After receiving the data, the *INBOX* data list is displayed. **Add** or **Overwrite** can be selected when saving from *INBOX*.

Overwrite :

Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the all receive method selection screen reappears without displaying *INBOX*.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.
- If you select **Confirm & overwrite**, go to Step 4.

3 Select *Yes* Enter the terminal security code

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password

- The entered authentication password is masked with "*" .

5 Select *Yes*

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

6 Send all the data on the sender side

When selecting **Confirm & overwrite** in Step 2, *INBOX* screen appears after receiving is finished. Saving method of data P355, Step 2 and following steps of "Saving received data" When selecting **Overwrite**, the all receive method selection screen reappears after reception.

- To cancel Receive Ir Data:

INFORMATION

Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. It may take time to receive the data of large capacity or a large number. For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in "Saving received data". P355
















Saving received data

You can save data stored in *INBOX* temporarily to FOMA terminal.

- If **Confirm & save** is selected when receiving a single data item, or **Confirm & overwrite** is selected when receiving all the data items, *INBOX* screen appears automatically after finishing receiving.
- The data saved in FOMA terminal are deleted from *INBOX*.

1     

2 Select the data

-  /  : single item/multiple items of phonebook data
-  /  : single item/multiple items of bookmark data
-  /  : single item/multiple items of mail data
-  /  : single item/multiple items of schedule data
-  /  : single item/multiple items of notes
-  : image
-  : video/i-motion
-  : melodies
-  : PDF data
-  : ToruCa

Deleting one item: Select the data ▶

  ▶ Select Yes

Deleting all items:   ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

3 Select Yes

When selecting multiple items:



- ① Enter the terminal security code
- ② Select **Add to add data, or select**

Overwrite to overwrite data

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting **Overwrite** and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be received and saved in FOMA terminal may be fewer.

Mail data received from the device that can save mail by the folder may be saved in the Message i- ppli folder. To check the saved mail data, select the Message i- ppli folder in which the data is saved and press  .

ToDo data (a list function data to manage business) cannot be saved on D902i. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the model other than D902i, only the schedule data is saved. Note that when all items of only ToDo data are received, all the schedule data registered in D902i are deleted if you select to overwrite the received data. When the data received all at once are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted. When multiple items of phonebook data are added, a member of the PushTalk phonebook is saved without being registered in a group. A group name is not registered.

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i- ppli by receiving the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i- ppli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i- ppli is set not to start with i- ppli To function via an external device, i- ppli cannot be activated.

1       ▶ Select Yes

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device

i- ppli is activated.

- To cancel receiving data: 

Using the infrared remote control function

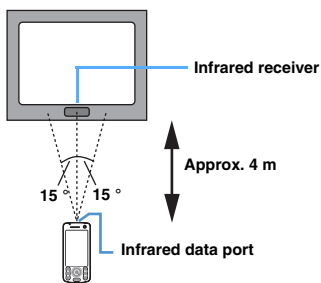
FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i- ppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i- ppli suited for the individual device.
- If preset i- ppli G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc. ▶ P297

- This function is unavailable during Self Mode is on or infrared communication is executed.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i- ppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance allowed for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of brightness in the environment.



Setting operations for data transfer

Data Transfer Setting

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF
Ph. book image sending: ON

1 **Menu** 6 2 3

2 Select each item to set

End alert :

Specifies whether to sound a communication end tone at the end of communication.

Auto Authentication :

Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.

- To set *ON*, enter the terminal security code, 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for a mobile phone terminal (FOMA terminal) and for PC (the other party), and then press **OK**.

Ph. book image sending :

Specifies whether to send images saved in the phonebook along with the all phonebook data.

3 Press **OK**

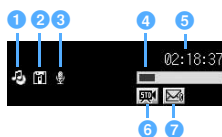
Recording sound with Sound Recorder

Sound Recorder

Sound can be recorded using Sound Recorder. Recorded sound can be saved in the miniSD memory card as well as playing on FOMA terminal and can be attached to i-mode Mail to send.

- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without image.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Reading the recording screen



1 **Function/Condition**

Indicates the running function and recording condition.

2 **Save to**

Indicates the memory to save. **P181**

F: FOMA terminal

SD: miniSD memory card

3 **Recording type**

Indicates to record sound.

4 **Indicator**

During stand-by for recording

Indicates the usage rate of the storage area in the memory to save.

- The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded sounds have been saved.

During recording/pause

Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size set in *Size restrictions* (or the allowable saving size when *None* is set).

5 Counter

During stand-by for recording

Indicates the approximate maximum recording time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card in the current settings.

During recording/pause

Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration until the recording stops).

6 Quality

Indicates the quality of the sound to be saved.

☛P358

7 Size restrictions

Indicates the size restriction value of the file to be saved. ☛P358

Recording time of sounds that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Capacity	Quality	File size restrictions		
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
16 MB	STD	232 min.	232 min.	232 min.
	HQ	152 min.	152 min.	152 min.
32 MB	STD	487 min.	487 min.	487 min.
	HQ	318 min.	320 min.	320 min.

Sound files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3gp
File name/Display name/Title	Recorded date and time is automatically set. (Example) In case of 12:34:56 on January 23, 2006. 20060123123456 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The display name and the file name can be changed after recording sound. ☛P349 When the date and time is not set in FOMA terminal, the display name, file name and title become"-----".
Mail attachment/output	Sounds can be attached to mail to send and also be output to PCs and other terminals using the miniSD memory card and dedicated data link software.

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the setting of quality and size restrictions.

- Quality and size restrictions can be set in *Recording Settings*. ☛P180

Recording time of sounds that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Max. recording time	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large
For one operation	STD	4 min.	7 min.
	HQ	3 min.	5 min.
In FOMA terminal	STD	159 min.	159 min.
	HQ	104 min.	105 min.

Recording the sound

- Record the sound in as quiet a place as possible with no or little noise.
- Even when *Silent* is set for Ring Volume, Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is active and so on, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard.



Recording screen

The call indicator lights in blue, Sound Recorder is activated.




Recording is started after the shutter sound is heard. ☛ is switched to ● and the compact light flashes in red and the call indicator flashes with changing colors.



- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press ☛ to pause recording. ● switches to || and the compact light is lit in red and the call indicator is lit in green then. Recording is resumed by pressing ☛ or ☛.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound is displayed.

- When *Auto save* in Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations from Step 4 are not required.
- If the file size exceeds the limit, recording ends automatically and only the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.
- If  is pressed to end the recording during pause, the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.

4 Confirm the recorded sound

- To save the sound immediately: Go to Step 5
- To record again without saving: 
- To replay the sound: 

When *Auto Play* in Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded sound is played automatically.

Sending mail with the recorded sound attached:

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound. Select *Yes* to save the recorded sound in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the sound cannot be attached.

Changing the title: ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) ▶

- The changed title is valid after saving the sound.

Inserting a ticker: ▶ Select *Yes*

The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed. Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting tickers". ◀P332

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, tickers cannot be inserted.

Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card:

- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 490 Kbytes, the destination to save cannot be switched.

- After saving the sound, the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.


Displaying the saved sounds in the list:

  ▶  or 


- When displaying the sounds in the miniSD memory card in the list, select a folder.

5 or

The recorded sound is saved in *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in *Movie* folder of the miniSD memory card.
- To confirm the saved sound immediately, press  and select the sound to confirm.

INFORMATION

Sound Recorder is activated by pressing  on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting *Switch mode Sound recorder* as well. Also you can switch by setting the recording type for Recording Setting to *Voice only* during stand-by for recording with Movie Camera.

For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder

▶P179, INFORMATION in "Recording videos with Movie Camera"

For the procedure of playing the recorded sound,

▶P327, "Playing video/i-motion"


Changing the recording settings


Setting the sound quality



1 on the recording screen to select the quality icon (,)

- You can also press  to select.

2 to switch the icon ▶

 **Standard** : The sound quality is standard.

 **High Quality**: The sound quality is enhanced, but the available recording time becomes shorter.

- You can also set by pressing  to switch the icon and pressing .

Restricting the file size

1 on the recording screen to select the icon (, ,) of size restrictions

- You can also press  to select.

2 to switch the icon

Msg attachment (S)*1 :



Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes. Being attached to i-mode Mail, data of this file size can be sent to the terminal unsupported large capacity messages.

Msg attachment (L)*1 :

Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

None :

No restriction for the file size. When the destination to save sound is set to *Phone* in Recording Setting, selection cannot be made.

- You can also set by pressing  to switch the icon and pressing .


*1 When selecting the icon, *Msg attach S* or *Msg attach L* is shown on the screen.

Menu 55

Displaying the PDF data

My Document

Displays PDF data saved in *My Documents* of Data Box in FOMA terminal. Also, PDF data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site(s) can be displayed. Various operations are available such as magnifying/reducing, searching for the character strings, displaying link and capturing screen while displaying PDF data.

- To download PDF data 
- *コラムスジュエル* (Columns Jewel) is preset in *Preinstalled* folder by default.

1 **Select a folder**

The following PDF data are stored in each folder:

i-mode :

PDF data downloaded from sites

Preinstalled :




PDF data preinstalled by default

Data transfer :

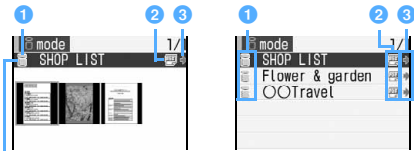
PDF data moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by the data communication

Folder :

PDF data moved from another folder

- Not displayed by default. To create 
- You can enter any name of folder in creating.
- To switch to the folder list of the miniSD memory card: 
- Handling the miniSD memory card 

2 Select the PDF data






Display name of data at the cursor and icon

Thumbnail display





Title display

PDF data list









1 **Originated**

-  : Preinstalled
-  : i-mode
-  : Data transfer

2 **File type**

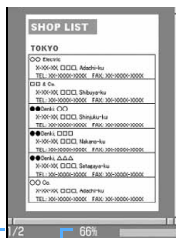
-  : PDF data downloaded completely
-  : PDF data downloaded partially
 - The part of data not obtained can be downloaded.
-  : PDF data that failed to be downloaded in case the communication is disconnected in the process, etc.
-  (in gray): PDF data set with UIM operation restriction function

3 **File restriction**

-  (in blue) : Without file restriction
-  (in gray) : With file restriction
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- In case images in PDF data cannot be shown in thumbnail display, the following icons appear in thumbnail display:
 -  : PDF data which has no thumbnail images or never displayed
 -  : PDF data downloaded partially
 -  : PDF data that is unsuccessful in being downloaded.
 -  (in gray): PDF data set with UIM operation restriction function
- Display name can be changed. 

3 Press

PDF data is displayed.




Page No./total number of pages






















Display magnification






Hide info

Display info

PDF display screen

- Each time you press , the display switches between *Display info* and *Hide info*.
- The following operations are available while displaying the PDF data:

-  : Scroll (hold down for over a second for high-speed scroll)
-  : Previous page
-  : Next page
-  : HELP 
-  : Zoom out
-  : Fit page 
-  : Zoom In
-  : First page
-  : Search 
-  : Last page
-  : Right 90 degrees
-  : Display link 
-  : Capture Screen 
-  : Document information 
-  : Display/extinguish the toolbar

- It may take some time to display depending on PDF data.
- In case a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and .
- When selecting the PDF data (with a file type of ) which failed to be downloaded, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the rest of the data. If you select *Yes*, downloading starts.
- To download the rest of PDF data (with a file type of ) which was partially downloaded, press   while displaying the PDF data. When the operation to require to download the data is executed such as displaying a page not downloaded, a confirmation screen appears when you try to display the page. Select *Yes* to download (After selecting *Yes* once, the subsequent pages are downloaded without being asked by the confirmation screen).

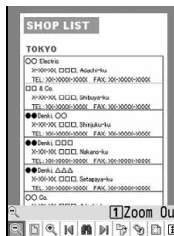
- The rest of the data may not be downloaded depending on the PDF data.
- In case a style that is not compatible with PDF compatible viewer or complicated design is contained in PDF data, the data may not be displayed correctly.

















Terminating the display:  










- In case of having changed the PDF data, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save or not. Select *Yes* to save.

Operations while displaying PDF data

Using the toolbar:



- 1  The toolbar is displayed.
- 2  to highlight the icon 
-  : Zoom out  : Fit page
 -  : Zoom In  : First page
 -  : Search  : Last page
 -  : Right 90 degrees
 -  : Display link 
 -  : Capture Screen 
 -  : Document information 

- Keypads of  to  and  are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad.
- Selecting an icon does not hide the toolbar. Operation is available with the toolbar displayed.
 - Press  to  and  or press  and highlight an icon to execute the function of each icon.
 - To stop the operation: 
 - To hide the toolbar: 

Switching the view types:

View types can be selected among *Fit page*, *Actual size* and *Fit width*.

-   
-  to 

Changing the settings of display information:

Set the display information when *Display info* is set.

-   

② Select each item to set ▶ 

Display properties :

Sets whether to display the page No./total number of pages and display magnification.

Scroll bar :

Sets whether to display the scroll bar.
 • Scrolling is available even when *No* is set.

Changing the settings of view types or display information in activating PDF data

①  **7**

② Select each item to set ▶ 

View types :

Select from *Fit page*, *Actual size* or *Fit width*.

Display info :



Select from *Yes* or *No*.

Display properties, Scroll bar :

The settings are the same as those of “Changing the settings of display information”.
 • Selecting is available when *Display info* is set.

Enlarging/reducing the display:  **6**  **3**













▶ Enter the magnification (2 to 1000%)

Switching the page layout:  **6**  **5** ▶

1 or **2**



- You can select from *Single page* (each page is displayed) and *Continuous-facing* (2 page-spread is displayed).
- The setting is not available for PDF data containing only one page or downloaded partially.

Switching pages:

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	 or  1  5
Next page	 or  1  6
Specified page	 1  3 ▶ Enter the page No.
First page	4 or  1  1
Last page	6 or  1  2



Switching pages by using the header:

Select the header registered already in PDF data to switch the page. It is not available in the PDF data containing no header. The header cannot be added or changed.

①  **1**  **4**

② Select the header

Rotating the display:  **6**  **4** ▶  **1** to  **3**

- The rotation of 90 degrees to right/left and 180 degrees is available.
- To display the previous page by scrolling, press  and press  to display the next page regardless of the direction of the page.

Search for the character strings:

- When all of the PDF data is not downloaded, searching is executed only in the displayed page.

①  **5**





② Select the entry field for the character string

▶ Enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

- To search a partially matched phrase, select *No* in *Whole words only Search*. For example, in case of entering “cat”, when selecting *No*, “cats” is also searched, but when selecting *Yes*, “cats” cannot be searched.
- When not distinguishing upper/lower case, select *No* in *Case-sensitive*.

③ 

Searching is executed and the word matching to entered character strings is highlighted.

- Highlighting the next matched phrase: 
- Highlighting the previous matched phrase: 
- Ending the search: 
- Displaying *HELP*: 


Using the link:

To move the page using link items in PDF data, switch the link display to on. When the link display is on, you can make a voice call/video-phone call, compose i-mode mail or connect sites by using links of the telephone number, mail address or URL in data.

- While the link display is on, the operation of scrolling or moving the page is not available. Operate after displaying the part containing the link item to use.


①  **6**  **6**

② Select the link item

- The operation in case of selecting the phone number, mail address or URL is the same as for Phone to (AV Phone to), Mail to or Web to from sites.
- Press  to terminate the link display.

Displaying the document information:  **9**

The title, name of the author and file size, etc. can be displayed.

Displaying HELP:  either on the PDF display screen or search result screen

You can confirm the key operation.

INFORMATION

- PDF data saved in the miniSD memory card via PC, etc. can be displayed on FOMA terminal as well.
- For details about the storage and file name of PDF data in the miniSD memory card ➡ P340
 - To display PDF data in the miniSD memory card ➡ P345

Utilizing bookmarks or marks

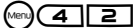
Register bookmarks or marks in pages you frequently use or need to have another look later. You can switch the page only by selecting bookmarks or marks. The position and current state of display (magnification, the direction of rotation) are registered in bookmarks. Also, the page description and notes can be registered in a bookmark as bookmark information. Only the position can be registered in marks.

- Bookmarks or marks are preset in some PDF data.
- Up to 10 bookmarks or marks can be registered respectively including those registered in advance. However, some PDF data are not allowed to store the maximum number of bookmarks/marks.

Utilizing bookmarks

Registering bookmarks

1 Display the page to register a bookmark ▶



2 Enter the information of bookmark (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters) ▶



Displaying bookmarks

1 MEMO 4 1 on the PDF data display screen ▶ Select the bookmark

The registered bookmark position in the corresponding page is displayed with the same state (magnification, the direction of rotation) as registered.

Editing:

- 1 Select the bookmark ▶ MEMO 1
- 2 Enter the bookmark information ▶ MEMO

Deleting one item:

- 1 Select the bookmark ▶ MEMO 2 1
- 2 Select Yes

Deleting selected items:

- 1 MEMO 2 2 ▶ Select bookmarks
- 2 MEMO ▶ Select Yes

Deleting all items:

- 1 MEMO 2 3
- 2 Enter the terminal security code ▶
Select Yes

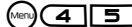
INFORMATION

Multiple bookmarks can be deleted also by pressing MEMO and selecting *Bookmark/Mark Delete bookmark* on the PDF data display screen. If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., bookmarks may be deleted.

Utilizing marks

Registering marks

1 Display the page to register a mark ▶



A mark is registered and displayed in the center of the current display range.

Displaying marks

1 MEMO 4 4 on the PDF data display screen ▶ Select the mark

The registered mark position is displayed in the corresponding page.

Deleting one item:

- 1 Select the mark ▶ MEMO 1
- 2 Select Yes


Deleting selected items:

- 1 MEMO 2 ▶ Select marks
- 2 MEMO ▶ Select Yes

Deleting all items:

- 1 MEMO 3
- 2 Enter the terminal security code ▶
Select Yes

INFORMATION

Multiple marks can be deleted also by pressing  and selecting **Bookmark/Mark Delete mark** on the PDF data display screen.
If PDF data is moved to PC and so on via the miniSD memory card, etc., marks may be deleted.

Saving the image of the page

Capture Screen

The content on the current screen is saved as an image of JPEG format.

- Capture Screen may not be available depending on the PDF data.
- Availability of saved images for output from FOMA terminal depends on the settings of the original PDF data.
- The size of an image captured depends on the size of the screen on which PDF data is displayed.

1 on the PDF data display screen

The contents displayed on the screen are saved in **Camera** folder of **Image** (My Picture).

Setting the operating conditions of PDF compatible viewer


Settings (My Document)

Select the display format for the PDF data list. The thumbnail display appear when setting to **Display 16 icons**, and the title display appears when setting to **List view**.

 **Display 16 icons**

1      or 


INFORMATION

In the PDF data list, press  and select **Setting**.

Playing music data on the miniSD memory card

Music Player








Play the music data (video/i-motion with sound only) saved in the miniSD memory card via PC, etc. Playing is available for the music data you got via Internet websites or created by converting from CD you got.

- To save music data from PC to the miniSD memory card 
- Only files saved with the extension of “mp4”, “3gp” or “m4a” can be played.
- By default, when starting Music Player, the folder/file under the top folder (**PRIVATE DOCOMO MMFILE D_MUSIC** folder of the miniSD memory card) is listed.
In case the top folder has no data, you cannot start.

1

Music Player is activated and the list of music data and the folder is displayed.

To move to another folder: Select a folder

- Move to the folder of the upper-order level: 
- To move to the top folder:   
- To move to Home folder (displayed when activating):   

Changing Home folder (displayed when activating):

- Setting is available only for the lower-level under the top folder (not required to be directly under).

① **Select a folder and display the list of folders in it**

②    **Select Yes**




Terminating Music Player:  on the top folder




2 Select music data



The selected music data is played.

Music data being played, No. / numbers of music, Volume, Playing duration

-  : Regular play
-  : Mark priority: on
-  : Intro play

 : Top folder
 : Home folder
 : Regular folder

- When playback of the selected music data is finished, the next music data in the folder is replayed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Stop (Press again to replay from interrupted position)
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Play the previous/next music data
 - : Stop playback and move to the upper-level folder/Terminate Music Player when pressing on the top folder
- The music data can be displayed and listed up to 99 items.

Playing the selected music data only:

You can play only music data which are marked in advance.

① Select the music data

appears in the selected music data.

- Each press switches between marked and unmarked.
- To select all/cancel all: (for over a second)
- Moving to another folder disappears a mark.
- Operation is available during playback.

② after marking

- Each press switches between *ON/OFF* for *Mark priority*. Set to *ON* when replaying only the marked music data and set to *OFF* when replaying all the music data in the folder. is displayed on the guide row when setting to *ON*.

③

The marked music data are played.

Playing the intro: 1

Each music data stored in the folder is played for 7 seconds in order from the top.

- Press while playing the intro to switch to the normal play mode.

Playing in shuffle mode: during playing or suspending

The sorting order of music data in the folder is switched in a random order.

- Return to the previous order: 4 1

Playing the music files using the flat type stereo earphone set (optional), etc.

If the flat type stereo earphone set is connected to the terminal when playing music data, you can operate Music Player with the switch of the earphone set.

- To operate with the switch, it is required to set to *Music player* for Headset Button Control. P387
- Operation is not available when Key Lock is on.

Operation	Procedure
Activate Music Player	Press for over a second
Play/Stop/Select a folder	Press once
Select the next music data or folder*1	Press twice in a row
Select the previous music data or folder*1	Press for over a second
Move to the upper-level folder/ Terminate Music Player	Press 3 times in a row*2

*1 The previous/next music data is replayed during playing.

*2 Music Player is terminated when pressing on the top folder.

INFORMATION

Playback continues even if the other function is performed with the Multitask function. However, replaying may be suspended depending on the executed functions.

In the following cases, playing pauses and after displaying the reception screen for a call/communication or mail or sounding the alarm, playback resumes:

- Voice call/ video-phone call/PushTalk call is received
- Mail is received (In case Display Priority is set to *Show message*)
- Specified date and time arrives in Alarm Clock or the schedule

Video/i-motion with image or ticker is not played.

Setting the operating conditions of Music Player

Player Setting

Default Volume: Level20 Repeat play: ON
Surround: OFF

1 6 9 7

2 Select each item to set

Volume :

Sets the volume of playing music data.

Repeat play :

Sets whether to return to the first music data to play after playing the last music data in the folder.

Surround :

Specifies whether to enable the surround effects when playing the music data.

3 Press

INFORMATION

The setting for each item is also reflected on Settings of i-motion.



Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess 366
Multitask	Multitask 367
Having an edit screen displayed when FOMA terminal is opened	Edit by Slide 368
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF 369
Ringing alarms at set time	Alarm Clock 369
Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON 371
Managing schedules	Scheduler 371
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu 378
Registering your own name and mail address	Own Number 380
Recording the voice and image.....	Voice Memo/Movie Memo 381
Checking the call duration and the call cost.....	Call Duration/Call Cost 382
Reset the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost 383
Setting to notify the limit of call cost.....	Call Cost Limit 383
Using Calculator	Calculator 384
Composing notes	Notepad 385
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch	Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch 386
Determining a service provider	NW Search Method 388
Reducing the start-up time after power-on	Quick Start-up 388
Checking current settings of functions.....	Confirm Settings 388
Resetting functions	Reset 388
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data 389

Multiaccess

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press  to display *New Task* menu or *Switch Task* menu for the operation.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i- ppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations 

INFORMATION

During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.




Operations available during Multiaccess


You can receive i-mode Mail, SMS or voice call, or execute the other communication without interrupting the communication being connected.

Receiving i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 Receive mail during a voice call



While receiving,  and  blinks at the top of the display, and when receiving is finished,  appears.

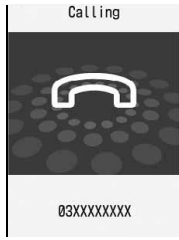
-  stops blinking automatically.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode

You can receive a voice call with a site being displayed.





- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call is received during i-mode



- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press

- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. 
- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen  Select *Yes*
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

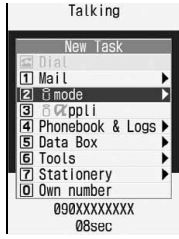
Connecting i-mode during a voice call

1 during a voice call





New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the site screen can be viewed while talking.

2



New Task menu

- The talking and the site screens can be switched during operation. 
- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen  Select *Yes*
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 during a voice call



New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, you can compose mail while talking.

2




When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- You can switch between talking and the mail composition screen during operation. ➤P368
- To quit mail composition:  in the mail composition screen
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Send data from a PC while talking

This action starts packet communication.

- The screen displayed when packet communication is executed depends on Priority Comm Mode.
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Making a voice call during i-mode communication

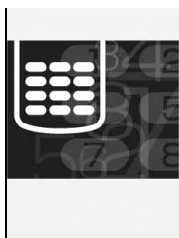
You can make a voice call with a site being displayed.

- Similarly, you can make a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.



1 during i-mode communication

New Task menu appears.

2 ▶ Enter the phone number ▶




- Select *Phonebook & Logs* from *New Task* menu to call from the phonebook, received call history or redial data.

- To quit displaying the site:  in the site screen ▶ Select *Yes*
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press  to display *New Task* menu or *Switch Task* menu for the operation.
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of Dial Callout or Own Number can be activated even when other 2 functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another. Multitask combinations ➤P463

Executing a new function

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during a voice call

1 during a voice call



New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the schedule screen can be viewed while talking.

2




3 View/Register a schedule

- To quit the schedule:  in the schedule screen
- To end the call:  in the talking screen

INFORMATION

If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while video or animation is being played or Camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Switching functions to operate

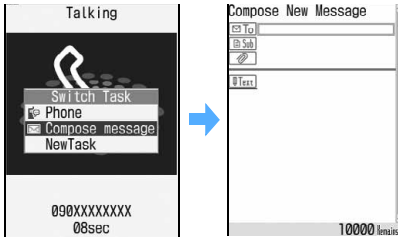
Pressing  while you are using multiple functions, *Switch Task* menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during Multitask of a voice call and i-mode mail composition



1 during a voice call

Switch Task menu appears.

2 Select *Compose message*



Switch Task menu

- To return to the talking screen:  ▶ Select *Phone* from *Switch Task* menu
- You can start a new function by pressing  in *Switch Task* menu to display *New Task* menu. Press  again to return to *Switch Task* menu.

INFORMATION

Screens cannot be switched if the combination of the two functions is defined as not selectable in Multitask combinations (P463).

The item names displayed in *Switch Task* menu may differ from the menu item names as shown below.

- *Dial input* (phone number input)
- *AV comm.* (video-phone using the external device)
- *i-mode* (i-mode site, Internet website, Bookmark, Screen Memo)
- *Mail* (list screen or detail screen of i-mode Mail, SMS)
- *Compose message* (i-mode Mail composition screen, SMS composition screen)
- *Receive message* (reception screen for i-mode Mail and Message R/F)
- *Check new message* (Check i-mode Message, Check SMS)
- *PDF Viewer* (PDF data display screen)
- *PPP data comm.* (packet communication connected to a PC)

Quitting all running operations

You can quit all functions running in Multitask at a time.

1 during Multitask ▶ Select *Yes*

Having an edit screen displayed when FOMA terminal is opened

Edit by Slide

If you set this function to *ON*, you can automatically display the mail composition screen, schedule edit screen and other screens when you open your FOMA terminal.

Default all *ON*

1

2 Select the item ▶ or

- Setting *ON* makes the following actions for each item:

Inbox :

Display the quick reply message selection screen when opening FOMA terminal from the received mail list screen or the received mail view screen.

- Display the mail composition screen for reply when a quick reply message is not registered or Quick Reply Setting is set to *OFF*.

Outbox :

Display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the sent mail list/view screen is displayed.

Unsent message :

Display the mail composition screen for editing by opening FOMA terminal when the unsent mail list is displayed.

Chat mail :

Display the screen where you can enter the message by opening FOMA terminal when the chat mail screen is displayed.

Schedule :

Display the schedule registration screen by opening FOMA terminal when the calendar screen/day view screen is displayed.

Notepad :

Display the notepad edit screen by opening FOMA terminal when the notepad list screen or the notepad view screen is displayed.

3 Press

INFORMATION

If *Schedule* is set to *ON*, the edit screen is displayed by opening FOMA terminal when the schedule details screen is displayed.

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

Default Auto power ON: OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1    
Setting Auto Power OFF:    

2 Select each item to set

Auto power ON :

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

- When set to *OFF*, *Time* or *Repeat* cannot be selected.

Time :

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Set Auto Power ON to repeat.

- When set to *OFF*, FOMA terminal is turned on only once at the set time and Auto Power ON is canceled.

3 Press

INFORMATION

If the Auto Power OFF is set to *ON* at the same time with the time for schedule or Alarm Clock, Auto Power OFF is made after finishing the operation of the schedule or Alarm Clock. If a snooze operation is finished after the alarm sounds, Auto Power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation. Even if Auto Power OFF is set to *ON*, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the stand-by display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.

Set Auto Power ON to *OFF* in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Ringing alarms at set time

Alarm Clock



This function announces at the specified time with the alarm sound, lighting or flashing of the call indicator or the vibration.


- When Alarm Clock is on, the default settings are as follows; **Time: 00:00, Repeat: None, Alarm sound: アラーム・アナログ時計** (Alarm/Analog clock), **Volume: Level4, Vibrate alert: OFF, Lighting pattern: Terminal settings, Lighting color: Terminal settings.**

Default not set


Setting the alarm time and the sound

1   

2  to 

- Up to 9 alarms can be set.  is displayed on left of a title while setting an alarm.

Canceling: Highlight the alarm title from the alarm list 

- To set the canceled alarm again: 

Editing:

- ① **Select the alarm title in the alarm list**
- ② **Edit the alarm setting**

3 Select each item to set




Time :

Enter the time to set an alarm.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat :

Select the repeat setting.

- If *None* is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If *Every day* is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If you select *Day of week*, select the *Day/Week* to select the days of the week and press .

Title :

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

- The titles are set to アラーム 1 to アラーム 9 by default. If the title field is not entered, the alarm cannot be set.

4 to switch to *Set sound* screen Select and set each item




Alarm sound :

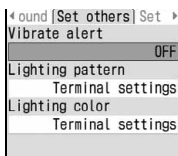
Select *i-motion* or *Melody* and select a video/i-motion file or a melody as an alarm.

Volume :

Select the volume.

- Adjusting the volume 

5 to switch to *Set others* screen Select and set each item



Vibrate alert :

Set the vibration used at the alarm time.

Lighting pattern :



Set the lighting pattern of the call indicator for the alarm time.

- When *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, *Lighting color* cannot be set.


Lighting color :


Set the color of the call indicator for the alarm time.

6 Press

In the stand-by screen,  or  (when a schedule alarm is also set) is displayed.



- Pressing  while the alarm is sounding finishes the alarm sound and the display before sounding reappears.

- If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than  is pressed, the alarm sound stops, and the terminal keeps ringing for 1 minute followed by a 4-minute silent period repeatedly for 30 minutes (snooze operation). If video/i-motion is set, the first image is displayed. If an incoming voice call, video-phone call, or PushTalk call is received while the alarm sounds, snooze operation also starts in the same way.

- If some operation such as a call is going on at the set time, the terminal operates as follows:

- During a call or a PushTalk call, the warning sound but the alarm occurs and the alarm screen appears. During PushTalk, the floor acquisition is released and you cannot talk. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
- When power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*.
- When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications) or while making, receiving or disconnecting a call/PushTalk call, the alarm operates after those operation ends.

When the set time comes

The alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. As the alarm screen, the following screen or the video/i-motion you set is displayed. The alarm sounds at the set volume. If lighting or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.

INFORMATION

When multiple alarms are set for the same time, the alarm set for the smallest item number in the alarm list is activated.

When an alarm and a schedule alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears at first, followed by the snooze operation and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.

When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late. When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the alarm does not sound.

Setting to turn power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm Alarm Auto Power ON

Set to automatically turn the power on and sound an alarm if the power is off when the date and time specified by Scheduler or Alarm Clock arrives.

Default OFF

- 1 8 5 5
- 2 Press 1
 - To set not to turn the power on automatically: 2

INFORMATION

Set Alarm Auto Power ON to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Menu 71

Managing schedules

Scheduler

Save various schedules. You will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

1 (for over a second)

2006/ 1						
Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat	Sun
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11

10:00~11:00 Meeting
 14:00~16:00 Project general meeting

Current day is displayed in pink, Saturday in blue, and day-off and national holiday in red (The displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).

Schedule of the day (If there are more than 3 items, "... " is displayed for the 3th and later)

Item icon

Cursor

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day is passed, the item icon set next is not displayed.
- to move the date. Pressing displays the day view screen.
- Pressing displays the previous month and displays the next month.
- The calendar appears as set when quit last time.

Specifying a particular day to display:

- ① 4 2 in the calendar screen
- ② Enter the year, month, and day
 - Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
 - To return today: 4 1
 - In **Day View** screen, press 5 2 . Pressing 5 1 restores the current date display.

INFORMATION

The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

The national holidays on the calendar are based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of October 2005).

However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may be different because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode
Display mode: Normal mode

1 (for over a second)

2 Select each item to set

Scroll mode :

Set the calendar display mode.

- Set *Monthly mode* to switch the display every month.
- Set to *Slide mode* to scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode :

Sets the beginning of the week (leftmost position).

- Set *Normal mode* to be Sunday.
- Set *Business mode* to be Monday.

3 Press

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying the date or day of the week.

- When setting days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date to set to a day off

The color of the date specified as a day off changes.

- To set a day off to be repeated yearly:

Canceling: Highlight the day to cancel day off setting

- To cancel all:

Setting days off by specifying the day of week:

①

② to to select the day of the week to set to days off

- By default, Sundays are set to days off.
- *Reset* is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing restores the default setting.

③

- If you register the calendar display without selecting days off, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

Holidays can be changed and up to 5 new entries can be registered.

1 (for over a second)

2

Changing: Select the holiday **Go to Step 4**

Deleting: Highlight the holiday **Select Yes**

- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3

4 Select each item to set

Holiday :

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar :

Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- If you set *OFF*, the holiday is not displayed. In addition, *Date* cannot be set.

Date :

Enter a date to set as a holiday. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select *Change* and enter the date.

5 Press

Saving the schedule

You can save multiple schedules for the same day.

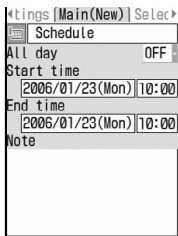
- Up to 300 items can be recorded.

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date whose schedule you want to save

- In the day view screen, also press .
- When *Schedule* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal after highlighting the date from the calendar screen or displaying the day view screen to display *Main(New)* screen.

3 Select each item to set



(Item icon) :

Select the icon.

- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column) :

The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed by changing the icon after changing the description.

All day :

Set whether to set the schedule to *All day* without specifying the time.

- If *All day* is set, the time and date display of the schedule is marked with *AllDay* on the day view screen. If *All day* is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by *AllDay*.



Start time :

Enter a start date and time for the schedule.

- Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.
- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set *All day*.

End time :

Enter an end date and time for the schedule.

- The input method of the date and time is the same as that of the start time.
- If you set this later than the start date,  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Long-term schedule).


Note :

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

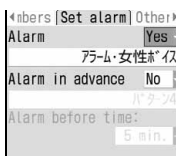
4 to switch to *Select members* screen

5 Select <*Select member list*> ▶ Select members to register

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call or PushTalk call, and also can send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

Deleting: Highlight the member 

6 to switch to *Set alarm* screen ▶ Select and set each item



Alarm (Schedule alarm) :

Set whether to set an alarm.

- To set an alarm, select *Yes*, select *i-motion* or *Melody* from *Alarm* field, and select a video/*i-motion* file or a melody for the alarm.
- If *No* is set, no alarm sounds.

Alarm in advance :

Set whether to enable an alarm before the start time of the schedule.

- The alarm selection method is the same as for *Alarm*.
- If *No* is set, no alarm sounds and *Alarm before time* cannot be set.

Alarm before time :

Set how many minutes before the schedule you want the advance alarm to sound.

7 to switch to *Other settings* screen ▶ Select and set each item



Repeat :






- Select the repeat setting for a schedule.
- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and **Every month** or **Every year** is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
 - If **None** is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
 - If **Day of week** is selected, select **Day/Week** field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press .
 - When you set a repeat,  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens (Repeat schedule).

Image :

- Set whether to display images on the schedule alarm screen.
- When you set **Yes**, select **Image**, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.
 - If **No** is set, the default image is displayed.

8 Press

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is saved,  or  (when Alarm Clock is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.

Registering a schedule by simple key operation from the stand-by display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule

Example: For 3 p.m. on January 23: Enter "01231500"

- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.

2 Save the schedule

INFORMATION




It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler. Schedules can be saved using the miniSD memory card (P343). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

To change the schedule alarm screen, you can select a video/i-motion for **Alarm** or **Alarm in advance** in **Set alarm** screen or select an image for **Image** in **Other settings** screen. If you make settings on both screen, the last setting takes effect. When you have set voiced video/i-motion as an alarm and later set an image, the alarm sound becomes the standard melody. If you set voiced video/i-motion after the image as an alarm, the image setting becomes **No**.

When the set time comes

When the set time arrives, the schedule alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The date/time, schedule description and set image or video/i-motion appears on the schedule alarm screen. The alarm sounds at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. When the schedule of Alert Lighting Setting or the phone of Vibrator Setting is on, it operates according to its setting.




- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.
- Pressing  while the alarm is sounding finishes the alarm sound and the previous display reappears. If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than  is pressed, the alarm sound stops with the display as is when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops. Pressing  makes the screen as shown on the above disappear. If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
 - During a call or a PushTalk call, the warning sound but the set alarm sound occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. The vibrator does not operate. During PushTalk, the floor acquisition is released and you cannot talk. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
- When the power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to **ON**.

- When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications) or while making, receiving or disconnecting a call/PushTalk call, the alarm operates after finishing those operation ends. However, if the schedule data is received by data communication, it does not operate.

INFORMATION

If a Created animation is set for *Image*, the first image is displayed.

When multiple schedules are set at the same date/ time, after stopping the alarm sound,  to confirm the description of the other schedules set at the same time.

When a schedule alarm and an alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears first, followed by the snooze operation, and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.

When a schedule alarm is set for *All day*, the schedule alarm screen appears and alarm sounds at 00:00 of the set date.

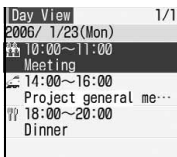
When a Chara-den image is displayed at the set time, the alarm may sound a few seconds late.

When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the schedule alarm does not sound.


Checking saved schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedules from the displayed screen.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule






Day view screen







- Pressing  in the day view screen switches dates.

Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display mode by item):

1 (for over a second)

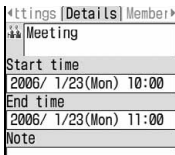
2

- To show all items:   

- In the day view screen, press   . To restore the all items display, press   .

3 Select an item icon



2 Select the schedule to check



Details screen

Changing:

1 in the schedule details screen

- When *Schedule* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal in each details screen for schedule to display the edit screen.
- In the day view screen, highlight a schedule and then press  .

2 Change the schedule data

3 Select Yes

INFORMATION

If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another date.

- When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another date any number of times. However, only one item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 Highlight the schedule to copy ▶



3

4 Highlight the date to paste the schedule to ▶



- In the day view screen, press   .

Composing mail from schedules

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

: Available x : Unavailable

Sending type \ Screen	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Calendar screen	x	
Day view screen		
Details screen		x

*1 Sends all saved schedules (including past schedules).

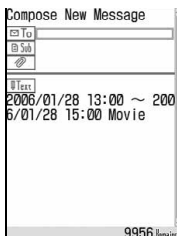
- Schedules are entered to a mail message in the Date To format. P386
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

- In the calendar screen, press **8** **1** and select *Send selected day* or *Send all*.
- In the schedule details screen, press **☺**.

2 Highlight the schedule to send by mail ▶



- To send all schedules registered for the selected day by mail: **7** **1** **2**
- To send all saved schedules at once: **7** **1** **3**

Searching mail from schedules

You can search mail sent and received on the day you select by using the schedule.

Example Searching received mail from the calendar screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight the date of which mail you want to search

2 **8** **2** **1**



- To display sent mail: **8** **2** **2**
- In the day view screen, press **7** **2** **1** to display received mail. To display sent mail, press **7** **2** **2**.
- How to view received/sent mail P259
- To cancel mail search: **☐**

Deleting schedules

You can delete 1 entry or multiple entries.

: Available x : Unavailable

Deleting type \ Screen	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	x	
Day view screen		
Details screen		x

- If the long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include a long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the current day. Even when *Before date* is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the highlighted date are also deleted.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

2 **8**

3 **1** to **3**

- When *One day* or *Before date* is selected if the long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

To delete all: **4** ▶ Enter terminal security code

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.

4 Select Yes

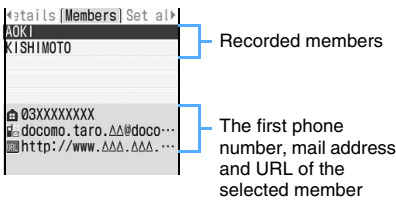
INFORMATION

On the calendar screen, press , select *Delete* and then select *One day/Before date/Delete all*.
On the details screen, press and select *Delete entry*.

Using member lists

Make calls, PushTalk calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule. Site display is also available from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member.

- (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule
- Select the schedule to use ▶ to display the member list screen



- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with “*” unless Secret Mode is set. When Privacy Mode is activated (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with “*”.

3 Use the Phonebook data

Making a voice/video-phone call: Highlight a member ▶ for a voice call, or for a video-phone call

A voice/video-phone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- You can make a call or a PushTalk call by setting the conditions. ▶P56

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member ▶

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

Displaying a site: Highlight a member ▶



INFORMATION

To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen (*Phone/Mail*). You can make a call, PushTalk call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.

When you press on the member list screen, or open FOMA terminal if *Schedule* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, the member selection screen appears enabling you to add or delete members.

Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

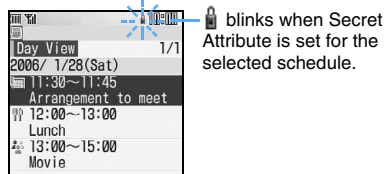
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode

- (for over a second) ▶ Select the date of the schedule

3 Highlight the schedule to set



- To cancel: Highlight the schedule with Secret Attribute set ▶
- On the schedule details screen, press .

INFORMATION

The alarm or alarm in advance of the schedule to which Secret Attribute is set can not be displayed if Secret Mode is not set.

Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules made while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

- (for over a second) ▶


- Press to return to the calendar screen.

INFORMATION

The number of registered items includes the one that is set by Secret Attribute.

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing , you can create your original menu (Custom Menu) by registering the functions you often use and the phonebook data of the person you frequently reach. It allows quick access and making a call easily.


Reading a template

You can also create a custom menu by reading templates and adding or deleting menu items.

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.

Default | Standard

1

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 to

Standard :

Alarm Clock, Calculator, Sound Recorder, Receive Display, Alert Lighting Setting, Open Answer, Edit by Slide, Change Security Code, Caller ID Notification

Data/Security :

My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Privacy Mode Setting, Remote Lock, IC card list, IC Card Lock

User-data related :

Bookmark, Screen Memo, Phonebook Search, Scheduler, Alarm Clock, Notepad, Save Word, Save Phrase, miniSD card

Mail :

Compose Message, Chat Mail, Mail Group, Read Template, Inbox

3 Enter the terminal security code



A template is read and set in the custom menu.


- When the custom menu is already set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the new custom menu. Select **Yes**.

Creating the custom menu

Use the template to create your custom menu.

- Up to 9 icons can be registered in a level of Custom Menu.

1 Read a template sample




- When you newly register all items, reset the custom menu. P380

2 Register the item

- 9 icons have been already registered for *Standard* and *User-data related* of the template. If any of these templates is read, unnecessary menu items are overwritten.

Registering people:




- When the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen instead of Flash movie or video/i-motion.

①   

② Select the person to register



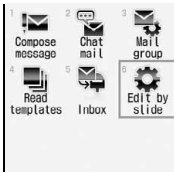
Registering functions:

①   



- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting (the sample screen is in the tile display format). However, when the normal menu is set to **Animation**, the list is displayed.

2 Highlight the menu item to register ▶



— Edit by slide is stored

- A menu item without submenus that does not have a lower level can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the item.

Registering groups:

- 1 **1** ▶ Enter the group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters)
- 2

Registering in a group:

When the 3rd level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

1 Select the group

The items in the group are displayed.

- When a group that does not register an item is selected, the item selection screen is displayed. When displaying the second level, no groups are registered.

2 Add or replace the item

Overwriting a registered item:

- 1 Highlight the item to overwrite ▶
- 2 **2** **1** to **3** ▶ Select the item to register

- When you overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears after pressing **1** to **3** to confirm that you really want to overwrite the group. Selecting *Yes* deletes all items in the group.

Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

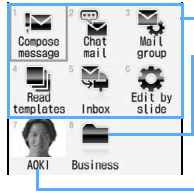
- Shortcut operations are also available while the custom menu is displayed. Shortcut operations depend on the setting of custom menu shortcut of Menu Setting.

1



- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item



— Function

— Group

— Person (Making a call or checking detail information is available.)

- To select a function or person from a group: Select the group ▶ Select the functions and people in the group

Executing a function: Select the function

- When the submenu exists, its items are displayed.

Making a call: Highlight the person ▶ for a voice call, or for a video-phone call

- When two or more phone numbers are registered, select a phone number.
- When selecting a person and pressing **1**, you can make a call or a PushTalk call by setting the conditions. P56
If you have two or more phone numbers, select a person and then press **1**. When selecting a phone number that you use, the handling can be made similarly.

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight the person ▶

- When two or more mail addresses are stored, highlight a mail address and press or . When no mail address has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

Composing SMS: Highlight the person ▶ (for over a second)

- When two or more phone numbers are stored, highlight a phone number and press or . When no phone number has been stored, the receiver field is left blank.

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the custom menu can be started by pressing the corresponding dial key (**1** to **9**) for over a second on the stand-by display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

Default My phone number: Phone number by default
Other than that: Not recorded

1  

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address


- *My phone number* shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in FOMA terminal.

2 

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set the name and mail address

[Edit own number] 010	
[Name]	<Image>
[Reading]	<Image>
090XXXXXXXX	<Image>
[Phone number]	<Image>
[Mail address]	<Image>

- The setting procedure for each item is the same as Step 3 to 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ◀P108
Note that groups cannot be set.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (*My phone number*) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4  to switch to *Other* screen ▶ Select each item to set

- The setting procedure for each item is the same as Step 5 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ◀P109
- None of these are set by default.
- If any item has already been set, it is displayed.



5 Press 

INFORMATION

Your phone number (*My phone number*) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on FOMA terminal.

Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to “i-mode User’s Manual”.


INFORMATION

If Secret Attribute is set for a person in the phonebook, the name of the person is displayed as “* * *” unless Secret Mode is set.  is displayed. Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*). The icon changes to  and the name of the person is displayed as “* * *”. When Secret Attribute and PIM Lock are set, the phone operations and icon display are according to the PIM Lock function.

Editing the custom menu

The item arrangement, icon design and group names can be changed as well as deleting items displayed on the custom menu.

1  

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Highlight an item ▶ Perform each operation

- To edit items in a group: Select a group ▶ Perform the individual operation

Replacing items:  **4** ▶ Select the destination item ▶ Select *Yes*

Changing icons:  **5** ▶ Select an icon

- To restore the icon:  **5** ▶ 

Changing group names:  **6** ▶ Enter the group name ▶ 


Deleting items:  **3** ▶ Select *Yes*

- When the group is deleted, items in the group are also deleted.


Resetting the custom menu

Delete all the menu items in the custom menu. This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1  



- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2  **7** **2** ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select *Yes*






- Pressing  displays the item selection screen.




Displaying Own Number details




1  

2   Enter the terminal security code



- Each time you press , the details screen switches as follows: **TOP Mail Other Phone**. When pressing , this sequence is switched reversely.
- When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed. To display all the content, press  on **TOP** screen. On **Mail** screen, **Other** screen, **Phone** screen, highlight content to be displayed and press .
- On the details screen of Own Number, the following operations can be performed as with the details screen for the phonebook:  P113, P118, P121
 - Mail/URL access
 - Phone call (excluding making calls to Own Number)
 - Copy • Mail address exchange
 - Caller ID Setting
 - Videophone Rate Setting

Editing registered data:    Edit registered data

Resetting registered data:    Select *Yes*

Recording the voice and image


Voice Memo/Movie Memo

Your voice can be recorded in stand-by as talking note (Stand-by Voice Memo) or the other party's voice and image can be recorded during a voice or video-phone call (Talking Voice Memo/Movie Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Stand-by Voice Memo/ Movie Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- Movie Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message.
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Movie Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor. Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

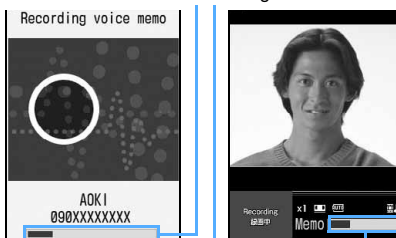
Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During video-phone call, the image of the other party is also recorded.

1  (for over a second) during a call




Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time



Voice Memo during a voice call

Movie Memo during a video-phone call




- While recording Movie Memo, image with Recording **録画中** is sent to the other party.
- Each time you press  while recording Movie Memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of message recording is approaching. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording). However, these beeps are not recorded.
- To stop recording:  (for over a second)
- Movie memos are saved in the **Camera** folder of *i-motion*.
How to replay the movie memos or i-motion  P327

Menu 473

Recording your own voice during stand-by

1  

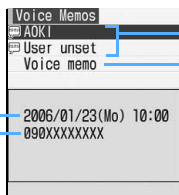
After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

- When the remaining time becomes 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. This beep is not recorded.
- To cancel recording: , , or 

Playing voice memos

1

The voice memo list shows both talking and stand-by voice memos.



Talking Voice Memo

- The phone number, the name (When the phone number is saved in the phonebook) or the reason for no caller ID.

Stand-by Voice Memo is displayed for Voice Memo.)

Phone number of the other party (*Voice memo* is displayed for Stand-by Voice Memo.)

Date and time of recording (If the date and time have not been set, no date and time are recorded.)

2 Select a voice memo



The voice memo is played.

- To stop playback:

- To adjust the volume:

- To switch between ON and OFF of speakerphone:

An indication of the playing time

3 Select whether to delete the played voice memo

Deleting a voice memo from the voice memo list: Highlight the voice memo ▶

▶ Select *Yes*

- To delete all: ▶ Select *Yes*

Saving phone number in the phonebook from the voice memo list:

① **Highlight a talking voice memo to save**

▶

- To add the number to the registered phonebook data:

② or ▶ **Save the name and mail address** ▶P107, P111

- To add the data to the registered phonebook data: or ▶ Select the registration destination phonebook data ▶P118

INFORMATION

You can make calls by using Talking Voice Memo. Highlight a party in the list and press to make a voice call and to make a video-phone call. From the submenu *Call*, you can specify several conditions and make a call. However, you cannot make a PushTalk call. ▶P56

Action when you close your FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice/movie memo ▶P63

Maintain the contents of voice/movie memos in some other form (e.g. written copy). Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/video-phone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, video-phone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" is displayed.
- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
- For FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.

Checking the call duration

1

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call :

The duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls :

The total duration of voice calls made









Total videophone calls :

The total duration of video-phone calls made






Total data sessions :

The total duration of data communication established

Resetting the total calls duration:

- ①      **▶ Enter the terminal security code**
- ②  **▶ to**  **▶ Select Yes**
 - To return to the call duration screen: 

Checking the call cost

1     

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice :

The cost of the last voice call

Last call cost: VP :

The cost of the last video-phone call

Last call cost: Data :


The cost of the last data communication

Total calls cost :

The total cost of voice/video-phone call and data communication

Reset: day & time :

The date and time of the last reset

- Resetting the total call cost:**  **▶ Enter PIN2 code ▶ Select Yes**

INFORMATION

No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".

When you switch from the voice call to the video-phone during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of them. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.

When the last or total duration of voice/video-phone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.

When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".

The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.

The call duration and call cost is not counted for i-mode communication, packet communication, and PushTalk communication. For details of those usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.


Reset the call cost automatically


Reset Call Cost

Total call cost is set to zero automatically on the 1st day of each month.

Default OFF

1     

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶** 

- To cancel: 

3 **Enter the PIN2 code**

INFORMATION

When the setting is *ON*, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.

When the setting is *ON*, if the terminal is not turned on or if you talking on the terminal at 0 o'clock of the first day of the month, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.

Even if the setting is *ON*, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost and, when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default Alert: OFF

1     

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select and set each item**

Alert :

Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

- If *OFF* is set, the items below cannot be set.

Limit :

Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 - 100,000 yen. 10 yen unit).

Alert method :

Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alarm sound :


Select an alarm sound from the melody list when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.

Alert time :

Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 - 60 sec.). Available when *Sound + icon display* is selected in *Alert method*.

3 Press 

INFORMATION

If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication,  is displayed at the top of the display.

When *Sound + icon display* is set for *Alert method*, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the stand-by display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. Neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears if:

- In Public mode (Driving mode)
- The call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00 o'clock the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*.

The alert sounds at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.

If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops. If

Key Lock is temporarily canceled, closing FOMA terminal also stops the alarm.

Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to *ON*, the setting is stored.


Removing the icon of alert Remove Call Cost Icon

- 1**      **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes**

Using Calculator

Calculator




You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, x, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.




- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use Calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. 

- 1**   


2 Make a calculation



Calculate using the dial keys  to ) and  (+, -, x, ÷).



- To delete the last digit entered: 
- To enter a decimal point: 
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: 

3 Press 


- The calculation result is displayed.
- Pressing  deletes the calculation result.

INFORMATION

Pressing   copies the displayed number.

Pressing   pastes the copied number.

Copied numbers are stored until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in the entry fields of notes, mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. Note that only one number can be stored and copying new numbers overwrites the stored number.

An error is generated and "E" is displayed when division by 0 is attempted or the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. To cancel, press . When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.

You can copy up to the first 8-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of notes, mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen. Numbers cannot be consecutively entered following the pasted number.

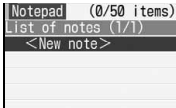
Composing notes

Notepad

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

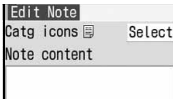
1   





2 Select <New note>



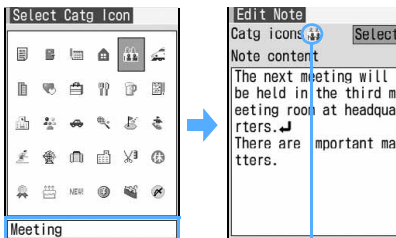
- When *Notepad* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, highlighting <New note> and opening FOMA terminal displays the notepad edit screen.

3 Enter the note data in *Note content* field (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters)



Inputting values calculated with Calculator:    in the character entry screen ▶ Make a calculation ▶ 

4 Select *Select* in *Catg icons* field ▶ Select an icon



Name of category icon

Selected icon

5 Press 

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

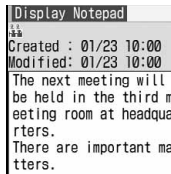
INFORMATION


Maintain the contents of notes in some other form (e.g. written copy). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

Checking notes

1   

2 Select a note to check






- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
- Pressing  allows you to edit the note.
- The creation date and time and last edit date and time of a note are automatically registered in *Created* and *Modified* respectively.
- When *Notepad* is set to *ON* in Edit by Slide, open FOMA terminal to display the notepad edit screen.

Deleting the note:   ▶ Select *Yes*

Composing mail from the note:  




INFORMATION

To delete 1 note from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to delete, press , and select *Delete note*. To delete all items, press , select *Delete all* and enter the terminal security code. To compose mail from the notepad list screen, highlight the note to use for message text, press  and select *Compose message*.

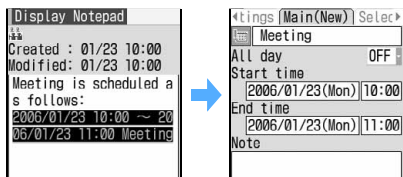
Saving schedules from notes

Date To

When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

1    ▶ Select the note written in Date To format

2 Select the description written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule



Date To format

Date To is effective when the entry of note has a string in the format below. All items are requisite.

Example

Start date	Start time	End date
2006/01/23	10:00	~ 2006/01/23

11:00	Meeting ↵
-------	-----------

End time Description A linefeed is regarded as the end of a description.

- represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time.
- Separate the start date, start time, “ ~ ”, end date, end time and description with half-sized spaces.
- The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only one digit for month, day, hour or minute, the preceding 0 can be skipped.

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch

By connecting the optional flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (including the stereo earphone set with flat switch) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch. Alternatively, the switch can be used for operating Music Player.

- It is not possible to make a video-phone call or PushTalk call by pressing the switch of the flat type earphone/microphone set.
- Use the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch. P27

- Do not wrap the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- To make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, *Control function* must be set to *Headset quick-dial* in Headset Button Control.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control.

- If more than one phone number has been registered, the first phone number will be dialed.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Button Control, Secret Mode must be activated before operating. Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call. While transferring or copying data between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps

- The ring tone is emitted from the point set by Headset Switch.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call

INFORMATION

If you receive a video-phone call, a substitute image set in the substitute image setting of Image Setting will be sent.

Operations when FOMA terminal is closed during a call made with a flat type earphone/microphone with switch connected ●P63

When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Setting the earphone/microphone switch operation

Headset Button Control

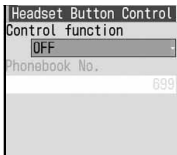
Set the receiver to make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch by assigning the phonebook No. You can also set the headset switch such that it activates Music Player when held down for over a second.



- Operation of Music Player ●P364

Default OFF


1     

2 Select **Control function** field ▶ 



- To activate Music Player:  ▶ Go to Step 5
- To cancel:  ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Select **Phonebook No.** field

4 Select the receiver ▶ 

5 Press 

INFORMATION

When the phonebook data of the Phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten in other data, or the Phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

Auto Answer

When using a flat type earphone/microphone with switch, this sets whether to receive an incoming call automatically.


When a voice or video-phone call is automatically received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during another call, this function is not activated.

- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).
- Receiving PushTalk call automatically ●P102

Default OFF

1     

2 Select **Auto answering** field ▶ 

- To cancel:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Select **Delayed time(sec)** field ▶ Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically

4 Press 

INFORMATION

When a video-phone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent and a video-phone call is automatically started.

When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.

When the setting of *Delayed time(sec)* is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not function.


Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone


Headset Switch

When connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone only through the earphone.

Default Headset + speaker

1     

2 Press 

- To hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker: 

INFORMATION

When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of this setting. Even when you set to *Headset only*, you will hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call.

Determining a service provider

NW Search Method

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to set the service provider manually or using automatic search. Determine a service provider when you select **Manual select**.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default Auto select NW

1  **8** **9** **5**

2 Select each item to set

Search method :

Sets how to retrieve a network.

- If you select **Auto select NW**, you cannot set **Manual select**.

Manual select :

Determines a service provider.

- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of October 2005).
- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot use the Pake-Houdai service.

3 Press

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

Default OFF

1  **8** **9** **7**


2 Press **1**

- To cancel: **2**

INFORMATION

Even when Quick Start-up is set to **ON**, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases.

- When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
- When the battery pack is replaced
- When 24 hours passes after the power was turned off

It may also take the normal time to start up after you turn the power off with any other screen than the stand-by display or while  is being displayed after power-on.

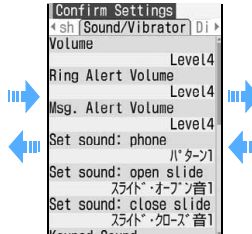
Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During PIM Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1  **8** **4** **2**

2 to confirm the settings



Resetting functions

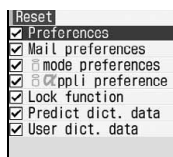
Reset

This resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. In addition, the following functions and data, though not mentioned in “Menu list”, are reset to the default settings:
 - When basic settings are selected:
 - **Normal** and **Type of animation**
 - Silent mode
 - Public mode (Driving mode)
 - Call cost icon
 - History of symbols and pictograms
 - When predict dictionary data is selected:
 - Data recorded using the input prediction function
 - When user dictionary data is selected:
 - Data recorded using Save Word


1  **8** **4** **5**

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the item



3 ▶ Select Yes

INFORMATION

If you reset i-mode Setting, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the stand-by display. When this happens, if the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the stand-by display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and returns the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i- ppli (except for Electronic money “Edu”)
 - Chara-den
 - Images in *Deco-Mail picture* and *Item* folders of *Image* (My Picture) in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Mail template • Mail group • Bookmark
 - Entered URL • URL history • Screen memo
 - Last visited URL
 - i-channel (Received info)
 - i- ppli • i- ppli display history
 - Phonebook data (including the PushTalk phonebook)
 - Received call history
 - Redial data • Voice memo • Chara-den
 - Data read by Bar Code Reader
 - ToruCa • Notepad • Alarm
 - Call duration • Saved word/fixed phrase
 - Registered USSD
 - Recorded answering message
 - Own Number data (except for *My phone number*)
 - Created folders/albums
 - Update of software (Reserved update)
 - Message R/F • i-mode Mail
 - Chat mail (including chat member settings and personal info setting)
 - SMS message
 - Recorded message (including the greeting)
 - Data in folders other than the *Preinstalled* and *Mail Attach Melody* folders of *Image/i-motion/Melody/My Documents* in Data Box
 - Schedule (including holidays registered/changed)

- The functions to be returned to the default by Reset*1 and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Criteria • Answer Machine
 - Camera • Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder • PIM Lock
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting
 - Data and Time Setting
 - External Device setting
 - NW Search Method
 - Arrival Call Act • Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - i- ppli (functions set from the software list)
 - Phonebook Search
 - Operation settings of *Image/i-motion/Melody/Chara-den/My Documents*
 - Data exchange settings by infrared communication
- *1 SMS settings other than *Delivered report* and the settings in Certificate Setting other than CA Certificate 1 to 9 will not return to the default.

- 1     ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select Yes

Data are deleted collectively during restart.


INFORMATION

The following data will not be deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.

- Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli and related data
- The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card
- Data communication setting set via a PC

To restore the default setting for each function, execute Reset.

If there are the data of large capacity, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation. If the data or i- ppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site “My D-style” (☛P296). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

If you perform Delete All Data, i-channel information will not be displayed in a ticker in the stand-by display. If the i-channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the latest information is received and you can display it in a ticker on the stand-by display.

MEMO

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal	Network Service	392
Using Voice Mail Service	Voice Mail	392
Using Call Waiting Service	Call Waiting	394
Using Call Forwarding Service	Call Forwarding	395
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance Call Blocking	397
Using Caller ID Request Service	Caller ID Request	398
Using Dual Network Service	Dual Network	398
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance	399
Using Service Dialing Number	Service Dialing Number	399
Setting Arrival Call Act	Arrival Call Act	399
Setting Remote Control	Remote Control	400
Using Multi Number	Multi Number	400
Registering new network services	Added Service (Register USSD)	401

This manual shows an overview of each network service. For details of operation or usage precaution, see “Network Services User’s Guide.”

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P392
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P394
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P395
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P397
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P398
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P398
English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P399
Multi Number	Required	Charged	P400

- When new network services are provided by DoCoMo, you can register them on the menu list. ◀P401
- For further information or subscription, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual listed.
- Network service cannot be started and stopped from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

INFORMATION

You can stop Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service and Call Forwarding Service from your FOMA terminal after these services are started. Stopping a service does not cancel the contract itself.

Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned off or in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.

You can access your voice messages from anywhere in Japan.

- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. The icon indicated on the stand-by display and the received call history alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.

- Up to 20 voice messages, each 3 minutes long can be recorded and they are stored up to 72 hours.
- Includes a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- When Voice Mail Service is active, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- Note that, though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Call Forwarding Service off, Voice Mail Service is not automatically activated.)
- When there is an incoming call if Voice Mail Service is active, the ring tone sounds. You can talk while the ring tone sounds. The ring tone duration (ringing time) can be changed. However, if you set the ringing time to 0 seconds, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center (▶P61). You can also forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center while on the phone. ▶P399
- Voice Mail Service can be accessed from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones, or DoCoMo mobile phones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- When a *User unset* call without caller ID notification is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. No voice message is recorded.

- When there is a video-phone call even if the Voice Mail service is active, the call is disconnected after elapsing the ringing time set in Voice Mail Service without connecting it to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

- Step 1** Activate the service
- Step 2** The caller leaves a voice message*1
- Step 3** Play back the voice message

*1 Callers can press **#** on their telephone to skip hearing the answering message and proceed directly to recording mode.

About Voice Mail Service fees

Use of Voice Mail Service requires the call charge for hearing voice messages, in addition to the monthly charge.

Activating Voice Mail Service

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**
- 2** **Select Yes**
 - Select **No** to activate Voice Mail Service by the set time without the ringing time setting.
- 3** **Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds)**
 - Voice Mail Service is activated.
 - To increase or decrease a number: **⬇**

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **3** ▶ **Select Yes**

Checking current settings

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **4** ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

From the screen for checking current settings, you can change the setting by the submenu.

- 1**: Activate Voice Mail Service
- 2**: Deactivate Voice Mail Service
- 3**: Set ringing time of Voice Mail Service

You can set only the ringing time by pressing **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **2** on the stand-by display.

When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. Forwarding the incoming call manually **☛P61**
The ringing time setting is still retained even after you deactivate Voice Mail Service.

Using voice prompts to set up Voice Mail Service

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **6**

2 **Select Yes** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts**

- To check if there is a new voice message or listen to a voice message, hang up the phone first.

Hearing voice messages

When there is a new voice message, **☎** with the number of messages is displayed.

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **5**

2 **Select Yes** ▶ **Follow the voice prompts**

INFORMATION

New voice messages can be also played quickly from the stand-by display. **☛P35**

The number displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include saved voice messages.

Checking for new voice messages

Check Messages

- 1** **MENU** **9** **1** **1** **7** ▶ **Select Yes**

When a new voice message arrives, **☎** with the number of messages are displayed on the stand-by display.

- If Tone/Vibration Message Notification is on, the notification melody will sound and the vibrator will be activated according to Vibrator Setting when a new voice message arrives.

Setting ring tone to sound when new voice messages arrive **Tone/Vibration Message Notification**

You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you perform Check Messages.

- If any message is found as a result of Check Messages, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- While turning Silent Mode on, even if Vibrator Setting is off, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- For voice messages left just after performing Check Messages, the alert tone may not sound.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, Public mode (Driving mode) or an alarm sound is active, the alert tone does not sound and the vibrator is not activated.

Default Voice Mail alert: ON
Notification melody: パターン 1 (Pattern 1)

- 1 **9** **1** **2**
- 2 **Select Voice Mail alert field** ▶ Press **1**
 - To disable the alert tone **2** ▶ Go to Step 5
- 3 **Select Notification melody field**
- 4 **Select a folder** ▶ **Select a melody**
The melody is set and the setting screen for Tone/Vibration Message Notification reappears.
 - Selecting, playing and checking the melody
▶ P126
- 5 Press

Erasing voice mail icon Hide Voice Mail Icon

- 1 **9** **1** **4** ▶ **Select Yes**
An icon that indicates the number of voice messages is erased.

Notifying incoming calls received while you were out of service area Missed Call Notice

When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of calls received with your FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS.

- The incoming calls are notified up to 5 per SMS.
- Notification is available even when setting to reject all SMS.
- No charge is required for setting or notification (receiving SMS).

Activating Missed Call Notice

- 1 **9** **1** **3** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**
- 2 **Select Yes or No**
 - Select *Yes* to notify incoming calls of which caller ID is notified.
 - Select *No* to notify all incoming calls.

Deactivating Missed Call Notice

- 1 **9** **1** **3** **2** ▶ **Select Yes**

Changing current settings

- 1 **9** **1** **3** **3** ▶ **Select Yes**

Using Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

- You can also place the current call on hold and call another party.
- When a *User unset* call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID and Call Waiting Service cannot be used.
- Call Waiting Service does not operate under the following conditions:
 - When you make a call to 104, 110, 117*1, 118 and 119
 - *1 When calling 117, you may hear beeps indicating another incoming call, but you cannot answer it (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history).
- When you are dialing or calling another party
- While you are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center as a user of the service, e.g. for replaying voice messages
- When you make a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, including 1411 (activating Voice Mail Service) and 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding Service)
- During a video-phone call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
- When a video-phone call is received during a voice call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- You cannot make a video-phone call during a call.

Activating Call Waiting Service

- 1 **9** **2** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

1 ► Select *Yes*

Checking current settings

1 ► Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival Call Act to *Answer*. Call Waiting Service is available regardless of whether you activate or deactivate Arrival Call Act.

If Arrival Call Act is set to other than *Answer*, an incoming call cannot be received even when you activate Call Waiting Service.

Other operations

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call:

① during a call

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- *Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties:
- When *Hold* is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

② when you finish talking to the other party

This ends the call and the ring tone sounds.

- To resume the talk to the other party on hold:

Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call:

① during a call

A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

②

You are connected to the new party.

Holding the current call and making another call:

① during a call ► Enter the phone number

- To make a call from the received call history:
- To make a call using the redial data:
- To make a call to the other party registered in the phonebook: ► Select the other party

②

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- *Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties:
- When *Hold* is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing . Press again to release the hold.
- To end the call on hold: during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

③ when you finish talking to the other party you called

The call ends.

- To resume the talk to the other party on hold:

INFORMATION

During multi-connection, you cannot receive incoming calls. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones on the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, is turned off or you cannot answer the call.

- The service is available anywhere within the FOMA service area nationwide.

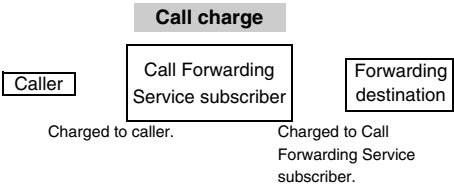
- Only one forwarding destination can be set.
- When Call Forwarding Service is on, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- When there is an incoming call if Call Forwarding Service is active, the ring tone sounds. You can talk while the ring tone sounds. The ring tone duration (ringing time) can be changed. If you set the ringing time to 0 seconds, the received call history will not be recorded.
- You can forward incoming calls (☛P61). You can also forward incoming calls while you are on the phone. ☛P399
- Note that though you can subscribe to both Call Forwarding Service and Voice Mail Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Voice Mail Service off, Call Forwarding Service is not automatically activated.)

- When a *User unset* call is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- Call Forwarding Service can be operated from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones, or DoCoMo mobile phones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings.
- Note that some cost plans cannot be used.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1** Set the forwarding destination phone number
- Step 2** Activate Call Forwarding Service
- Step 3** Calls come in to your FOMA terminal
- Step 4** Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

About Call Forwarding Service fees



- There is no call charge for setting the forwarding destination, activating and deactivating the service, and setting the ringing time.

Activating Call Forwarding Service

- 1** **9** **3** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**
- 2** **Select Yes** ▶ **Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits)**
 - 3-digit numbers such as 110, Quick Number and toll-free cannot be specified as forwarding destinations.

Setting forwarding destination phone numbers from the phonebook:

- 1** **while Ph.Book is indicated in the guide row**
 - To search by changing the search method:
 - When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, select a phone number where you want to forward to.

- 2** **Select the forwarding destination phone number**

Setting forwarding destination phone numbers from the redial data or received call history:

- 1** or **while Redial or Receive is displayed in the guide row**
- 2** **Select the forwarding destination phone number**

- 3** ▶ **Select Yes**
 - Select *No* to activate Call Forwarding Service by the set time without the ringing time setting.

- 4** **Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds)**
 - To increase or decrease a number:

INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off, calls are automatically transferred without the ring tone sounding. Also in this case, Call Forwarding Service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to destination. Transfer may be suspended when the forwarding destination requests to stop the service and DoCoMo determines this to be necessary. Note that specifying a PBX, beeper* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause misunderstanding by callers.

When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to forward the call to the forwarding phone number. Forwarding the incoming call manually ◀P61 Ringing time setting is still retained even after you change the forwarding phone number or deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

- 1** **9** **3** **2** ▶ **Select Yes**

Checking current settings

You check service activation/deactivation and the forwarding destination phone number.

- 1** **9** **3** **5** ▶ **Select Yes**

Changing forwarding destination

- 1 **9** **3** **3** ▶ Enter a phone number ▶
- 2 Select *Yes*

Setting forwarding guidance on/off

- 1 **1** **4** **2** **9** ▶ Follow the voice prompts

Setting Voice Mail Service to handle calls when forwarding destination is busy Fwd-Party-Busy Setting

- A subscription for Voice Mail Services is required.

- 1 **9** **3** **4** ▶ Select *Yes*
 - To cancel the handling by Voice Mail, select *No*.

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered. In case 30 phone numbers have already been registered, when trying to register another phone number to reject, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number on the list. Select *Yes* to delete the oldest phone number from the list and allow you to register a new phone number.

Registering the phone number of last call response as nuisance caller

- 1 **9** **4** **1** on the stand-by display after disconnecting a nuisance call ▶ Select *Yes*

The phone number of the latest call response is registered in the nuisance call list and is rejected in future. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls, etc. cannot be registered.

Registering the specified phone number as nuisance caller

- 1 **9** **4** **2** ▶ Select *Yes*
- 2 Enter the phone number to reject (up to 22 digits)

Setting phone numbers to reject from the phonebook:

- ① while *Ph.Book* is displayed in the guide row
 - To search by changing the search method:
 - When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, select a phone number to reject.

- ② Select the phone number to reject

Setting phone numbers to reject from the redial data or received call history:

- ① or while *Redial* or *Receive* is displayed in the guide row
- ② Select the phone number to reject

- 3 ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Nuisance Call Blocking Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls to be rejected
Voice Mail Service	The call rejection guidance is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The call rejection guidance is played.
Caller ID Request Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Public mode (Driving mode/power off)	The call rejection guidance is played. The Public mode (Driving mode/power off) guidance is not played.

You can register a *User unset* call on the nuisance call list.

You cannot check for or inquire about phone numbers registered on the nuisance call list. It is recommended that you make a note of the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers. International phone calls may not be registered on the nuisance call list.

When there is an incoming voice call from a number on the nuisance call list, no ring tone sounds and the call is not recorded on the received call history. And when there is an incoming video-phone call from a number on the nuisance call list, the video guidance is sent to the caller to indicate that the connection is unavailable and then the call is disconnected.

Deleting phone numbers from nuisance call list

You can delete only the last phone number registered.

- 1 **9** **4** **4**
 - To delete all phone numbers: **9** **4** **3**

- 2 **Select Yes**
The most recent registered phone number is deleted.

Checking the number of items in the nuisance call list

- 1 **9** **4** **5** ▶ **Select Yes**

Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID information. This helps you avoid problems caused by nuisance calls, etc.

- Caller ID Request Service operates when no caller ID is notified because of *User unset*. This service does not operate when no caller ID is notified because of *Not support* or *Payphone*.
- The caller is charged for calls while the guidance requesting the caller ID information plays.

Activating Caller ID Request Service

- 1 **9** **6** **1** ▶ **Select Yes**

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

- 1 **9** **6** **2** ▶ **Select Yes**

Checking current settings

- 1 **9** **6** **3** ▶ **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Caller ID Request Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls with caller ID unset
Voice Mail Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the call originates from a number on the nuisance caller list, the call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Public mode (Driving mode/power off)	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The Public mode (Driving mode/power off) guidance is not played.

When a *User unset* voice call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, no ring tone sounds and the call is not recorded on the received call history.

When there is an incoming video-phone call without the caller ID, the video guidance is sent to the caller to request the caller ID and then the call is disconnected.

Caller ID Request Service can be activated/deactivated only with FOMA terminal with your own UIM attached. Remote Control is not available.

Operation for activating/deactivating the service does not require call charge.

If Anonymous Caller of FOMA terminal is set as well as this service, this service is given priority.

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

Allows you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of FOMA terminal. With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal if you are inside the mova service area.

- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- Perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not in service.

Activating mova terminal

- 1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal
- 2 Follow the voice prompts

Activating FOMA terminal

The following procedure explains the method of switching Dual Network Service that is used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

- 1  **9** **9** **5** **1** on FOMA terminal
▶ Select *Yes*
- 2 Enter the network security code

Checking current settings

- 1  **9** **9** **5** **2** ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION


The mova terminal is available for the current FOMA i-mode service with some exceptions. Moreover, when using i-mode or various network services, FOMA and mova terminals are subject to their respective restrictions and precautions. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide."

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

This service allows you and other parties to hear the guidance in English when using various network services as well as when making and receiving calls.

- Guidance in Japanese and English is provided.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.

- 1  **9** **9** **4** **1** ▶ Select *Yes*
- 2 **1** or **2**

Japanese: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese.

English : Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English.

- 3 Select *Yes*

- 4 **1** to **3**

Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.

Japanese+English:

Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.

English+Japanese:

Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.

Checking current settings

- 1  **9** **9** **4** **2** ▶ Select *Yes*

Using Service Dialing Number

Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ or not appear depending on the UIM types. ◀P39

Calling DoCoMo for Repairs

- 1  **9** **9** **6** **1** ▶ Select *Yes*
Call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.

Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries

- 1  **9** **9** **6** **2** ▶ Select *Yes*
Call is made to DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting Arrival Call Act

Arrival Call Act

During a voice call or 64K data communication you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services.
- 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during a call, and 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during 64K data communication are rejected (handled according to *Call Rejection*).

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking

Default Answer

1 9 8 ▶ 1 to 4

Answer :

You can respond an incoming call or forward it to Voice Mail Service Center or to the forwarding destination registered in Call Forwarding Service.

Voice Mail :

Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service.

Call Forwarding :

Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are forwarded.

Call Rejection :

Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are rejected.

INFORMATION

Even if Arrival Call Act is set to any of the above, calls will be registered in the received call history.

To enable Arrival Call Act you selected, turn Arrival Act Setting on. However, when Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, Arrival Call Act is enabled regardless of Arrival Act Setting.

If you set this function to *Voice Mail* or *Call Forwarding* and turn Arrival Act Setting on, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is automatically available even while either of them is deactivated.

Enabling Arrival Call Act Arrival Act Setting

You activate or deactivate the response method selected by Arrival Call Act.

- The act selected in Arrival Call Act is performed with Call Waiting Service subscribed and activated regardless of settings of this function.

1 9 7 1 ▶ Select Yes

Disabling Arrival Call Act

1 9 7 2 ▶ Select Yes

Checking current settings

1 9 7 3 ▶ Select Yes

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones, or DoCoMo mobile phones.

Activating Remote Control

1 9 9 3 1 ▶ Select Yes

Deactivating Remote Control

1 9 9 3 2 ▶ Select Yes

Checking current settings

1 9 9 3 3 ▶ Select Yes

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (Additional Number 1, Additional Number 2) can be used besides Basic Number.

Setting the phone number

Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number.

Default **Basic Number:** 基本契約番号 (Basic Number)/My phone number
Additional No1: 付加番号 1 (Additional Number 1) /Not recorded
Additional No2: 付加番号 2 (Additional Number 2) /Not recorded
Multi number call: Disable

1 9 9 7 3 ▶ Select each item to set

Name :

Setting is available for each *Additional No1/ Additional No2* (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).

For *Basic Number*, content of the setting of Own Number is displayed.

Phone number :

Set subscribed Additional Number 1/ Additional Number 2.








Multi number call :

If set to **Enable**, you can make a call by selecting the number notified to the receiver from the submenu before making the call.

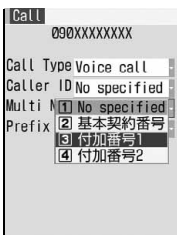
Making a call after selecting the number to be notified to the other party

You can select the number to notify the other party from the submenu before dialing.

1 Enter the phone number

- Make a call using Redial:   Highlight a party in the redial list  
- Make a call from Received Calls:   Highlight a party from received calls  

2 Select **Multi No. field** **Select the number to notify to the other party**



- When **No specified** is selected, the Multi Number is used.

3 **Select Yes**

Making the Multi Number setting

You can set a number of Multi Number as the default for making calls.

1 to

2 **Select Yes**

Checking Multi Number setting

1 **Select Yes**

INFORMATION

On the screen during the call receiving/dialing, the names corresponding to the multi numbers (Basic Number/Additional Number 1/Additional Number 2) are displayed.

In the redial data, the names corresponding to the multi numbers (Basic Number/Additional Number 1/Additional Number 2) were notified during the dialing are displayed.

In the received call history, the names corresponding to the received multiple numbers (Basic Number/Additional Number 1/Additional Number 2) are displayed.

If a call is made by the redial data, the number that was used before is dialed.

If a call is made from the received call history, the number that received before is dialed.

Setting the ring tone etc. for each additional number


Default Individual setting: OFF

1 or

2 **Select each item to set**

Individual setting :

Set whether to individually select the setting for incoming calls.

- To set **Ring alert** or **Show image**  P68

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you use the service by registering it in the menu.


- Up to 10 services can be registered.

Registering network services

1

2 **Highlight the number to record**

Register USSD	1/1
1	[Not recorded]
2	[Not recorded]
3	[Not recorded]
4	[Not recorded]
5	[Not recorded]
6	[Not recorded]
7	[Not recorded]
8	[Not recorded]
9	[Not recorded]
0	[Not recorded]

Changing registered contents: Highlight a number that is already in use 

3 **Select USSD code field** **Enter the USSD code**

- Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in **USSD code** field. Service code is the code used to make settings for the network service. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.

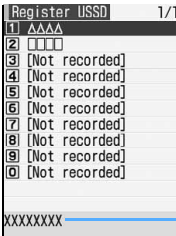
4 Select *Name* field ▶ Enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)

5 Press **Ⓜ**

Using registered network services

1 **Ⓜ** **9** **9** **1** ▶ **1** to **9** and **0**

The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center.

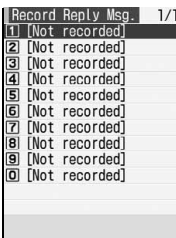


Registering reply messages

You can register messages corresponding to a code returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. The reply message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1 **Ⓜ** **9** **9** **2** ▶ **1** to **9** and **0**



Changing registered contents: Select a number that is already in use

2 Select *USSD code* field ▶ Enter the USSD code provided by DoCoMo

3 Select *Reply message* field ▶ Enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)

4 Press **Ⓜ**

Deleting registered services

1 **Ⓜ** **9** **9** **1**

- To delete the reply message:

Ⓜ **9** **9** **2**

2 Highlight the service to delete ▶ **Ⓜ** **1**

- To delete all services: **Ⓜ** **2**

3 Select *Yes*

Data Communication

Data communication	404
Flow of setup for data communication	405
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal	406
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)	407
Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software	408
Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software	418
AT command	427

Data communication

The data communication modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support the Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion" or "musea". For details on update, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication modes: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to a PC and making required settings.

Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion.

Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transfer/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. Use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.

Data transfer

It is the mode of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (herein after called as provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. It requires subscription and a monthly fee. The mopera U service allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service, however, allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details such as charges, visit the DoCoMo web site.

Setting dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of DoPa.
- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. See "FirstPassManual" in CD-ROM for details.

To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 or XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard Disk Capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which may use a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

APN (Access Point Name)
String to identify a provider or in-house LAN to connect with by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp". cid (Context Identifier)
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.
"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.

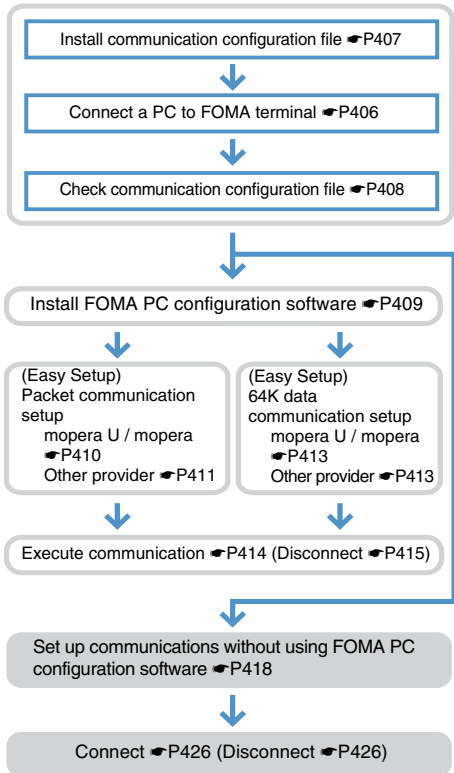
W-TCP

A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability. Administrator privilege

A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication in the communication mode.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

INFORMATION

Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

The operation procedure for Windows XP is mainly explained here. The screen display may differ under other OS. Also, Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are collectively shown as Windows 98.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempting by others user produces an error. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC in the communication mode for the first time. ●P407
- When FOMA terminal is connected with a PC in the miniSD mode for the first time, the OS installs the driver automatically. Installation of the communication configuration file on a PC is not required beforehand. However, the OS which support the miniSD mode are Windows XP and 2000 only.

Setting PC operation during USB connection

USB Mode Setting

Specify whether to perform data communication via PC or operate the data of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC at the time of connection of PC and FOMA terminal.

Default Communication mode

1

Communication mode :

In this mode, data communication is performed from a PC.

miniSD mode :

In this mode, the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is operated from a PC.

2 Select Yes

INFORMATION

Even when FOMA terminal is connected with PC, this function setting can be changed.


miniSD mode may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when FOMA terminal is connected.

miniSD mode cannot be set during a call, PushTalk, or i-mode.

Also, when the miniSD memory card is being operated from a PC, the mode may not be set to *Communication mode*.

When *miniSD mode* is set

- If you format the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC, using on FOMA terminal may be disabled. It is advisable to format the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal. ●P347


- USB Mode Setting is switched automatically to *communication mode* in about 90 seconds after the last access to the miniSD memory card without connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.
- Communication such as phone call or i-mode can not be used.
- The call indicator flashes.
- Click  on the task tray and click *USB 大容量記憶装置デバイス - ドライブ (E:) を安全に取り外します* (Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E: *1) to quit operation of the miniSD memory card.

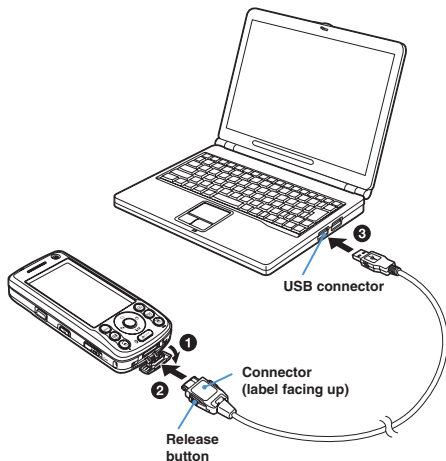
*1 The character to be assigned to a drive varies by the system of PC.

The miniSD memory card folder structure during operation from a PC. ●P340

Connecting using the FOMA USB cable

Connect by using the FOMA USB cable (optional).

- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector
 - When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected in the communication mode,  appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
 - If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC in the communication mode before installing the communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that a FOMA USB cable has been inserted, request to install a driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click *キャンセル* (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



Removing FOMA USB cable

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal and pull it out. Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC.

Connecting while charging

FOMA terminal can be connected using a data communication adapter D01 (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

INFORMATION

Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. It may cause the misoperations, failure of PC or FOMA terminal, or loss of data.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform communication in the communication mode.

- When FOMA terminal is connected with PC in the miniSD mode, installation of the communication configuration file is not required.

Installing the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P406

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC
 - Make sure to connect FOMA terminal to a PC after performing Steps 1 to 3.
- 2 Click *スタート (Start)* and *ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)* ▶ Enter "*<CD-ROM drive letter>:\USBDRIVE\¥D902iin.exe*" in *名前 (Name)* ▶ Click *OK*
- 3 Click *はい (Yes)*

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D902i to a PC is displayed.
- 4 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC

A progress screen for installation is displayed and automatically completed.

 - Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on.
 - Check type and name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

Installation may take a few minutes.

When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.

If the PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click **スタート, コントロールパネル (Control Panel), パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance) icon and システム (System) icon**

システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen is displayed.

For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

- ① Click **スタート, 設定 (Setting) and コントロールパネル**
- ② **Double-click システム icon**

- 2 Click **ハードウェア (Hardware) tab ▶ デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)**
デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

For Windows Me, 98: Click デバイスマネージャ tab

- 3 **Double-click each device ▶ Check the name of the installed device**

Check that the name of all devices installed are shown.

Device type	Device name
Universal Serial Bus Controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• FOMA D902i • FOMA D902i Command*1 • FOMA D902i Modem*1 • FOMA D902i OBEX*1
Port (COM/LPT) or (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D902i Command Port (COMx)*2 • FOMA D902i OBEX Port (COMx)*2
Modem	FOMA D902i

*1 Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.

*2 COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P406

Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click **スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs) icon**

プログラムの追加と削除 screen is displayed.

For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

- ① Click **スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル**
- ② **Double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications) icon**

- 2 Select **FOMA D902i USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)**

- 3 **Check the name of program, and click はい**

The uninstall process of the configuration software starts.

- 4 Click **OK**

INFORMATION

When the installation fails or **FOMA D902i USB** is not displayed on the screen of Step 1, insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC, click **スタート**, and **ファイル名を指定して実行**. Then enter <CD-ROM drive letter>:\\$USBDRIVE¥D902iin.exe and click **OK** to execute directly and uninstall the communication configuration file.

When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the environment such as PC configuration. In this case, the FOMA USB cable (optional) should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and W-TCP setup can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings using W-TCP setup is required to enable full use of communication performance.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to "mopera", and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to "mopera U", but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 1.00), if already installed, before installing FOMA PC configuration software (version 2.00) from attached CD-ROM. You can display the version from **メニュー** (Menu) **バージョン情報** (Version information) of FOMA PC configuration software.
- When "W-TCP environment configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "W-TCP configuration software") and "FOMA data communication configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "FOMA data communication configuration software") provided with FOMA terminals which were released before this model are installed, uninstall these software in advance.
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P406

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC
- 2 Click **スタート** and **ファイル名を指定して実行** ▶ Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>: ¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.exe" in **名前** ▶ Click **OK**

3 Click **次へ** (Next)

FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

4 Read the content of the screen and click **はい** / if you agree to the agreement

5 Check that **タスクトレイに常駐する** (Reside in task tray) is selected and click **次へ**

W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup) resides in the task tray after the setup. ●P415

- Residing in task tray is the recommended setting for optimum control of "W-TCP communication" setting and cancellation.
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



6 Check the installation path and click **次へ**

7 Check the name of the program folder and click **次へ**



8 Click **完了** (Done)

The "FOMA PC configuration software" is started up.
• Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

If "FOMA PC configuration software", old "W-TCP configuration software", and old "FOMA data communication configuration software" are already installed, the screen to cancel the installation appears. Click **OK** to uninstall these softwares and then install "FOMA PC configuration software".

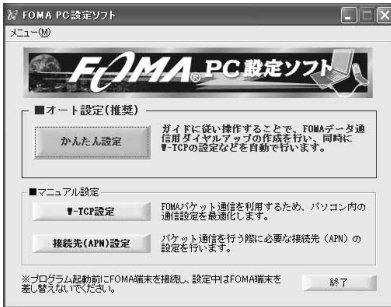
When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, follow the instruction shown on the screen and click はい or はいえ .

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Example For Windows XP

- Click **スタート, すべてのプログラム (All programs) (プログラム (Programs) for other than Windows XP), FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) and FOMA PC設定ソフト**

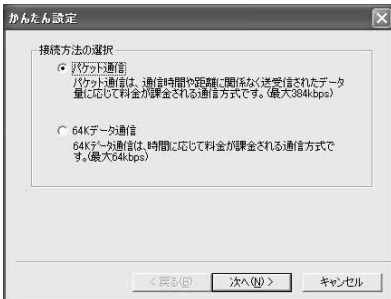
The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



Using mopera U / mopera

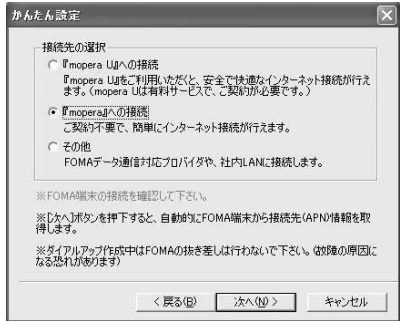
- Using other providers ●P411

- Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click **かんたん設定 (Easy setup)**
- Select **パケット通信 (Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ**



- Select 『**mopera U**』への**接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) ▶ Click 次へ**

- mopera U is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement is displayed.



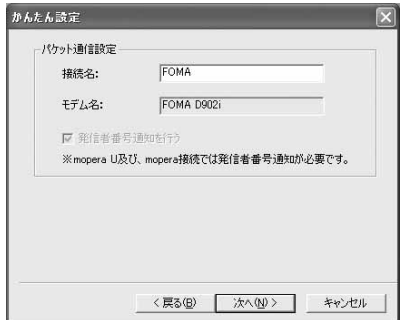
- Click **OK on FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings) screen**

接続先 (APN) 情報 (Dialup connection (APN) information) is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

- Enter any connection name ▶ Click **次へ**

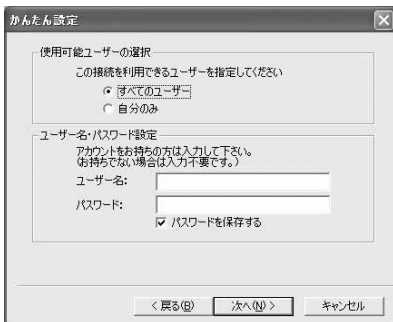
- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | < > " ' "



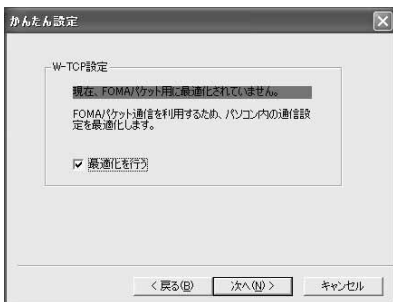
- Click **次へ**

- The entry of **ユーザー名 (User name) or パスワード (Password) is not required.**
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.

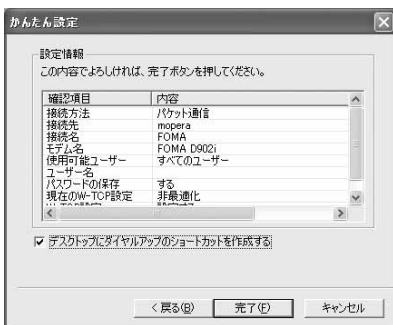


7 Check that **最適化を行う (Optimize)** is selected and click **次へ**

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click **完了**



9 Click **OK**

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

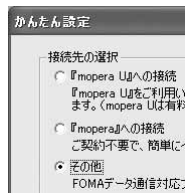
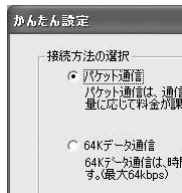
- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ➡P414

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ➡P410

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup" ➡P410

- Select **その他 (Others)** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click **接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))**

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' `



Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click **詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info)** to display **IP アドレス (IP address)** and **ネームサーバー (Name server)** setting screens.

When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to, or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

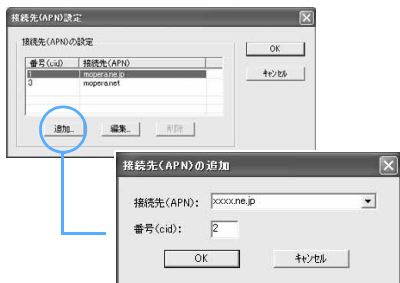
3 Set dialup connection (APN)

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" for cid3. Register dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 and 4 to 10.

① Click **追加 (Add)**

接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen is displayed.

- ② Enter a dialup connection name (APN), which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider, in the **接続先 (APN) (Dialup connection (APN))** correctly ▶ Click **OK**
- The display returns to **接続先 (APN) 設定** screen.
- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered in the **接続先 (APN)**.



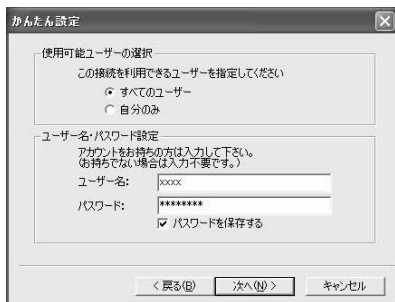
4 Click **OK**

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. **接続先 (APN)** set in Step 3 is displayed in **接続先 (APN) の選択** (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection name (APN) of **接続先 (APN) の選択** and click **次へ**

6 Enter the user name in **ユーザー名** and the password in **パスワード** ▶ Click **次へ**

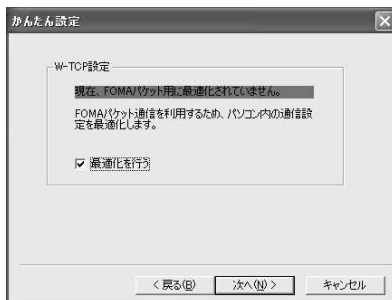
- Enter the user name and password given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



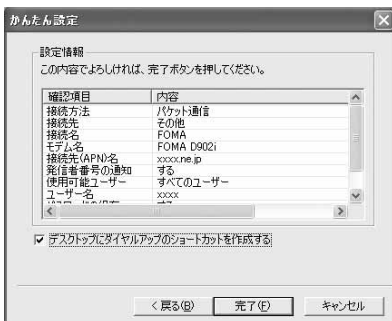
7 Check that **最適化を行う** is selected and click **次へ**

This optimizes the W-TCP setup required for packet communication.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click **完了**



9 Click **OK**

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP Setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀ P414

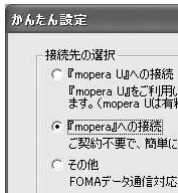
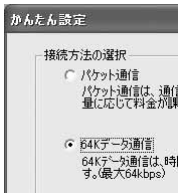
Example For Windows XP

Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ◀P413

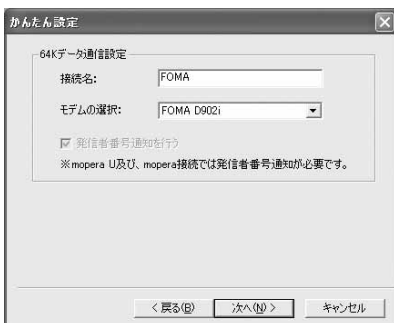
1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P410

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



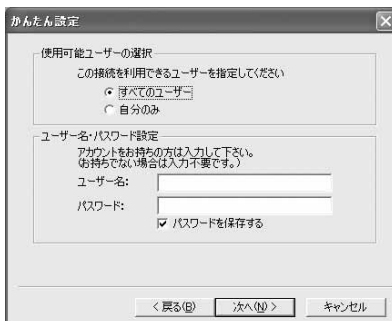
2 Enter any connection name and select the modem ▶ Click 次へ

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Check that **FOMA D902i** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).

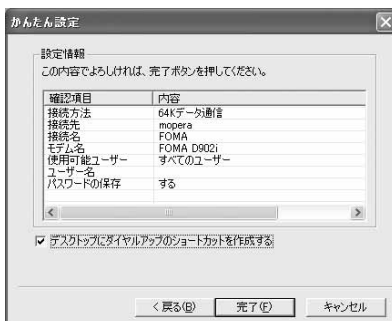


3 Click 次へ

- The entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

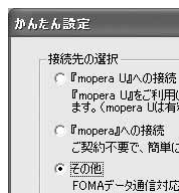
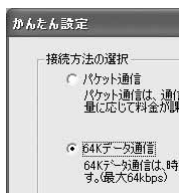
- Performing communication ◀P414

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ◀P413

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U / mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P410

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Register the following items:
 - 接続名 : Optional
 - モデムの選択 : FOMA D902i
 - 電話番号 (Phone number):

Enter based on provider information.

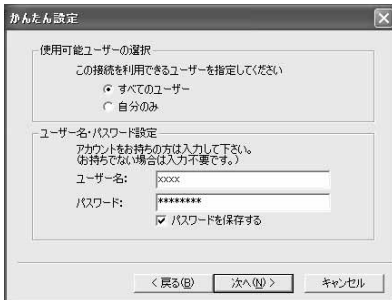


Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

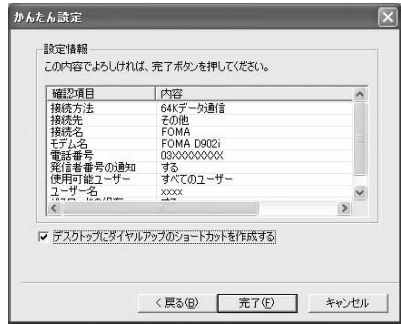
Click 詳細情報の設定 to display IP アドレス and ネームサーバー setting screens. When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to, or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

3 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user name or password given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P414

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P406

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



Data communication starts.

- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from スタート menu.

Starting from スタート menu of Windows XP:

- ① Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリー (Accessories), 通信 (Communication), and ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)

- ② Double-click the connection icon

Starting from Start menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98:

- ① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリー, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections) (ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup network) for Me/98)
- ② Double-click the connection icon

3 Establish a connection

- When mopera U / mopera is selected, the entry of ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password, and then click **ダイヤル** (接続 for Me or 98) according to the input instruction information.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click **OK**.



2 Click 切断 (Disconnect)



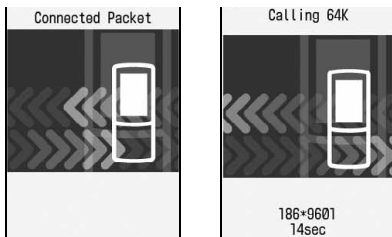
Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of “W-TCP setup” and canceling optimization is explained here.

The “W-TCP setup” is a “TCP parameter tuning tool” for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal, this communication set up is required.

INFORMATION

FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.

Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.

When connecting FOMA terminal other than D902i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:


1 Click in the task tray

- Double-click for Windows Me and 98.

For Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

1 Start **FOMA PC 設定ソフト** ▶ Click **W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)** ▶ P410

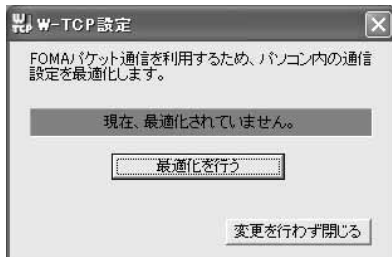
Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Perform the following:

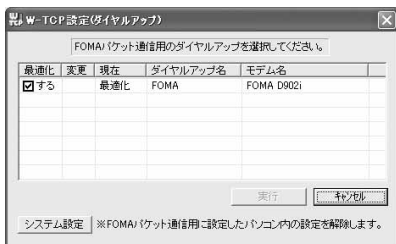
When the system has not been optimized:
① Click **最適化を行う** on the **W-TCP setting screen**

② **Select the dialup connection to be optimized** ▶ Click **実行 (Execute)**

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



When the system has been optimized:
The following screen is displayed. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



Deactivating optimization:

- 1 Click **システム設定 (System setting) in W-TCP設定 (ダイヤルアップ) (Set W-TCP (dialup)) screen**
The W-TCP setting screen is displayed.
- 2 Click **最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)**

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Under Windows 2000, Me or 98

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト ▶ Click W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup) ◀ P410

Starting from the task tray: Click

2 Perform the following:

When the system setting that has not been optimized: Click **最適化を行う**

When the system setting that has been optimized is canceled: Click **最適化を解除する**

3 Reboot the PC, following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connection (APN)

Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication. Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀ P407
- For dialup connection (APN) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定 ◀ P410

FOMA 端末設定取得 screen is displayed.

2 Click OK

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



Adding dialup connections (APN): Click **追加**

Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APN): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **編集 (Edit)**

Deleting registered dialup connection (APN): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click **削除 (Delete)**

- The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid3 and clicking **削除** do not actually delete, but return to "mopera.net".)

Saving settings as file: Click **ファイル (File)** and **名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)** or **上書き保存 (Overwrite)**

- Save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

Importing settings from file: Click **ファイル and 開く (Open)**

- Import settings from a file to edit dialup connection (APN) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal: Click **ファイル and FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import setting from FOMA terminal)**

Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) setting registered.

Writing dialup connection (APN)

information to FOMA terminal: Click *FOMA* 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write setting to FOMA terminal)

The dialup connection (APN) setting displayed is written to FOMA terminal.

Creating dialup connections:

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click** *ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)*
FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal) screen is displayed.
- ② **Click** *はい*
When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal, *パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)* screen is displayed.
- ③ **Enter any connection name ▶ Click** *アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Set account and password)*
- ④ **Enter the user name in** *ユーザー名 and the password in* *パスワード ▶ Click* *OK*
 - Not required for mopera U / mopera.
 - When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection.
 - Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click *詳細情報の設定* in *パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成* screen, register the required information and click *OK*.
- ⑤ **Click** *FOMA* 端末へ設定を書き込む
A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑥ **Click** *はい*

INFORMATION

Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).


To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN in FOMA terminal.

When FOMA terminal is detected as number larger than COM20 by checking the communication configuration file, APN information cannot be obtained or written during an APN setting. Set the information using "Hyper Terminal" that comes with Windows in that case. ●P418

Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P406

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click *常駐させない* (Do not reside), to cancel the resident of W-TCP setup.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

1 Click *スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除 icon*

For Windows 2000, Me, 98:

- ① **Click** *スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル*
- ② **Double-click** *アプリケーションの追加と削除 icon*

2 Select *NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software)* ▶ **Click** *変更と削除*

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click *はい*

The uninstall process of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

Canceling W-TCP optimization:

The confirmation screen is displayed when W-TCP has been optimized.

- Usually, click *はい* and deactivate the optimization.
- Canceling of W-TCP optimization is performed after the PC is rebooted.

4 Click *OK*

Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Setting operation procedures

Install the communication configuration file ◀P407
Connect a PC to FOMA terminal ▶P406



Set dialup connection (APN)
(For 64K data communication and packet communication via mopera U / mopera, dialup connection does not require this setting.)



Set to show/hide caller ID ▶P419 (Set as required.)



Other settings (AT commands) ▶P427
(Set as required.)



Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	Dialup connection → TCP/IP	
Windows XP		P420	P421
Windows 2000		P422	P423
Windows Me		P424	P425
Windows 98		P426	P426

• For details settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.



Connect ▶P426 (Disconnect ▶P426)

Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1 : mopera.ne.jp
cid3 : mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10 : not recorded

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC ▶P406

2 Click **スタート**, **すべてのプログラム**, **アクセサリ**, **通信** ▶ Click **ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)**. (And double-click **Hypertrm** icon under Windows 98)

• For other than Windows XP, **プログラム** is displayed for **すべてのプログラム**.

3 Enter any connection name in **名前** ▶ Click **OK**



4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for **電話番号**, select **FOMA D902i** from **接続方法 (Connection procedure)** ▶ Click **OK**

• Since **市外局番 (Area code)** does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.

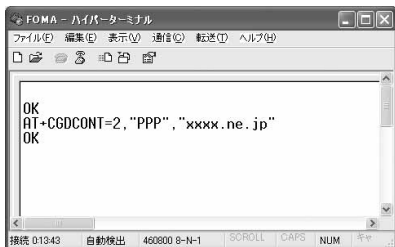


5 Click **キャンセル**, when the connection screen is displayed

6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) ▶ Press



- Enter in the format “AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,” “PPP”, “APN”.
- <cid>** : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.
“PPP” : Enter “PPP”.
“APN” : Enter the dialup connection name (APN) in quotation marks.



If **OK** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT= :

Reset all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default setting for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid> :

Reset the specified cid

Checking dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT + CGDCONT?

- For details ◀P432

When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1

- For details ◀P430

7 Check that **OK** is displayed and click ファイル, ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End Hyper Terminal)

- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named “XXX”?) is displayed. Click いいえ.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register dialup connection (APN) for cid2, 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.

- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be “show” for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ◀P418

2 Set show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format “AT * DGPIR=<n>”.

AT * DGPIR=1 :

When packet communication connection is being established, “184” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2 :

When packet communication connection is being established, “186” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

3 Check that **OK** is displayed and click ファイル, ハイパーターミナルの終了

- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? is displayed. Click いいえ.

Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186 (show)” or “184 (hide)” to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT * DGPIR command	Not set	Hide	Show
Dialup network setting (<cid>=1)			
* 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter "AT * DGPIR=0".

Setting for Windows XP

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

1 Click **スタート**, **すべてのプログラム**, **アクセサリ**, **通信** and **ネットワーク接続**
ネットワーク接続 screen is displayed.

2 Click **新しい接続を作成する** (Create new connection) in **ネットワークタスク** (Network task)
新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen is displayed.

3 Click **次へ**
A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

4 Select **インターネットに接続する** (Connect to Internet) ▶ Click **次へ**
The setup screen is displayed.

5 Select **接続を手動でセットアップする** (Set up connection manually) ▶ Click **次へ**
The Internet connection screen is displayed.

6 Select **ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する** (Use dialup modem to connect) ▶ Click **次へ**

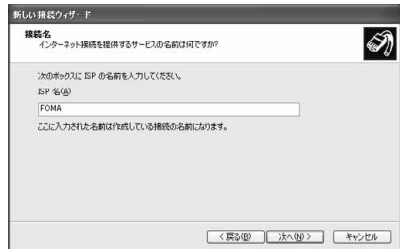
- The device selection screen is displayed.
- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 Select **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)*1** (Modem: FOMA D902i (COMx)) ▶ Click **次へ**

- *1 COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Check that only **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)** is selected.



8 Enter any connection name in **ISP名** (ISP name) ▶ Click **次へ**



9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in **電話番号** ▶ Click **次へ**

For packet communication:

- Enter " * 99 * * * <cid>#".
- For <cid>, enter the cid number, registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". " * 99 * * * 3#" for mopera U and " * 99 * * * 1#" for mopera.

For 64K data communication:

- Enter the dialup connection phone number.
- " * 8701" for mopera U and " * 9601" for mopera.



- 10 Enter the user name in **ユーザー名**, the password in **パスワード** and **パスワードの確認入力** (Check and enter password) ▶
 ▶ Set the other items as shown below ▶
Click 次へ

- When the access point is mopera U / mopera, the entry of **ユーザー名**, **パスワード** and **パスワードの確認入力** is not required. Set each items as shown and click **次へ**.



- 11 Click **完了**

- 12 Check the settings and click **キャンセル**
- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Select the created dialup connection icon ▶
 Click **ファイル** and **プロパティ** (Properties)



- 2 Check the setting of each item in **全般** (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, select **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)*1** in **接続方法**.
 *1 **COMx** varies by PC to be used.
- Check that only **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)** is selected.
- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dial information).

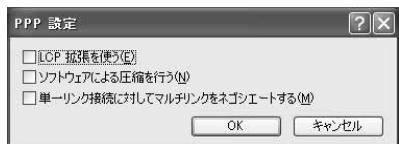


- 3 Click **ネットワーク** (Network) tab ▶
 Check the setting of each item

- Set **PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet** as **呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only **インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)** (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in **この接続は次の項目を使用します** (Use these items for this connection). Since **QoSパケットスケジューラ** (QoS packet scheduler) settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.



- 4 Click **設定**
- 5 Uncheck () all items and click **OK**
- The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



- 6 Click **OK**

Setting for Windows 2000

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

- 1 Click **スタート、プログラム、アクセサリ、通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続**

ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen is displayed.

- 2 Double-click **新しい接続の作成 icon**
所在地情報 (Location information) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed for the first time you double-click **新しい接続の作成 icon**. From the second time, go to Step 5.

- 3 Enter the number in **市外局番 (Area code)**
▶ Click **OK**

電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options) screen is displayed.

- 4 Click **OK**
ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen is displayed.

- 5 Click **次へ**
A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

- 6 Select **インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)** ▶ Click **次へ**

The Internet connection Wizard's start screen is displayed.

- 7 Select **インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set the Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))** ▶ Click **次へ**

Internet connection setting selection screen is displayed.

- 8 Select **電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)** ▶ Click **次へ**

The modem selection screen is displayed.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

- 9 Check that **インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to FOMA D902i and click 次へ**

The Internet account connection information screen is displayed.

- If **FOMA D902i** is not set, set **FOMA D902i**.

- 10 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in **電話番号** ▶ Click **詳細設定 (Detailed settings)**

- Uncheck () **市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)**.

For packet communication:

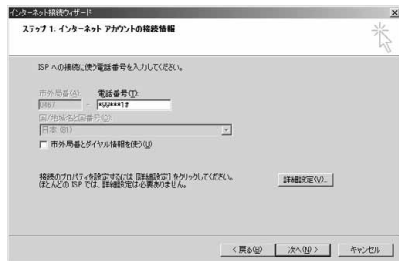
Enter "*** 99 * * * <cid>#**".

- For **<cid>**, enter the cid number registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". "*** 99 * * * 3#**" for mopera U and "*** 99 * * * 1#**" for mopera.

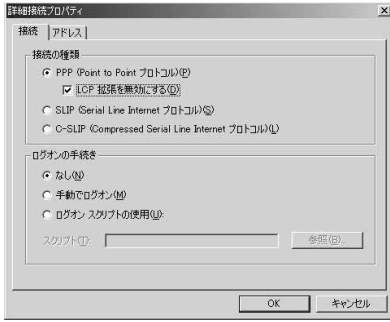
For 64K data communication:

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

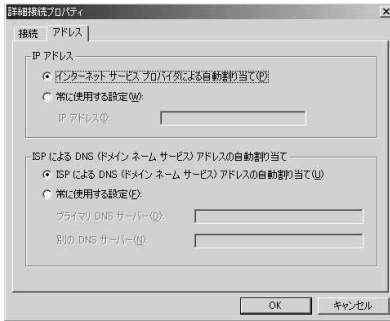
- "*** 8701**" for mopera U and "*** 9601**" for mopera.



11 Set each item in 接続 tab as shown below



12 Click アドレス (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below



13 Click OK

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

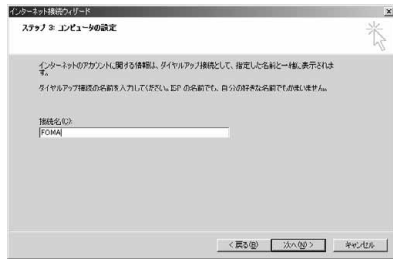
14 Click 次へ

The Internet account logon information screen is displayed.

15 Enter the user name in ユーザー名 and the password in パスワード ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required. When a confirmation screen for no entry is displayed, click はい.

16 Enter any connection name in 接続名 ▶ Click 次へ



17 Select はい ▶ Click 次へ



18 Click 完了

ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ



2 Check the setting of each item in 全般 tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)*1** in **接続の方法**.

When the modem is changed, all items in **電話番号** is initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.

*1 **COMx** varies by PC to be used.

- Check that only **モデム - FOMA D902i (COMx)** is selected.
- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う**.



3 Click ネットワーク tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set **PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類**.
- Select only **インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)** for component.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck all items () and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting for Windows Me

Setting dialup connection

1 Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ダイヤルアップネットワーク

ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ

(Welcome to dialup network) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed when **ダイヤルアップネットワーク** is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click 次へ

ダイヤルアップネットワーク screen is displayed.

3 Double-click 新しい接続 (New connection) icon

4 Enter any connection name in 接続名 ▶ Click 次へ

- Check that **FOMA D902i** is set for **モデムの選択**. If it is not set, set **FOMA D902i**.



5 Enter the dialup connection number (one-byte) ▶ Click 次へ

For packet communication:

Enter "*** 99 * * * <cid> #**".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". "*** 99 * * * 3#**" for mopera U and "*** 99 * * * 1#**" for mopera.

For 64K data communication:

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- “* 8701” for mopera U and “* 9601” for mopera.
- 市外局番 does not need to be entered.



- 6 Check the name of the dialup connection
▶ Click 完了

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Select the created dialup connection icon
▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ



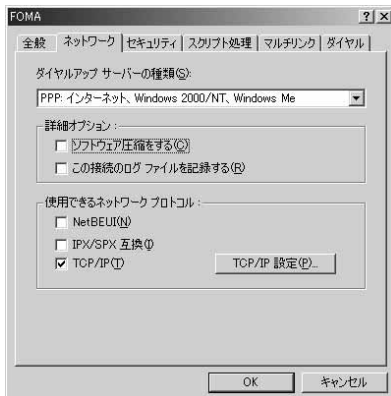
- 2 Check the setting of each item in 全般 tab

- Uncheck () 市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う (Use area code and dial properties).
- Check that *FOMA D902i* is set for 接続方法. If it is not set, set *FOMA D902i*.



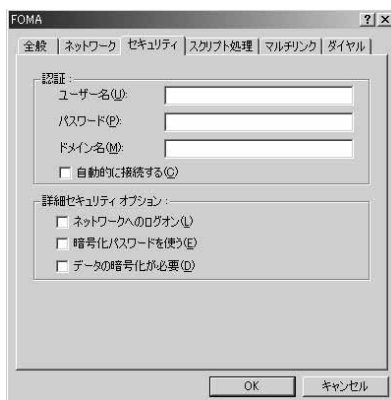
- 3 Click ネットワーク tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Dialup server type) to PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me).
- Uncheck () all 詳細オプション.
- Select only TCP/IP for 使用できるネットワークプロトコル (Available protocol).



- 4 Click セキュリティ (Security) tab ▶ Enter the user name in ユーザー名, the password in パスワード and click OK

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required.



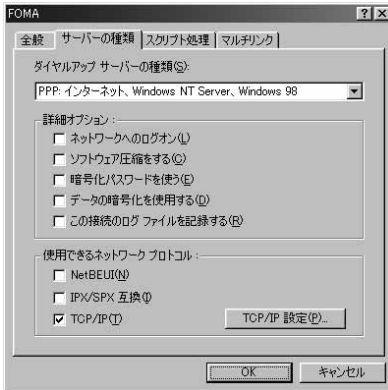
Setting for Windows 98

Setting dialup connection

The operation procedures are the same as for Windows Me. ◀P424

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Follow steps 1 to 2 of "Setting TCP/IP protocol" of "Setting for Windows Me" ◀P425
- 2 Click **サーバーの種類 (Server type) tab** ▶
Check the setting of each item
 - Set **ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** to **PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98** (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98).
 - Select only **TCP/IP** for **使用できるネットワークプロトコル**.



3 Click **OK**

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Connect FOMA terminal to a PC** ◀P406
- 2 Click **スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続**
ネットワーク接続 screen is displayed.
 - Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click **スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (ダイヤルアップネットワーク for Me and 98)**.

3 **Double-click the dialup connection icon**

4 **Check each item and click **ダイヤル (Dial)****

- Under the Windows Me and 98, check each item and click **接続**.
- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in **ダイヤル** or **電話番号**.
- When the dialup connection is **mopera U / mopera**, the entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.



Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- 1 Click **切断** in the task tray
The connection screen is displayed.
 - Double-click for Windows Me and 98.
- 2 Click **切断**



AT command


AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.

FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.


About the AT command

AT command input format

“AT” must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 1# 

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character to the character just before  must be entered on a single line. Up to 160 characters (including “AT”) can be entered in each line.

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode.


Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- Offline mode
FOMA terminal in stand-by status. FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- Online data mode
FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver’s modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- Online command mode
AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either one of the following procedures:

- Enter the “+++” command or the code set in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in “AT&D1”.

To switch from the online command mode to online data mode, enter “ATO .

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “/” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT command that can be used via the FOMA D902i Modem Port is described in this list.

*1 : Entering AT & F command restores the default setting.

*2 : Stores the command setting into FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT%V	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Verx.xx”.						
ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&C [n]	Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]	Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]	Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than “n=0”. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]	Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after you disconnect the communication.						
ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&S [n]	Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the circuit is connected.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]	Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT * DANTE	Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ * DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside of the service area. m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DANTE	Display	AT * DANTE?	Test	AT * DANTE=?	
AT * DGANSM=n	Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off (default). n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGANSM=0	Display	AT * DGANSM?	Test	AT * DGANSM=?	
AT * DGAPL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT * DGAPL?	Test	AT * DGAPL=?	
AT * DGARL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGARL=0,1	Display	AT * DGARL?	Test	AT * DGARL=?	

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>	Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. <i>n</i> =0: The APN is used as is when a packet communication is established. (default) <i>n</i> =1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. <i>n</i> =2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGPIR=0	Display	AT * DGPIR?	Test	AT * DGPIR=?	
AT * DRPW	Shows the level of power reception in the format of " * DRPW: <i>m</i> ", where the value of <i>m</i> ranges from 0 to 75.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT * DRPW=?	
+++	Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.						
ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None	
AT+CEER	Shows a reason of the disconnected communication. ◀P432						
ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?	
AT+CGDCONT	Specifies the APN for packet communication. ◀P432						
AT+CGEQMIN	Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ◀P432						
AT+CGEQREQ	Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ◀P433						
AT+CGMR	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?	
AT+CGREG=[<i>n</i>]	Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. <i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted). <i>n</i> =1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG: <i>n</i> , <i>stat</i> ". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN	Shows the manufacturer's serial number of FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?	
AT+CLIP=[<i>n</i>]	Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. <i>n</i> =0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) <i>n</i> =1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ". <i>m</i> =0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. <i>m</i> =1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. <i>m</i> =2: Unknown						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR=[<i>n</i>]	Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. <i>n</i> =0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted). <i>n</i> =1: Not notified. <i>n</i> =2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ". <i>m</i> =0: CLIR is not activated (caller ID always notified). <i>m</i> =1: CLIR is activated (caller ID always not notified). <i>m</i> =2: Unknown <i>m</i> =3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified"). <i>m</i> =4: CLIR temporary mode (default for "notified").						
ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?	
AT+CMEE=[<i>n</i>]	Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ◀P432 <i>n</i> =0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) <i>n</i> =1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=numbers) <i>n</i> =2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=characters)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM	Shows the Own Number data of FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM:,"number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".						
ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?	
AT+CR=[<i>n</i>]	Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before <i>CONNECT</i> is displayed, during line connection. <i>n</i> =0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). <i>n</i> =1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CRIC=[n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of "CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication ... +CRING:GPRS "PPP"... "mopera.ne.jp" 64K data communication...+CRING:SYNC					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRIC=0	Display	AT+CRIC=?	Test	AT+CRIC=?
AT+CREG=[n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG=?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC=[n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2, 2" is assumed.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC=?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46=[22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46=?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For an incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed					
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. • Packet communication: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). • 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone-number". • Redialing: Enter in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".					
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters received from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH		Disconnects communication.					
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0:Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1:Shows FOMA terminal name. n=2:Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO		Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.					
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test	None

Command	Description & Parameter				
ATX [n]	Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATX1	Display None	Test None	None
ATZ	Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.				
	ex.	Enter ATZ	Display None	Test None	None
ATS0= [n]	Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS0=0	Display ATS0?	Test None	None
ATS2= [n]	Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS2=43	Display ATS2?	Test None	None
ATS3= [13]	Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string. It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code. (The setting is not changeable.)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS3=13	Display ATS3?	Test None	None
ATS4= [10]	Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character. It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text. (The setting is not changeable)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS4=10	Display ATS4?	Test None	None
ATS5= [8]	Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command. (The setting is not changeable.)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS5=8	Display ATS5?	Test None	None
ATS6= [n]	Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: Default and when parameter omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS6=5	Display ATS6?	Test None	None
ATS7= [n]	Specifies the waiting time after dialing till connection is established for the packet or 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 seconds. (60: Default and when parameter omitted)				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS7=60	Display ATS7?	Test None	None
ATS8= [n]	Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: Default 0: When parameter is omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS8=3	Display ATS8?	Test None	None
ATS10= [n]	Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: Default and when parameter omitted)				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS10=1	Display ATS10?	Test None	None
ATS30= [n]	Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS30=0	Display ATS30?	Test None	None
ATS103= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS103=0	Display ATS103?	Test None	None
ATS104= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS104=0	Display ATS104?	Test None	None
AT¥S	Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.				
	ex.	Enter AT¥S	Display None	Test None	None
AT¥V [n]	Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT¥V0	Display None	Test None	None

Disconnection reason list

Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	Communication is impossible because the remote device is busy calling.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" for cid 3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT ?

Displays the current setting values.

Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]

Parameter description

<cid> : 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1, "mopera.net" for cid 3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
- Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
- Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN ?

Displays the current settings.

Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

“mopera.ne.jp” (APN) is registered in cid 1, and “mopera.net” for cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQREQ ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

Extended result code

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal - PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

When the ATV [n] command (P430) is set to “n=1”, the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to “n=0”, the result code is displayed in the numeric display. To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB cable (optional).

Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverJD	Connected via 64K data communication
2	AV32K	AV (video-phone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (video-phone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

Display example of result codes

When "ATX 0" is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT \forall V command (☛P431), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#  
CONNECT ("1" in numeric display)
```

When "ATX 1" is set

- When "ATX1", "AT \forall V0" is set (default)
Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#  
CONNECT 460800 ("1 21" in numeric display)
```

- When "ATX1", "AT \forall V1" is set*1

The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows:

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 1#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET  
mopera.ne.jp/64/384 ("1 21 5" in numeric display)
```

Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

*1 When "ATX1" and "AT \forall V1" are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only "AT \forall V0" be used.

Character Entry

Entering characters	436
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method	5-touch Input Method 437
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 441
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 442
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 442
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 442
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 443
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 444

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are "5-touch Input Method" and "Slot Input Method" for entering characters. In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and at each press, the character switches. ◀P451 In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ◀P443
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

: Available x : Unavailable - : No character

Input method \ Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—		—	
Katakana				x
Alphabet				x
Numeric				x
Symbols				
Pictograms	—		—	


- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.

Character entry screen


There are 2 types of character entry methods: "full-screen entry" and "in-line entry".

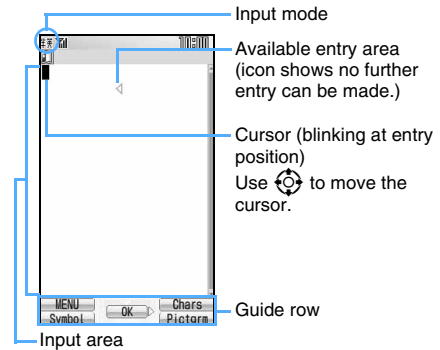
- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- When pasted characters or fixed phrases are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

INFORMATION






In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing  is referred to as "enter".

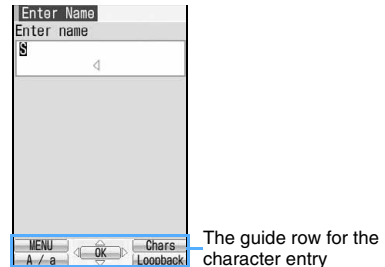
Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press  to display the full-screen entry area.




In-line entry

Highlight the entry field and press  to ,  and  to enable character entry directly. In hiragana or two-byte katakana mode, the character is fixed by pressing .



Character entry screen submenu


Press  on the character entry screen. The following operations are enabled. However, the submenu is not displayed before the character is fixed, or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.

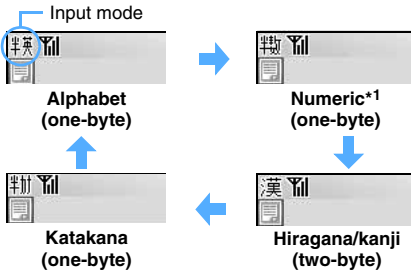
- Copy characters ◀P442
- Cut characters ◀P442
- Paste copied/cut characters ◀P442
- Quote the phonebook data ◀P440
- Save words ◀P442
- Save fixed phrases ◀P441
- Set the input method ◀P444
- Quote Own Number, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by Bar Code Reader (Items displayed varies by the entry field) ◀P441
- End character edit entry (displayed only when characters are entered in Slot Input Method)

Changing input modes

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.


Using to change modes

The input modes change each time  is pressed as follows:



*1 Not displayed by Slot Input Method.

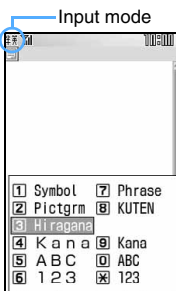
Using the input mode list to change modes

You can select the following input modes by pressing  on the character entry screen.

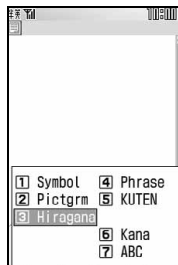
Item	Input mode	Item	Input mode
Hiragana	Hiragana/ kanji	漢	Two-byte numeric
		かな	One-byte katakana
Kana*2	Two-byte katakana	全かな	One-byte alphabet
		ABC	One-byte numeric
ABC*2	Two-byte alphabet	全英	One-byte numeric

*2 This is not displayed by Slot Input Method.


- 全かな is displayed when only hiragana can be entered.



5-touch
Input Method



Slot
Input Method

- Press  or corresponding dial keys to select input mode.

- The following operations are also enabled by making selections from the input mode list:

Symbol : Enters symbols ◀P440

Pictgrm : Enters pictograms ◀P440

Phrase : Enters fixed phrases ◀P439

KUTEN : Uses KUTEN code to enter characters ◀P442

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method


Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

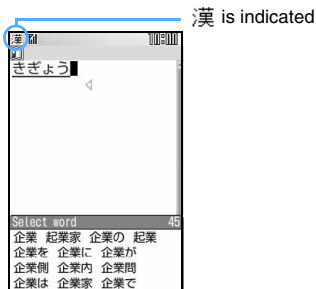
Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook


1 Highlight *Enter name field*


The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”




“き” Press  twice.


Press  to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)


“ぎ” Press  twice .



“よ” Press  3 times .

“う” Press  3 times

- Press  to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.

- To enter “” and “” : Enter the character .

For example, after entering “ほ”, each pressing of  changes the character as: ほ ほ ほ. For characters that do not accept “” or “”, it is entered as two-byte characters.

- To change upper/lower case, enter the character and press .
- Pressing  changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

Returning to the previous character:

Pressing immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time is pressed. (e.g. ... 1 お え う い あ 1 ...) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower case are changed, you cannot switch characters.

Fixing hiragana without conversion:

Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

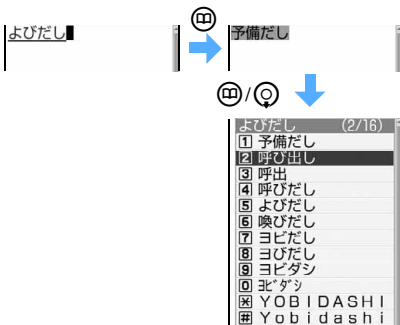
3



- also converts text to kana/kanji when predict conversion options are not displayed. Predict conversion P439
- Press to restore the entry before conversion.

Displaying the list of conversion options:

When pressing fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing or again. If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing and , respectively. Select the conversion options by and press or press the key for the number of each option.



4

The character is fixed.

- When *Input prediction* of Input Method Setting is *ON*, select (Close).

Inserting characters:

Move the cursor to the insertion point by and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters:

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
 (Example: 鈴木郎)
 • Press to delete a character at the cursor position.
 • Press for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
 (Example: 鈴木一郎)
 • Press to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
 • Press for over a second to delete all entered characters.

Entering line feed:

Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press .

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press

Character entry is exited.

- To leave the space as a blank, delete all characters and press , or press when the text was newly entered.
- To edit the entered contents of character entry screen and return to the screen before editing, delete all characters and press and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You can not only change the time setting for move, but also disable the automatic cursor function. P444

- One-byte/two-byte alphabet
- Hiragana/kanji
- One-byte/two-byte katakana

You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.

- : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound
- : Switch between upper/lower cases
- : Return to the previous character

Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be converted as a block to simplify text entry.

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters

どうぶつえんにいこう。 → 動物園に行こう。

Fix all characters:

動物園に行こう。■

Fix converted portion:

動物園に行こう。

Change conversion range:

動物園新居校。

When pressing

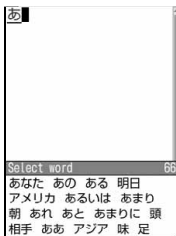
Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered. This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
 - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
 - During in-line entry
 - Entering with Slot Input Method
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options.

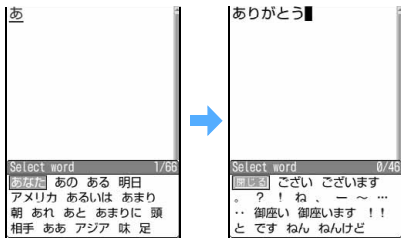
1 Enter characters

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.



- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predict conversion options are available.

2 **to highlight an option**



- While the cursor is placed in predict conversion options, the following operations are enabled:
 - : Switches to the previous/next page
 - : Enables Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predict conversion options disappear)
 - : Fix the character
- When there are no appropriate words, press to convert text by Kana/Kanji Conversion and predict conversion options vanish.

3 Select 閉じる

The predict conversion options vanish.

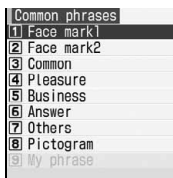
Entering fixed phrases

Enter previously registered sentences, face marks, or pictogram words.

1 **on the character entry screen**

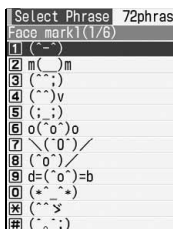
- You can also display by pressing .

2 **to**



- When a fixed phrase has been created/registered, you can select by pressing .

3 **or** , **or**



- to switch pages.
- To check: Highlight a fixed phrase . Press to enter the fixed phrase.

When selecting *Face mark1*

INFORMATION

Face marks can be entered by entering “かおもじ” in kana/kanji mode.

Mail using face marks may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display, number of displayed characters, or the fonts of the other terminal.

List of fixed phrases ◀P452

Entering symbols and pictograms

- Only available symbols are listed.

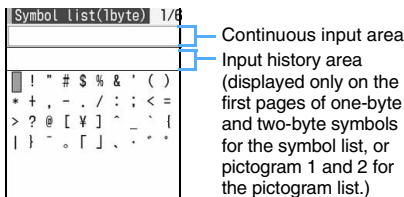
Example Entering symbols

1 Press **(E)** on the character entry screen

- Enter pictograms: **(P)**
- You can display the symbol list by pressing **(E)** **(1)** and the pictogram list by pressing **(E)** **(2)** on the entry screen for message.
- By pressing **(M)** on the symbol list, it is switched between two-byte and one-byte symbols, and on the pictogram list, it is switched between pictogram1 and 2.
- Press **(E)** or **(P)** to switch multiple pages of symbol list and pictogram list.

2 Select a symbol

Selected symbols are displayed on the continuous input area.



- When the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting “{” also selects “}”.

() [] {} 「 」 () [] [] { }

《 》 「 」 『 』 『 』 【 】

- Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered and up to 10 pictograms can be entered continuously.
- By **(C)**, you can place the cursor at the input history area and able to select the symbols or pictograms. Up to 10 symbols or pictograms can be displayed. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.

3 Press **(E)**

INFORMATION

A part of symbols can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ギリシア	Greek characters
ロシア	Latin characters
ずうじ	① to ⑳, to
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode. ◀P454

Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication. Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.

Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number Information, the result of calculation with Calculator or string information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made, since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

Quoting phonebook data entry

- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1 **(M)** **(4)** on the character entry screen ▶ Select phonebook data

2 Select the entry



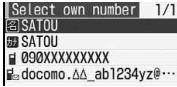
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press **(E)**. It can be quoted by pressing **(C)**.

Quoting Own Number entry

- The Own Number is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 on the character entry screen

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Select the Own Number Information



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1 on the character entry screen

2 Make calculation ▶

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted only on the character entry screen displayed during URL entry and i-mode.

1 on the character entry screen
Camera starts with macro mode.

2 Scan JAN code or QR code

3 Press

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in *My phrase*.

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

1

2 Select <New phrase>

The fixed phrase edit screen is displayed.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Select a fixed phrase to edit.
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶ .
You can edit by pressing .

Deleting fixed phrases: Highlight a fixed phrase to delete ▶ ▶ Select *Yes*

3 Select *Message* field ▶ Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)

4 Press

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to overwrite or *No* to cancel the operation.

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

1 on the character entry screen

- On the entry screen for message, press .

2 Highlight the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence: ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Highlight the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:



- To select from the start point to the end:

4 Press

INFORMATION

If a character string selected above contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:

- Blank spaces only:
Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
- Blank spaces before and after a character string:
Only character string is valid
- Blank spaces between characters:
Blank spaces are also valid

When there is no character entered, press

to display the fixed phrase edit screen except in the message text entry screen.

When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character



Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.




Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

1 1 on the character entry screen





- To cut the characters:  2
- On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing  and selecting *Copy/Cut*.

2 Highlight the start point

- To select the whole sentence:  
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: 

3 Highlight the end point


The characters in the selected range is copied.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:  
- To select from the start point to the end:  

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select *Yes*, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

1 Highlight the location to paste on the character entry screen 3

- On the entry screen for message, press  and select *Paste*.

INFORMATION

When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).

When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the KUTEN code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering “携” (code number 2340)

1 8 on the character entry screen

2 Enter the 4-digit code

    in this case

- The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
- Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

Registering frequently used words

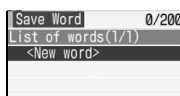
Save Word




Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.



1 8 9 1

2 Select <New word>

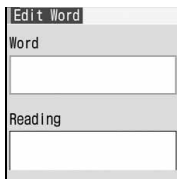


- To edit the registered word: Select a word to edit
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word   You can edit it by pressing .

Deleting words:

- 1 Highlight a word to delete  
- 2 Select *Delete*
 - To delete all: Select *Delete all*.

3 Select *Word* field ▶ Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)



- The following character types can be registered:
 - One-byte/two-byte alphabet
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - One-byte/two-byte katakana
 - One-byte/two-byte numeric
 - One-byte/two-byte symbol
 - Pictogram

4 Select *Reading* field ▶ Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)

- You can enter only hiragana.

5 Press

- A confirmation screen is displayed when editing registered words. Select *Overwrite* to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select *New*.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 on the character entry screen

- On the entry screen for message, press .

2 Highlight the start point

- To select the whole sentence: ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for message: ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Highlight the end point

The characters in the selected range is displayed on *Word* field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:



- To select from the start point to the end:

4 Enter the reading

INFORMATION

Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered.

When the following characters are the initial part of the reading, it cannot be registered.

を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, や, ゆ, よ, つ, “ー” (prolonged sound), “ん” (voiced sound), “っ” (semi-voiced sound)

Blank spaces can be entered, but deleted after registered.

When the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading, the word cannot be registered.

Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words.

When there is no character entered, press to display the word edit screen except in the message text entry screen.

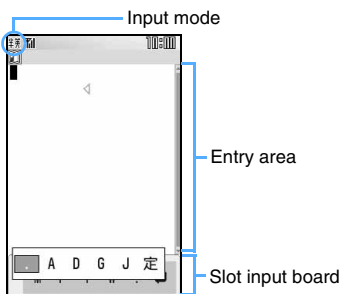
When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

Slot Input Method

You use to select characters displayed on the slot input board.

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. ▶P444
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of characters assigned to input slot ▶P451



- Even when Slot Input Method is set, 5-touch input screen will appear during in-line entry. You can operate in Slot Input Method when entering in full-screen of entry area.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press . Press again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook

1 Highlight Enter name field

The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”



- To replace the upper or lower slot with each other:

3

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion, press .
- To fix the characters as hiragana: . New characters can be added. To exit the character entry, go to step 5.

4

- The character is fixed.
- New characters can be added.

5

Character entry is exited.

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal



2 Select each item to set

Input method :

Specifies 5-touch or slot input method.

- When *Slot* is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction :

Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor :

Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

- Setting *OFF* disables automatic movement.
- Setting *Slow* moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting *Normal* moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting *Fast* moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

3 Press

Changing settings during character entry

- The changes cannot be made before characters are fixed or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1 on the character entry screen

2 to

- To switch between *Use 5-touch* and *Use Slot input*:
- To switch between *Prediction ON* and *Prediction OFF*:
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves: to

Appendix/Data Interchange/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	446
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	451
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	451
List of fixed phrases	452
List of symbols	454
List of pictograms	454
KUTEN code input list	457
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	461
Combination of functions during Multitask	463
Services available for FOMA terminal	465
Options and related devices	465
Data Interchange using external devices	
About the data link software	466
Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal	Play Video 466
Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC.....	466
Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal	Play Sound 467
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	468
Example of Error messages	Error Message 471
Warranty and After-Sales Service	477
Updating Software	Software Update 478
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Virus Scan Function 483
SAR certification information	485

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
 - One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by resetting.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
[1] Inbox	_____	P259
[2] Compose message	_____	P232
[3] Chat mail	_____	P278
[4] Unsent messages	_____	P259
[5] Outbox	_____	P259
[6] Check new message		
[1] i-mode message	_____	P251
[2] SMS	_____	P285
[3] Receive option	_____	P251
[4] Message retrieval	selected (all)	P272
[7] SMS		
[1] Compose SMS	_____	P283
[2] Received SMS	_____	P287
[3] Sent SMS	_____	P287
[4] SMS settings	Font type: Japanese Delivered report: Do not request Keep in SMS center: 3 days SMSC: DoCoMo Address: 81903101652 Type of Number: international	P285
[8] Read templates	_____	P246
[9] Mail setting		
[1] Incoming message	Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 2 (Pattern 2) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Aqua Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P277
[2] Incoming chat mail	Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting	P282
[3] Sort criteria	got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON	P269
[4] Signature	Auto insert: Yes Signature: not set	P272
[5] Reply setting		
[1] Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P274
[2] Activate quick reply	ON	P274
[3] Quick reply template	OK です。(OK) NG です。(No good) ありがとうございます! (Thank you!) ゴメンなさい! (Sorry!) 後ほど連絡します。 (Get in touch later.)	P274
[6] Mail group	_____	P273
[7] Display settings		
[1] Display priority	Show message	P277

Menu item	Default	Page
[9] Mail setting		
[7] Display settings		
[2] Receive option	OFF	P273
[3] Incoming msg attach	Image/Melody/ToruCa	P275
[4] Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P275
[5] Message list	Display 2 rows	P275

2 i-mode

Menu item	Default	Page
[1] iMenu	_____	P198
[2] Bookmark	_____	P205
[3] Go to location		
[1] Enter URL	_____	P204
[2] URL history	_____	P204
[4] Screen memo	_____	P208
[5] Last visited URL	_____	P200
[6] i-mode message	_____	P251
[7] Message R&F		
[1] Message R	_____	P218
[2] Message F	_____	P218
[3] Message settings		
[1] Auto-display	MessageR preferred	P217
[2] Message retrieval	selected (all)	P272
[3] Attachment auto-play	Auto play	P275
[4] Incoming msg alert	Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 2(Pattern 2) Incoming msg. lighting: Flash/Aqua Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P218
[8] i-Channel		
[1] i-Channel list	_____	P309
[2] Ticker setting	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P309
[9] i-mode setting		
[1] i-mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P206
[2] Image/Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Set lighting: Terminal settings Sound effect setting: ON	P215
[3] i-motion	Auto replay setting: Auto Play ON i-motion type setting: Normal type	P226
[4] i-mode arv. act :PT	PushTalk preferred	P103

Menu item	Default	Page
9 i-mode setting		
5 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P214
6 Host selection	i-mode (FOMA Card)	P214
7 Certificate		
1 Set certificate*1	CA Certificate 1 to 9 DoCoMo Cert1	P220
2 Certificate download	_____	P221
3 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P223

3) i- ppli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	_____	P293
2 i- ppli settings		
1 Software sort	By download time	P304
2 Auto start	ON	P300
3 Software info display	OFF	P293
4 Light settings	Use phone setting	P295
5 Vibrate settings	ON	P295
6 i- ppli shortcuts	Not recorded	P300
3 Display history	_____	P294 P301 P302

4) Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	Show all names	P113
2 Phonebook new entry	_____	P107
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	_____	P110
4 PushTalk phonebook	_____	P97
5 Received calls	_____	P64
6 Redial	_____	P54
7 Ans. machine/Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P74
2 Recorded messages	_____	P76
3 Record voice memo	_____	P381
4 Voice memos	_____	P382
8 Own number	My phone number: Phone number by default Other than that: Not recorded	P47, P380

5) Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Image	_____	P320
2 i-motion	_____	P327
3 Melody	_____	P337
4 Chara-den	_____	P334
5 My Documents	_____	P359

6) Tools

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Bar code reader	_____	P189
2 Data exchange		
1 Send all Ir data	_____	P353
2 Receive Ir data	_____	P354






Menu item	Default	Page
2 Data exchange		
3 Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P356
4 USB mode settings	Communication mode	P406
3 ToruCa		
1 ToruCa list	_____	P315
2 ToruCa settings	ToruCa receive, Lighting alert: ON Lighting color: Aqua Receive alert volume: Level4	P317
4 IC card content	_____	P313
5 miniSD card	_____	P345
6 Camera	_____	P172
7 Movie camera	_____	P178
8 Sound recorder	_____	P356
9 Music Player	_____	P363

7) Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	_____	P371
2 Notepad	_____	P385
3 Alarm clock	not set	P369
4 Calculator	_____	P384

8) Settings

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Sounds/Vibrate		
1 Set sound	Phone: Melody/ パターン1(Pattern 1), Mail: Melody/パターン2 (Pattern 2) Chat mail: Sync msg alert Message Request, Message Free: Melody/ パターン2(Pattern 2) On-hold tone: 保留音・ボ イス(On-hold tone, voice) Videophone: Melody/ 電話・メロディA(Phone, melody A) PushTalk: Melody/ パターン3(Pattern 3) Open slide: Melody/スライ ド・オープン音1(Slide opening sound 1) Close slide: Melody/スライ ド・クローズ音1(Slide closing sound 1)	P126
2 Ring volume		
1 Ring alert	LEVEL 4	P66
2 Msg. alert	LEVEL 4	P66
3 ToruCa receive alert	LEVEL 4	P66
3 Volume	LEVEL 4	P66
4 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P130
5 Low battery alert	ON	P44
6 Silent mode	General	P131
7 Vibrator	OFF (all)	P129
8 Set mute ring time	OFF	P164
9 Charge alert	ON	P130

Menu item	Default	Page
2 Display		
1 Stand-by		
1 Select 	Use Style Theme setting	P132
2 Set calendar	_____	P136
3 Set clock	Time format: 24 hour Day: English Other than the above: Use Style Theme setting	P147
4 Customize display	_____	P137
5 Set i-Channel ticker	Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Normal	P309
6 Cancel settings	_____	P139
2 Mail / Call image		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P139
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P67
3 Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P139
4 Incoming Videophone	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P67
5 Contact image	ON	P140
6 Outgoing msg. image	Display image: Default	P140
7 Incoming msg. image	Display image: Default	P140
8 Retrieving image	Display image: Default	P140
9 Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P141
3 Color scheme	Use Style Theme setting	P142
4 Battery icon 	  	P144
5 Display light	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P141

Menu item	Default	Page
2 Display		
6 Alert lighting	Indicator light, During call: OFF Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: Flash/ Ocean, Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: Flash/Aqua Incoming PushTalk: Flash/Ocean ToruCa receive: ON/Aqua Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: Sync melody/Rainbow Open slide, Close slide: Glimmer/Melon IC card: ON	P145
7 Font & Language		
1 Font Size	Standard	P146
2 Select language	Japanese	P45
8 Style theme	Use terminal settings	P148
3 Security		
1 Lock		
1 All lock	not set	P154
2 PIM lock	OFF	P157
3 Remote lock	OFF	P155
4 IC card lock	OFF	P318
2 Secret mode	not set	P161
3 Keypad dial lock	OFF	P158
4 UIM	PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	P151
5 Change security code	0000	P151
6 Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i- ppli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P159
7 Scanning function		
1 Update	_____	P484
2 Set auto-update	_____	P484
3 Set scan	ON	P483
4 Version	_____	P485
8 Key lock setting	OFF when slide open	P161
4 Info/Reset		
1 Call duration	_____	P382
2 Confirm	_____	P388
3 Battery level	_____	P43
4 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	_____	P383
2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P383
3 Remove call cost icon	_____	P384
4 Reset call cost	OFF	P383

Menu item	Default	Page
4 Info/Reset		
5 Reset	_____	P388
6 Delete all data	_____	P389
5 Clock		
1 Date & time*2	Auto time adjust: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P45
2 Auto power ON	OFF	P369
3 Auto power OFF	OFF	P369
4 Clock display format	Time format: 24 hour Day: English Other than the above: Use Style Theme setting	P147
5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P371
6 Call/Answer		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P139
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P67
3 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P163
4 Status message	On-hold tone: Standard	P69
5 Any key answer	ON	P63
6 Headset		
1 Headset switch	Headset + speaker	P387
2 Auto answer	OFF	P387
3 Headset Button Control	OFF	P387
7 Reject/Accept call		
1 Specified caller	Cancel settings	P162
2 Unregistered caller	OFF	P165
8 Make/Receive call		
1 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P68
2 Prefix dialing	009130010	P58
3 Auto assist setting	Auto	P58
4 Sub address	ON	P59
5 Open answer	OFF	P63
9 Call session		
1 Noise reduction	ON	P59
2 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P59
3 On-hold tone	保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P70
4 Quality alarm	High alarm	P130
5 Close settings	Continue	P63

Menu item	Default	Page
7 Videophone		
1 Videophone dialing	Display image: Default	P139
2 Incoming Videophone	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P67
3 Operation	Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Send camera image: ON Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on (normal) Speakerphone: ON	P89
4 Image	Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	P90
5 External device	Terminal	P92
6 Notify switchable mode		
1 Indication ON	active	P91
2 Indication OFF	_____	P91
3 Check Indication	_____	P91
8 PushTalk (PT)		
1 Incoming PushTalk	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン3 (Pattern 3) Vibrate alert: OFF Lighting: Flash/Ocean	P67
2 PushTalk ring time	30 sec	P102
3 Notify	Hide caller ID	P101
4 PushTalk auto answer	OFF	P102
5 PushTalk arv. act	Call Rejection	P102
6 Setting when folded	Continue	P103
7 i-mode arv. act:PT	PushTalk preferred	P103
9 Others		
1 Save word	_____	P442
2 Save phrase	_____	P441
3 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P444
4 Self mode	OFF	P156
5 NW search method	Auto select NW	P388
6 Software Update	_____	P479
7 Quick start-up	OFF	P388
8 Edit by slide	ON (all)	P368

9 NW Services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Voice Mail		
1 Voice Mail service		
1 Activate	_____	P393
2 Set ring time	_____	P393
3 Deactivate	_____	P393
4 Check setting	_____	P393
5 Play messages	_____	P393
6 Voice Mail setting	_____	P393
7 Check messages	_____	P393
2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: パターン1 (Pattern 1)	P393
3 Notify missed call		
1 Activate	_____	P394
2 Deactivate	_____	P394
3 Check setting	_____	P394
4 Hide Voice Mail icon	_____	P394
2 Call waiting		
1 Activate	_____	P394
2 Deactive	_____	P395
3 Check setting	_____	P395
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate	_____	P396
2 Deactivate	_____	P396
3 Register The Forwarding Number	_____	P397
4 Setting if forwarding number busy	_____	P397
5 Check setting	_____	P396
4 Nuisance call barring		
1 Register the caller	_____	P397
2 Register selected No.	_____	P397
3 Delete all entries	_____	P398
4 Delete last entry	_____	P398
5 Check the number of entries	_____	P398
5 Caller ID notification		
1 Activate/Deactivate	_____	P46
2 Check setting	_____	P47
6 Caller ID request		
1 Activate	_____	P398
2 Deactivate	_____	P398
3 Check setting	_____	P398
7 Set arrival act		
1 Activate	_____	P400
2 Deactivate	_____	P400
3 Check setting	_____	P400
8 Arrival call act	Answer	P400

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Others		
1 Register USSD	_____	P401
2 Record reply message	_____	P402
3 Remote control		
1 Activate	_____	P400
2 Deactivate	_____	P400
3 Check setting	_____	P400
4 English guidance		
1 Guidance setting	_____	P399
2 Check setting	_____	P399
5 Dual network		
1 Dual Network Switching	_____	P399
2 Check setting	_____	P399
6 Service Dialing Number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ	_____	P399
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付	_____	P399
7 Multi number		
1 Set Multi Number	_____	P401
2 Check setting	_____	P401
3 Number Setting	Basic Number: 基本契約番号(Basic Number)/My phone number Additional No1: 付加番号 1(Additional Number 1)/Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号 2(Additional Number 2)/Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	P400
4 Incoming calls melody setting	Individual setting: OFF	P401
8 Call barring*3		

0 Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	My phone number: Phone number by default Other than that: Not recorded	P47, P380

*1 Items of the certificates saved in UIM are all valid by resetting.

*2 Date and time remain unchanged after resetting.

*3 Unavailable on this terminal.

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
1	あいうえお 1	アイウエオ 1	. / @ ^*2 - : _ [¥] ^ ` { } 1	1
2	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	たちつてと 4	タチツテト 4	g h i 4	4
5	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	やゆよ 8	ヤユヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わをんー、。? ?!「」 0	ワロンー、。 *?!「」 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + ; < = > ? 0	0 +*4
*	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*4
#*5	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	# T*4

: Indicates blank space. : Press (11) after entering a character to switch between upper and lower case.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

3 In numeric mode, “”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “+” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*4 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*5 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)	Input slot	Katakana mode (one-byte)	Input slot	Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	あ あいうえおあいうえお 1	ア アイウエオアイウエオ 1	Upper slot	.	./@~ :_[¥]{} 1
	か かきくけこ 2	カ カキクケコ 2		A	ABC abc 2
	さ さしすせそ 3	サ サシスセソ 3		D	DEF def 3
	た たちつてと 4	タ タチツテト 4		G	GHI ghi 4
	な なにぬねの 5	ナ ナニヌネノ 5		J	JKL jkl 5
..	定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
Lower slot	は はひふへほ 6	ハ ハヒフヘホ 6	Lower slot	M	MNO mno 6
	ま まみむめも 7	マ マミムメモ 7		P	PQR Spqrs 7
	や やゆよ やゆよ 8	ヤ ヤユヨ ヨヨ 8		T	TUV tuv 8
	ら らりるれろ 9	ラ ラリルレロ 9		W	WXYZ wxyz 9
	わ わをんー、。? ?!「」 0	ワ ワロンー、。 ?!「」 0		!	! "# \$ % & ' () * + ; < = > ? 0
↵ Line feed	↵ Line feed	↵ Line feed	↵ Line feed	↵ Line feed	

: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

- “~” and “*” are switched with every press of (11) in Hiragana/kanji mode.
- Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

• Face mark 1 (72 items)

(^-)	m()n	(^;)	(^v)	(; ;)
o(^o^)	\(^0^)/	(^o^)/	d=(^o^)=b	(*_^*)
(^^)	(^;)	(^_;	(ToT)	(^^)/^^
(ToT)/^^	(><)	(**)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(=)	(^-)	(^ ^)	(-_-)
#(^o^)#	(^3^)/~☆	(☆o☆)	(-_-)zzz	☆多
(^フ)	v(^o^)	(^◇^)	(^-^)/	o(^^-)o
(^-^)^b	(^-)-☆	(o^o^)/	(^-^)-☆	~(m^-)n
\(^o^)/	(#-3-)	(^-(-))	(^-^)-目	\(^▽^)/
\(*^▽^*)/	~(^-▽^-)	^-^)^(-^-)	ε=Γ(·_·)^	(^▽^σ)^0^)
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	v(^-◇^-)/))	ε=v(*^▽^)/	(^-;	(·_·)
(^-_·)	(^A^;)	(^~^)	(><)	(-o-)
(-_-#)	(-_-)	_(·_·)	(^□^)	(^-)
(^-)	(^ω)	(^-·?)	(·o·)	o(T□T)o
Σ(□□;)	·^(>_<)^·			

• Face mark 2 (28 items)

(·)ノオツ	(^-*)IA	(-☆)ヲリ	(·*)\^'チ
(^->了解	[壁_-)ヲツ	(^-)AI~	(;^-)アヤシ
(-yJ'JJ'	(;-_-)=3 ㄉ	{{(><}}私イ	Σ(^o^);ナ-!!
(^▽^)] 秒秒	v(*^-*)ヲネ-	(≥▽≤)/ ㄴㄴ	φ(·)XFX
(·)ノ° ㄱイ	ヲウ(-_-)ノノ	o(^^-)o☆バツ	d(>◇<)アツ!
_(^-)_セフ!	(><)(><)イヤ-	\(o^▽^o)ハ-イ	(^-;)\(-_-);ㄱイ
(^-)モクモク	<(^o^)> ナゲツク!	凸\(^^-) タイロバツ	(^-·v(^^-))ヨヨ

• Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は の日です。早く帰って来てね。
まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	について知っている人は までに に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
で待ってます。	ただいま電話にできることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は、集合場所は です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
の写真送ります。	最近の の写真です。

• Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？ に 。	今日 に、へ行きませんか？
の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	に行かない？
のメンバー募集！詳しくは まで連絡下さい。	

今度みんなで へ行きましょう。 まです、都合の良い日を教えてください。	
今度みんなで へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
しませんか？日時： 、場所： 。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	の時の写真だよ。

• Business (20 items)

本日の 会議は、 となりました。	本日の 訪問は、 となりました。
へ直行します。	へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、 遅れます。	至急 TEL 下さい。
予定変更！ TEL 下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！ 場所： 、時間：
頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座： 銀行 支店、口座番号 、名義人
の件、よろしくお願い致します。	名 です。
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX 確認願います。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

• Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OK です。	NG です。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ・・・	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

• Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？	お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！	キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！	www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp	.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org	.html	http://

• Pictogram words (20 items)

Pictogram words	Meaning	Pictogram words	Meaning
👋👋	ハロー！ / またね (Hello! / See you.)	👏👏	ごきげん (High spirits)
🕊️	ピース (Peace)	😊😊	るんるん (Cheerful)
📉	落ち込む (Depressed)	💸	どうしよう (At a loss)
😡	ぶんぶん (Huff)	😡	怒ってるぞ (Fury)
🤪	メロメロ (Crazy about)	😱	パニック (Panic)
😴	寝ます (Sleep)	💋	チュッ！ (Kissing)
💕	ラブラブ (Love)	🏃	ダッシュ (Dash)
🤔	えっ何？ (What?)	📷	写真を撮る (Take a picture)
🍀	がんばれ！ (Good luck!)	👤	独りぼっち (Alone)
🎤	カラオケ (Karaoke)	⚽	サッカー (Soccer)

• Pictogram words are not displayed by entering the meaning.

• My phrase (up to 50 items)

The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

Pictogram	Readings
	くらぶ くらーばー とらんぶ
	でんしゃ のりもの てつどう
	ちかてつ のりもの
	しんかんせん のりもの
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
	ばす くるま のりもの
	ふね のりもの
	ひこうき のりもの くうこう
	りそーと よっと のりもの
	くりすます つりー
	いえ じたく
	びる かいしゃ
	ゆうびんきょく ゆうびん
	びょういん
	ぎんこう
	えーていーえむ ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
	がそりんすたんど がそりん がすすた がそすた
	ちゅうしゃじょう ばーきんぐ ばーく
	しんごう
	といれ
	れすとらん しょくじ ごはん
	きつさてん こーひー かっぶ かふえ
	ばー かくてる さけ
	びーる さけ
	ふあーすとふーど はんばーがー
	ぶていっく くつ ひーる
	びょういん はさみ とこや
	からおけ まいく
	えいが
	ゆうえんち もくば
	おんがく へつどほん
	あーと
	えんげき
	いべんと

Pictogram	Readings
	ちけつと きつぶ
	すぼーつ しゃつ
	やきゅう すぼーつ ぼーる
	ごるふ すぼーつ
	てにす すぼーつ
	さっかー すぼーつ ぼーる
	すきー すぼーつ
	ばすけつとぼーる ばすけ ばすけつと すぼーつ
	もーたーすぼーつ ふらっく はた すぼーつ
	ぼけつとべる ぼけべる
	きつえん たばこ
	きんえん たばこ
	かめら
	かばん ばっく
	ほん
	りぼん
	ぶれぜんと
	ばーすでー ろうそく たんじょうび
	でんわ
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでいー おんがく
	くつ すにーかー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじざ せいざ
	おうしざ せいざ
	ふたござ せいざ
	かにざ せいざ
	ししざ せいざ
	おとめざ せいざ
	てんびんざ せいざ
	さそりざ せいざ
	いてざ せいざ
	やぎざ せいざ
	みずがめざ せいざ
	うおざ せいざ
	しんげつ つき
	つき

Pictogram	Readings
	はんげつ つき
	みかづき つき
	まんげつ つき
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	ふあつくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも
	ゆうりょう えん おかね かね
	むりょう ふりー
	あいでいー
	ばすわーど かぎ ろっく
	りたーん えんたー
	くりあ
	さーち むしめがね
	にゆー
	いちじょうほう はた ふらっく
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぶだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち すうじ
	に すうじ
	さん すうじ
	よん し すうじ
	ご すうじ
	ろく すうじ
	なな しち すうじ
	はち すうじ
	きゅー きゅう く すうじ
	ぜろ れい すうじ
	かちんこ えいが
	ふくる
	ぺん
	ひとかげ ひと
	いす
	よる つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど おわり
	とけい じかん

Pictogram 2

Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ のりもの
	れんち こうぐ しゅうり
	ばそこん びーしー
	えんぴつ
	くりっぷ
	さゆう やじるし
	じょうげ やじるし
	りさいくる
	えぬじー
	まるひ ひみつ
	きんし
	くうしつ くうせき くうしゃ あき
	ごうかく
	まんしつ まんせき まんしゃ まん
	きけん けいこく びつくり
	こびーらいと しー
	とれーどまーく ていーえむ
	れじすたーどとれーど まーく あーる
	あいあぶり
	あいあぶり
	どるぶくる おかね かね
	うでどけい とけい じ かん
	すなどけい とけい
	おにぎり おむすび
	しょーとけーき けーき

Pictogram	Readings
	ばん
	どんぶり らーめん
	ゆのみ おちゃ
	とっくり にほんしゅ さけ
	わいんぐらす わいん さけ
	ばなな くだもの
	りんご くだもの
	さくらんぼ くだもの
	くるーぱー よつば は はっぱ
	ちゅーりっぷ はな
	め は はっぱ
	もみじ は はっぱ
	さくら はな
	かたつむり どうぶつ
	ひよこ とり どうぶつ
	べんぎん どうぶつ
	さかな どうぶつ
	うま どうぶつ
	ぶた どうぶつ
	ていーしゃつ しゃつ
	じーんず じーばん ず ぼん
	けしょう くちべに
	ゆびわ りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃべる べる あらーむ
	どあ とびら
	がっこう

Pictogram	Readings
	なみ うみ
	ふじさん やま
	すのぼ すのーぼーど
	はしる ひと だっしゅ
	うーん かお
	ほっ にこ かお
	あせ かお
	あせ かお
	むっ むか かお
	ほけ かお
	はーと かお
	あっかんペー ペー かお
	ういんく かお
	うれしい にこ かお
	がまん かお
	ねこ どうぶつ かお
	えーん かなしい なく かお
	なみだ かなしい なく かお
	うまい おいしい かお
	うっしっし うれしい かお
	げっそり さげび かお
	おーけー ぐっど て おっけー
	らぶれたー てがみ めーる
	さいふ おかね かね

KUTEN code input list

• Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code																					
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9												
010											083	一	上	十									207	廣	雁	頤	頤	頤																
011	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	130	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	208																					
012	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	131	⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑳	㉑	㉒	209	基	旗	奇	既	機	徽	疑	吃	脚	刁	210	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
013	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	132	㉓	㉔	㉕	㉖	㉗	㉘	㉙	㉚	㉛	㉜	㉝	211	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		212	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
014	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	133	㉞	㉟	㊱	㊲	㊳	㊴	㊵	㊶	㊷	㊸	㊹	213	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		214	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
015	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	134	㊺	㊻	㊼	㊽	㊾	㊿	㋀	㋁	㋂	㋃	㋄	215	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		216	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
016	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	135	㋅	㋆	㋇	㋈	㋉	㋊	㋋	㋌	㋍	㋎	㋏	217	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		218	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
017	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	136	㋐	㋑	㋒	㋓	㋔	㋕	㋖	㋗	㋘	㋙	㋚	219	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		220	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
018	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	137	㋛	㋜	㋝	㋞	㋟	㋠	㋡	㋢	㋣	㋤	㋥	221	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		222	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
019	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	138	㋦	㋧	㋨	㋩	㋪	㋫	㋬	㋭	㋮	㋯	㋰	223	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		224	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
020	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢	139	㋱	㋲	㋳	㋴	㋵	㋶	㋷	㋸	㋹	㋺	㋻	225	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		226	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
021	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													227	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		228	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
022	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													229	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		230	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
023	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													231	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		232	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
024	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													233	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		234	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
026	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													235	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		236	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
027	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													237	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		238	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
028	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													239	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		240	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
029	↑	↓	↖	↗	↘	↙	↞	↠	↡	↢													241	紀	鬼	懼	吉	宮	宮	究	巨	壘		242	企	希	危	忌	喜	器	机			
031											164	威	移	井	稻	引							243	肩	嶺	絃																		
032											165	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						244	姑	糊	顧	御	効																
033											166	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						245	孤	孤	顧	顧	顧																
034	H	R	I	S	J	T	A	K	L	V	167	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						246	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
035	H	R	I	S	J	T	A	K	L	V	168	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						247	己	己	己	己	己																
036											169	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						248	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
037	f	g	h	r	s	j	t	a	k	v	170	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						249	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
038	p	q	r	s	t	a	k	v	e	o	171	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						250	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
039	p	q	r	s	t	a	k	v	e	o	172	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						251	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
040											173	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						252	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
041	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん	174	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						253	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
042	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん	175	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						254	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
043	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん	176	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						255	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
044	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん	177	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						256	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
045	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん	178	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						257	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
046	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん													258	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
047	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん													259	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
048	お	あ	が	ざ	だ	な	び	ま	ら	ん													260	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
050											178	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						261	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
051											179	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						262	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
052											180	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						263	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
053											181	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						264	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
054											182	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						265	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
055																							266	庫	庫	顧	顧	顧																
056																																												
057																																												
058																																												
060	A	B	G	M	N	X	Z	P	H	I	187	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						190	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
061	K	Y	L	F	C	H	N	X	Z	P	188	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						191	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
062	K	Y	L	F	C	H	N	X	Z	P	189	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						192	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
063											190	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						193	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
064											191	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						194	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
065											192	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						195	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
070	A	B	G	M	N	X	Z	P	H	I	194	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						197	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
071	I	Y	L	F	C	H	N	X	Z	P	195	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰						198	尉	維	域	宰	浮	陰															
07																																												

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

- : Another communication is available maintaining the current communication status.
- × : Another communication is unavailable maintaining the current communication status.

Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call		Video-phone call		PushTalk		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	× *1	× *1, 2	×	× *3	×	×			*5
During a video-phone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During i-mode			×	×	×	×	×		
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission			×	×	×	×		*9	*9
During SMS reception/transmission								*9	*9
During i- ppli operation	*10	*10	*10	*10	*11	*12	×		*5
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)							×		
During packet communication			×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Updating software	×		×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
While switching to miniSD mode	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

Processes that occur or are performed	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
Current status								
During a voice call		*5			x	x *3	x	x
During a video-phone call	x	*5	x	x	x	x *3	x	x
During a PushTalk call	x		x	x	x	x	x	x
During i-mode			x	x	x	x *4	x	x
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	*9	*9	x	x	x	x *4	x	x
During SMS reception/transmission	*9	*9			x		x	x
During i- ppli operation		*5						x
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)								x
During packet communication	*14	*5	x	x	x	x *4	x	x
During 64K data communication	x	*5	x	x	x	x *3	x	x
Updating software	x	x	x	x	x	x *4	x	x
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
While switching to miniSD mode	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

- * In case a video-phone call is made connecting with the external device, it is the operation during 64K data communication.
- * During copy the data or format processing for the miniSD memory card, infrared communication, data transmission via USB connection or miniSD mode, any communication is unavailable.
- *1 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.
- *2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.
- *3 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.
- *4 The call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.
- *5 The ring tone does not sound.
- *6 Depends on the setting of PushTalk Arrival Act.
- *7 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.
- *8 Depends on the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT.
- *9 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.
- *10 Melody of i- ppli is stopped. When i- ppli is using i-mode communication, the following occurs:
 - i-mode communication is disconnected when a video-phone call is made.
 - Incoming video-phone calls are rejected.
- *11 When i- ppli is using i-mode communication, i-mode communication is disconnected.
- *12 Depends on the setting of i-mode Arrival Act: PT when i- ppli is using i-mode communication.
- *13 In case Call Waiting Service is set to be available, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication or rejecting the incoming call.
- *14 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

: can be selected x : cannot be selected

New Task menu item	4 Phonebook & Logs			5 Data Box				6 Tools						7 Stationery		0							
	1 Phonebook	2 PushTalk phonebook	3 Received calls	4 Redial	5 Ans. machine/ V. memo			1 Image	2 i-motion	3 Melody	4 Chara-den	1 My Documents	2 Bar code reader	2 ToruCa	3 Camera	4 Movie Camera	5 Sound recorder	6 Music Player	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad	3 Calculator	0 Own number	
					1 Recorded messages	2 Record memo	3 Voice Memos																
Function in progress or status																							
Phone call																	x	x	x				
Dial input																							
Video-phone call	x			x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x				x	
PushTalk	x					x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x					
64K data comm.																	x	x	x				
PPP data comm.																			x				
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages																							
Compose i-mode Mail/ Compose SMS																							
Chat mail																							
Read templates																							
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)																							
Message R/F																							
Check new message/SMS																							
iMenu	x																						
Enter URL/URL history/ Bookmark/Last Visited URL	x																						
Screen Memo	x																						
i-Channel	x																						
Software list	x							x	x	x	x	x											
i ppli/i ppli download	x							x	x	x	x	x											
i-motion (Play Video/Sound)									x		x		x		x	x	x	x					
Melody										x									x				
Image									x		x		x		x	x	x						
Chara-den									x	x	x		x		x	x	x	x					
My Document											x												
Camera									x	x	x		x		x	x	x	x					
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder						x	x	x			x				x	x	x	x					
Bar Code Reader									x	x	x		x		x	x	x	x					
ToruCa														x									
Music Player	x					x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x					
Phonebook		x	x																				
PushTalk phonebook		x	x																				
PushTalkPlus	x					x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x						
Notepad																						x	
Scheduler																						x	
Calculator																						x	
Received Calls/Redial (Normal mode)				x	x																		
Received Calls/Redial (Reference mode)																							
Own Number																						x	
Receiving i-mode Mail/SMS																							
Answer Machine/Voice Memo						x	x	x									x	x	x				
Alarm sound																						x	
miniSD memory card	x					x	x	x			x	x	x									x	
Video-phone call by external device							x										x	x	x				
UIM not inserted																							
PUK blocked																							
Self Mode set/ Keypad Dial Lock set																							
PIM Lock set	x	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	
Reading UIM																							

* Some functions which can be selected may be unavailable depending on the status of activating or lock settings, etc.

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of October 2005)

If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of October 2005)

Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.

Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.

A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the sender may still hear ringing tones. It is due to some optional setting applied to the receiver's side.

You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls.

However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops. For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D06
 - Rear cover D06
 - Desktop holder D06
 - FOMA AC adapter 01
 - FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
 - FOMA DC adapter 01
 - Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch P01/P02
 - Flat type stereo earphone set P01
 - Earphone jack converter adapter P001
 - Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*1/P002*1
 - Stereo earphone set P001*1
 - Earphone terminal P001*1
 - FOMA USB cable
 - Data communication adapter D01
 - FOMA indoor auxiliary antenna
 - In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
 - FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- *1 The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.

*2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA D902i.

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can install the FOMA D Series Data Link Software from the attached CD-ROM or download it from the following web sites:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902i/>

For details on the installation of data link software, see "README_DL.TXT" of "DataLink" folder in the attached CD-ROM. For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the web site above or refer to the data link software Help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for connecting to PC.
- Copyright laws forbid transfer of downloaded information from FOMA terminal to external sources even in its use of the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal.

Supported OS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition

- A PC/AT compatible machine for the above OS is required.

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws
Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.
- Liability
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and false operations and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific purposes of customers.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center:
03-5319-3762

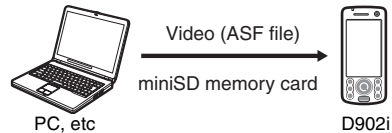
Business hours:

weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (Closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year's holidays and company holidays)

- To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal Play Video

You can play videos (MP4 and ASF files) created with external devices such as a PC on FOMA terminals by storing in the miniSD memory cards.



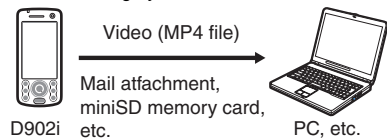
- Playing video in the miniSD memory card ♣P345
- Playable MP4 files ♣P171
- The specifications of playable ASF files are as follows. Some ASF files may not be playable.

File format	SD-Video (ASF)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: G.726

- To play a video stored in the miniSD memory card, you need to save the video data to fixed folders using the supplied data link software, etc. The miniSD memory card folder structure ♣P340
- In case the saved video data are not displayed, update the miniSD memory card information ♣P347

Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC

You can play videos (MP4 files) recorded with FOMA terminals on PCs by storing in the miniSD memory cards or sending by transfer via mail.



- Video files supported by FOMA terminals ♣P171

About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal

Play Sound

The music got via Internet or contained in a CD can be stored in the miniSD memory card using a PC and played on FOMA terminal.

- This section describes the procedures of storing the music data in the miniSD memory card and replaying it by using the software (available on the market) and the supplied data link software. the following items are required to replay the music:
 - miniSD memory card
If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. For the information and usage precautions of the miniSD memory card ◀P339
Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before using. ◀P347
 - FOMA USB cable (optional)
It is necessary in case of connecting FOMA terminal and a PC using *miniSD mode* (the operating system supporting *miniSD mode* are Windows XP and Windows 2000 only). It is not required in case miniSD memory card can be used on a PC.
 - FOMA D Series Data Link Software
It is contained in the attached CD-ROM. Install in a PC. For the details ◀P466
 - Software (available on the market) that can convert the music in CD etc. into the AAC format Install in PCs. For the details of the usage of the software, confirm on the web pages of each provider of the software.

- The music data protected by the copyright law cannot be played on FOMA terminal.
- When downloading sound data via Internet websites, etc., confirm usage conditions (license or prohibited act, etc.) before use.
- Music data saved in the miniSD memory card are for personal use only. You must not infringe on intellectual property rights of a third party such as the copyright and other rights.
- Music data saved in the miniSD memory card must not be reproduced or moved into other media such as PCs.
- Please note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for coping with the cases of handling with CCCD (Copy Control CD) or where sound data cannot be converted to AAC format.

1 Convert CD music, etc. you got into AAC format using the software (available on the market) and store in a PC

- The extensions of files that can be stored in the data link software as music data are "mp4" and "m4a" (however, "m4a" changes to "mp4" after being stored in the data link software).

2 Insert the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal

- If the miniSD memory card can be used in a PC, insert the miniSD memory card into a PC or reader/writer etc. and execute the following operations of 4 to 11.




3 Switch USB Mode Setting to miniSD mode on FOMA terminal and connect a PC and FOMA terminal using FOMA USB cable

◀P406

4 Activate the data link software ▶ Click (Multimedia data)

The Multimedia data screen appears.

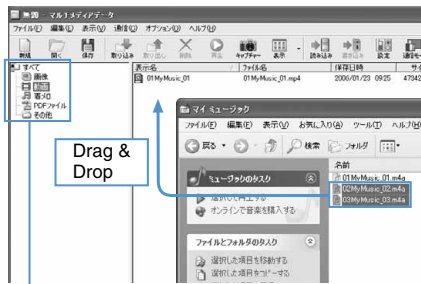
5 Make the setting of the data link software

- ① Click  in  on the tool bar ▶ Select **メモリーカードリーダー/ライターを使用** (use memory card reader/writer)
- ② Click  on the tool bar ▶ Set **機種設定** (model setting) to **D902i**

6 Select 動画 (video) from the folder list ▶ Drag & drop the music data stored in Step 1 to the video file list of the data link software

The music data is stored in the data link software.

- In case that characters that cannot be registered are included in the display name or file name, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change into the name that can be registered. Click [OK].



Folder list

7 Select the music data ▶ Click on the tool bar

- Multiple music data can be selected.

8 Confirm the contents of a confirmation screen ▶ Click [OK]

9 Select the drive in the miniSD memory card ▶ Click [OK]

The music data is stored in the miniSD memory card. A confirmation screen appears when completed.

- The miniSD memory card is recognized as a removable disk.
- Music data is saved in the top folder of Music Player.
- It may take some time to store depending on the number of files to store.

10 Confirm the contents ▶ Click [OK]

11 Remove the FOMA USB cable after removing the hardware on a PC

- Switch *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication mode* on FOMA terminal.

12 Activate Music Player on FOMA terminal and play the music data ◀P363

INFORMATION

To delete the music data saved in the miniSD memory card or save the music data in the folder created under the top folder, display the folder in the miniSD memory card on PC and delete the music data or create the folder and move the music data. The miniSD memory card folder structure displayed on PC ◀P340

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ◀P478

Power supply and charging

FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ◀P39
- Is the battery depleted? ◀P43
- When the mova terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

- The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ◀P40

FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ◀P39
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal’s jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ◀P42
- Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ◀P42

The call indicator flashes in red during charging.

End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ◀P41, P42
If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” listed on the back of this manual.

Phone

"Please wait." is displayed and does not go out.



- The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110, 119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ◀P154
- Have you set Remote Lock? ◀P155
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ◀P158
- Have you set Self Mode? ◀P156

國外 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

- Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ◀P44

After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code? ◀P50
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is 國外 indicated? ◀P44

The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring volume set to *Silent*? ◀P66
- Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call ◀P162
 - Anonymous Caller ◀P163
 - Set mute ring time ◀P164
 - Reject non-Reg. Caller ◀P165
- Have you set Silent Mode? ◀P131
- Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? ◀P71
- Have you set All Lock? ◀P154
- Have you set Self Mode? ◀P156
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to *0 sec*? ◀P393, P396

An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.

- Is Any Key Answer set to *OFF*? ◀P63

During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

- Has the volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ◀P66

The redial data/received call history is erased unexpectedly.

- Is Keypad Dial Lock set on? ◀P158
- Is PIM Lock set on? ◀P157

When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- Ring tones set in multiple functions sound depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Incoming settings for Multi Number
 - ② Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159

When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.


- When video/i-i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring tone for Incoming Call Setting, the set video/i-i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Incoming settings for Multi Number
 - ② Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159

When there is an incoming call, the call indicator operates in a lighting pattern and lighting color not set.

- If a lighting pattern or lighting color is set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159

Settings and operations

Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.

- In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted,  is displayed and some icons cannot be selected.

The Keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to *OFF*? ◀P130
- Have you activated Silent Mode? ◀P131

A message *Insert UIM* is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

- The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ◀P36

Card not recognized. appears on the display.

- The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ◀P36

All locked. appears on the display.

- All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ◀P154

Remote locked. is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

- Remote Lock is set. Cancel Remote Lock. ◀P155

Nothing is indicated on the display.

Is **Turn light on** in Display Light Setting set to other than **Always**? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ◀P141
Display reappears by any key operation.

 is indicated on the stand-by display and an operation is unavailable.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set.
Cancel Key Lock. ◀P160

Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set.
Cancel Key Lock. ◀P160

The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is Select Language set to 日本語 (Japanese)? ◀P45
- Is the day for Clock Display Format set to *Japanese*? ◀P147

The display is dim.

Is the brightness in Display Light Setting set to **Low**? ◀P141

The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go ON.

Is lighting method in Display Light Setting set to **Turn light OFF**? ◀P141

When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.

Even if Alarm Clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to **ON**. ◀P371

Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx.16,770,000 yen).
You can reset to 0 yen. ◀P383

Mail and data

Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ◀P183

Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.

Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. ◀P37

Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring tone sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the mail ring alert been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159



Names are not displayed or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- The number or mail address of the other party does not match that registered in the phonebook.
Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ◀P107
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159

When mail is received, the call indicator operates in other lighting pattern and lighting color than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern and color are set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the call indicator lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern and the color depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the incoming mail lighting pattern or the incoming mail lighting color been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ◀P159

The image and video is displayed as  and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Other

Function of IC card is disabled.

If the battery pack is not connected properly or removed, the function of IC card is disabled because IC Card Lock is set. Check if the battery pack is connected properly and turn power off and then back on. ◀P339

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “XXX” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure if the address is correct.

Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication on the screen.

Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode or internet web site is disabled.

Cannot execute because of other tasks.

Stop all other functions running before updating the definition file.

Cannot save to a miniSD card. Saving to phone memory.

The still image/video with recorded Chara-den downloaded for which Rec. file restriction has already been set to *File restricted* cannot be saved to a miniSD memory card. The Rec. file restriction setting cannot be changed. ●P349

Card error.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check that UIM is inserted correctly. ●P36

Certificate is rejected.(tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at *SMSC* is incorrect. Check the setting. ●P285

Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection failed. (403)

Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection to the specified i-mode or Internet web site was rejected.

Connection failed. (503)

Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line. Please retry after a while.

Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Contains bad data.

i- ppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the size exceeded 2 Mbytes while downloading streaming type i-motion data.

Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeds 500 Kbytes while downloading normal type i-motion data.

Continue using i- ppli and transmit data?

The number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i- ppli and i- ppli tried to transmit again after the message *Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?* was displayed. Select *Yes* to use i- ppli successively, *Terminate i- ppli* to quit i- ppli.

Could not check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Data damaged. Restore default settings?

- The data of the mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.
- The data of ToruCa contains error. Select *Yes* to restore default settings. Select *No* to quit ToruCa without restoring default settings.

Data error. Unable to download.

The data of ToruCa (Details) is invalid.

Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete some software?

The data in IC card are full. Delete Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli with which deletes the data in IC card, or after activating Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli and delete unnecessary data in IC card.

Data or miniSD card damaged.

The miniSD memory card cannot be accessed because it has a problem. Initialize the miniSD memory card or insert a new miniSD memory card. ●P347, P342

Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i- ppli. Select *Yes* to use i- ppli successively, *No* to continue i- ppli after terminating i- ppli transmission or *Terminate i- ppli* to quit i- ppli.

Date and time not set. Unable to start.

Activating i- ppliDX, alarm or Scheduler requires Date and Time Setting. Set the date and time correctly before start. ◀P45

Delete software and IC card data?

Among the i- ppli to delete selected items or all items, there is Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli which the data in IC card are also deleted by deleting the i- ppli. Select *Yes* to delete the i- ppli and the data in IC card.

Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad Dial Lock on.

Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Error in ToruCa data. Unable to download.

The data of ToruCa is incorrect.

Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.

Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli containing errors within IC card data cannot be deleted.

Error in image.

Does not work correctly.

Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

Error in memory. Unable to read/write PushTalk phone book. Quit.

Unable to read or write the PushTalk phonebook because the memory space for the FOMA terminal phonebook and PushTalk phonebook contains the error. Activate the FOMA terminal phonebook. Activating the FOMA terminal phonebook restores the memory space.

Error occurred. Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because an error occurred during saving attachment.

Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls

PushTalk calls were made for above 4 members. Select members up to 4 persons.

Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ▶P36

Failed to connect

Failed to connect to the server. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Failed to copy.

- When copying selected items or all items of Data Box, all data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopyable format.
- PDF data cannot be copied because the memory space is insufficient. Retry after returning to the stand-by display.

Failed to move.

When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. ▶P36

Failed to refer to ToruCa.

Failed to display ToruCa. Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, displaying may be unavailable due to the damaged data.

Failed to retrieve i-Channel information.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Failed to save.

- Cannot be saved because the still image above 10,000 byte to be saved contains an error.
- Failed to save because PDF data is too large, etc.

Failed to save ToruCa.

ToruCa could not be saved because ToruCa exceeds the size that can be saved or the data is incorrect.

Failed to view message data.

- When deleting received mail, unsent mail or folder, the object mail data cannot be referenced because it is used for another processing. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

Folder is full.

Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection of Message R/F or delete unnecessary Message R/F.

i- ppli stand-by display canceled due to security error.

i- ppli standby display has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

i-mode Center is busy.

Please try again later. (555)

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Infrared Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other party's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. **•P352**

Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. **•P353, P354**

Infrared No response. Initiate data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select *Yes*. **•P352**

Infrared No UIM. Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i- ppli cannot be started even when i- ppli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode or Internet web site contains error. Check the input data for errors.

Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change now?

You tried to download streaming type i-motion file with the i-motion type setting *Normal type*. Select *Yes* to change the i-motion type setting. Select *No* if you don't change the setting. **•P226**

Invalid content download failed

Cannot download because the object contents to be charged are invalid.

Invalid data.

The downloaded Chara-den, Deco-mail template or still image above 10,000 byte is invalid.

Invalid data. (XXX)

- The specified i-mode or Internet web site does not support i-mode.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending Auto sent mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode or Internet web site. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending Auto sent mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

The downloaded Chara-den cannot be saved because the Chara-den is invalid.

Unable to play.

Data of melodies or video/i-motion cannot be played.

Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

You tried to display/play back data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site or saved from attachments of a mail or Message R/F using a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored the data. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.


Invalid URL.

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

Mail address not recorded.

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. **•P273**

Mails could not be sent to following address. (561)

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing  displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

Memory full. Delete unwanted data.

Unable to register/delete in the PushTalk phonebook and add/edit/delete members in PushTalk group because the memory space for the FOMA terminal phonebook is insufficient. Delete the unnecessary data in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Memory in My Picture/Other Images/Movie/Melody folder full./My Documents folder full./Number of saved cards in ToruCa folder reached limit./Number of saved data reached limit in PIM folder.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back up and Sync Data Info is unavailable because the number of saved items in folders of the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. **•P345, P346**

Memory is full. Unable to save.

FOMA terminal or UIM does not have enough memory space and the i-mode Mail or SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or FOMA terminal or delete i-mode Mail.

Memory shortage. Return to Main Menu.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. The main menu reappears.

Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

Message rejected by recipient.

SMS is rejected by the SMS Center.

Message rejected by recipient.

Transmitting SMS is rejected.

miniSD card damaged. Saving to phone memory.

When *miniSD* has been specified as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera or Chara-den but the miniSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to *Phone*.


miniSD card full. Saving to phone memory.

When the miniSD memory card becomes full with *miniSD* set as the destination in Still Image Detailed Setting or Recording Detailed Setting for the camera, the destination is automatically switched to *Phone*.

miniSD card memory full.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back-up of data and update of information is not allowed because the storage space in the miniSD memory card is not enough. Delete unnecessary data. ◀P345, P346

Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

New pattern definitions for scanning function available. Please update.

Auto-update of the pattern definition was unsuccessful. Update the pattern definition manually. ◀P484

No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

No data in ordinary phonebook.

The entered phone number is not saved in the phonebook. Add the number to the phonebook.

No miniSD card found.

Data cannot be saved or operated because a miniSD memory card is not inserted to FOMA terminal. Insert the miniSD memory card before operating. ◀P342

No miniSD card, or no data in folder located under PRIVATE/DOCOMO/MMFILE/D_MUSIC.

The miniSD memory card is not inserted or there is no top folder for Music Player in the miniSD memory card or no data in the top folder. Insert the miniSD memory card or save the music data in the top folder. ◀P342, P467

No Requested File. (492)

The specified file could not be found during download of a still image above 10,000 bytes.

No requested software.

The i- ppli specified by the site, mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

No response. (408)

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode or Internet web site within the specified time. Retry later.

No space to attach signature.

- When i-mode Mail with a message and a signature includes more than 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters, the signature cannot be attached. Send by reducing the number of characters of the message or without attaching a signature.
- The signature cannot be attached when *English* is set for *Font type* in SMS Setting. Change *Font type* to *Japanese*. ◀P285

No space to attach file.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

No UIM, requested software failed to start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing some characters.

Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The send data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode, etc. Make sure that the URL is correct.

Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode or Internet web site is incorrect. Please try again.

PIM lock.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in PIM Lock on.

Set the clock to obtain data.

Unable to receive because the date and time are not set. Please set the date and time correctly. ◀P45

Please wait.

- The line is congested. Please try again later.
- Use of i-mode is restricted. Retry later.

PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the size exceeded 2 Mbytes when downloading streaming type i-motion data.

Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception or replay has not been completed because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes when downloading normal type i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

Receiving messages. Retry later. Message receiving. Try again later.

i-channel cannot be activated during receiving mail or Message R/F. Retry after receiving.

Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ❖P285

Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

Remotely Controllable services denied

Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ❖P329

Requested software unavailable.

The i-ppli cannot be started because of an error in i-ppli. Starting specified i-ppli by i-ppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-ppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the certificate in FOMA terminal is premature or overdue. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in FOMA terminal is off. To establish a connection, change the setting. ❖P221

Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software.

This i-ppli cannot be deleted without deleting the data in IC card. Delete the i-ppli after activating the i-ppli and deleting the data in IC card.

Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

Infrared communications cannot end, leaving data saved in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ❖P355

Self Mode activated.

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.


Service is not registered.

- Unable to run because you are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

Size of this page is not supported.

- Reception has stopped because i-mode or internet web site size was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already received normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading Chara-den, Deco-mail template or a still image above 10,000 bytes.

Software ended due to security error.

i-ppli has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

Software already updated.

The i-ppli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

SSL session cannot be established.

SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL session was terminated.

Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication. The message is displayed when you select *No* in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

Terminal memory full.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items and restoration of data is unavailable because the number of saved items in FOMA terminal is full. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

This ToruCa can not be saved.

The ToruCa is not supported.

This certificate has expired. Do you connect?

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ❖P221

This certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect. ❖P221 This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the time and date correctly. ❖P45

This data cannot be saved. Download?

This i-motion file cannot be saved. Select *Yes* to download; select *No* not to download.

This data may not be replayed.

Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. They may not be played in some cases.

This site is not certified. Do you connect?

The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect.

This software contains an error.

Unable to download because the i-ppli data contains an error.

This software contains an error. Unable to download.

Unable to download because the i-ppli data contains an error.

This software is currently unavailable for use.

Using the i-ppli is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

This software is not supported by this phone.

The i-ppli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

This UIM cannot be recognized.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ◀P36

Time out

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Too much data was entered.

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode or Internet web site. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

ToruCa limit reached. Unable to receive. Delete a ToruCa.

ToruCa cannot be downloaded because the number and the memory for saving ToruCa is full. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

ToruCa limit reached. Unable to download. Delete a ToruCa.

ToruCa cannot be saved because the storage space for ToruCa is not enough. Delete unnecessary ToruCa.

Transmission failed.

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

Transmission failed. (52)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM or move to FOMA terminal. ◀P288, P288

UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ◀P36

Unable to call.

A voice/video-phone call or PushTalk call cannot be made during voice/video-phone calls, PushTalk call or 64K data communication.

Unable to delete some applications on IC card.

Delete others?

Among the i-ppli to delete selected items or all items, Mobile Wallet compatible i-ppli which cannot be deleted exists because the data within IC card cannot be deleted. Select **Yes** to delete other i-ppli than that.

Unable to display data.

Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

Unable to display image.

Unable to display because original file for the image to be attached cannot be found or the image contains error. Check the image.

Unable to display message.

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den containing illegal data cannot be displayed.

Unable to display version info.

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ◀P484

Unable to receive ToruCa.

The data of ToruCa is invalid.

Unable to download data.

Failed to download ToruCa (details). Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, downloading may be unavailable due to the error in ToruCa data, etc.

Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)

Reception is disabled because i-mode or Internet web site size exceeds the maximum size.

Unable to enter any more.

The number of characters exceeds the limit. Reduce the number of characters.

Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

Unable to play.

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

Unable to play.

The music data cannot be played.

Unable to record.

The movie memo cannot be recorded because the communication of image/sound is disconnected.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause. Please try again later.

Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because the data to be saved as a mail template contained an error.

Unable to shoot serially.

You cannot shoot continuously because memory and the number of items to be saved in **Image** is full. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

Unable to use data type.

Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes.

Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Unsupported content.

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with FOMA terminal.

Unsupported miniSD card format.

The miniSD memory card format is unavailable on FOMA terminal.

URL address changed. (301)

i-mode or Internet web site forwards URL automatically or URL is changed.

URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode a little while later.

You have no certificate. Do you connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ➡P220

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. If you have a PC (Window 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition), you can use the specified data link software and FOMA USB cable (optional) to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i- ppli (except some data) are not forwarded to a new FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.

After-Sales Service

When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ➡P468

If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

Replacement parts

- FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.
- For details, see "List of service stations" attached.

Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.
 - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
 - If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
 - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.

The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The on/off function settings, the information of total calls duration or stored data may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other

handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.

- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your phone becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office designated by DoCoMo as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the phone.

Phonebook data, downloaded data or IC card data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that.


Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new phone. Regarding this FOMA terminal, images and incoming melodies downloaded via i-mode official sites can be transferred when repairing the mobile phone (some contents cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions).

Updating Software

Software Update

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software. When software update is required, the information will be posted in “お知らせ & ヘルプ (Notice & Help)” on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following 2 methods:
 - Immediate update:
 - Update on the spot as desired.
 - Advanced update:
 - Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - While using other functions
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When  is indicated
 - During PIM Lock
 - The power is off
 - In Self Mode on
 - While talking
 - During Remote Lock
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC
- At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

If software has been already updated, when checking software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is. Software update is available even if the host selection setting is other than i-mode.

Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.

If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.


If *Movie ringtone* has been set as a ring tone, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.


Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.

Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.

For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Certificate Setting. Configured as valid by default.

☛P220

Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().

It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.

- If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.

If Receive Option Setting is set to *ON* and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.

Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail.

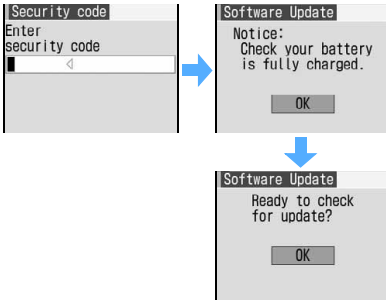
Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook/PushTalk phonebook entries registered in FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends to back up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)

When software update has failed, the message *Rewrite failed* appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

Starting Software Update

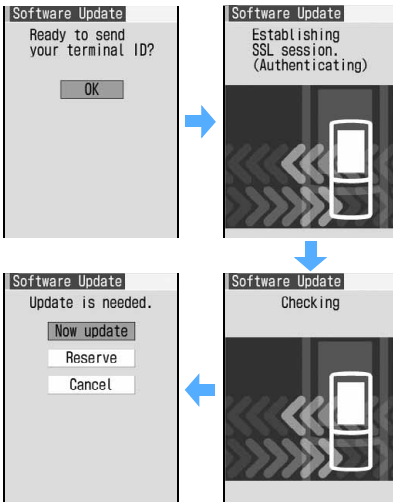



2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check notice and



- The entered terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) is displayed as “*”.
- The terminal security code by default is set to “0000”.


3 ▶ Confirm whether software update is required



- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When updating is not necessary:



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press  to use FOMA terminal as it is.

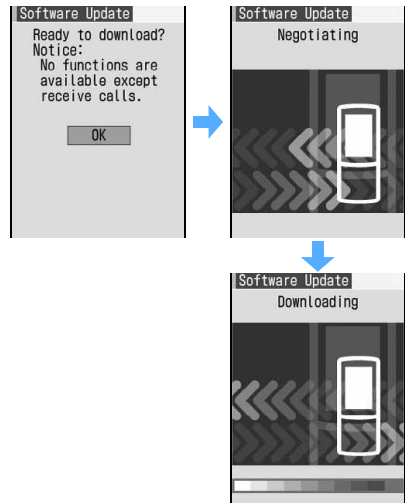
Updating software immediately



- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure

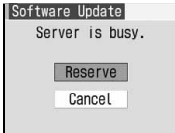
2 Select *Now update* ▶

Downloading is started and the call indicator flashes.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing .
- Press  to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

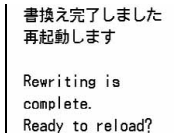
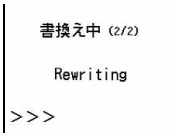
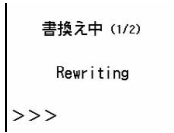
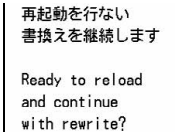
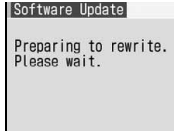
When the server is busy:



- Select *Reserve* and reserve a date and time for update.

3 after completion of downloading

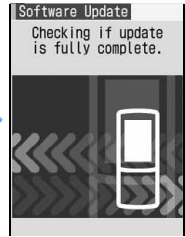
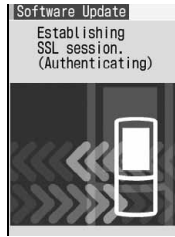
During rewriting, the call indicator flashes.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



5 Press

Update is completed and the stand-by display appears.

Updating software at pre-specified time

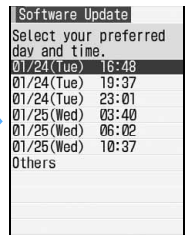
Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure

2 Select *Reserve*

Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.

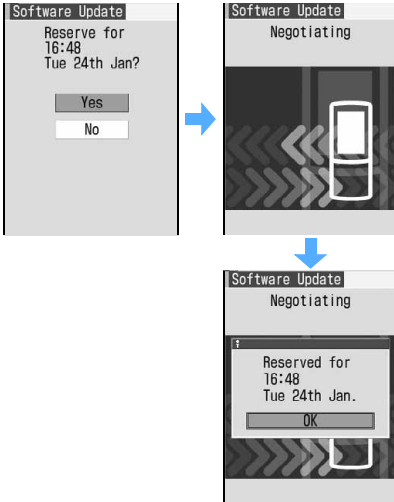


- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time

Selecting from the options displayed:

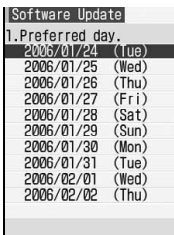
Select preferred day and time ▶ Select *Yes*



- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with

Selecting from other than options displayed:

① Select *Others*

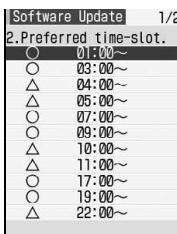


② Select preferred day and time-slot

Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:

○ : available

△ : barely available



③ Select preferred day and time-slot

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with .
- Press to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Select preferred day and time ▶ Select *Yes*

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

4 Press

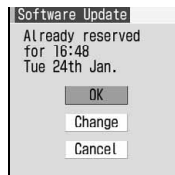
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

- is shown on the stand-by display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation



2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Check the contents



- To stop checking:
Select *OK*

Changing reservation:

① Select *Change*

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Updating software at pre-specified time".
 - ▶ P481
- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.


Canceling reservation:

① Select *Cancel* ▶ Select *Yes*

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

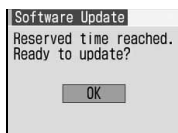
The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.


- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update:  ▶ Select *Yes*

INFORMATION

Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.

If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

If any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received mail, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting scan function

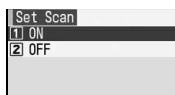
Scanning Setting


If this setting is set to *ON*, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

Default *ON*

1     

2  ▶ Select *Yes*



- When the virus scan function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of 5 warning levels. ●P485
- To cancel scan function:  ▶ Select *Yes*

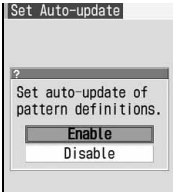
Updating pattern definition automatically

Auto-update Setting

Updating is performed automatically to maintain the latest pattern definition.

1 **8** **3** **7** **2**

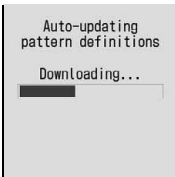
2 Select **Enable** ▶ Select **Yes** twice



- To cancel: Select **Disable** ▶ Select **Yes**

3 Press

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the above screen appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically. In case of succeeding updating, is displayed on the stand-by display. Select an icon and select **OK** after confirming a message.
- In case of failing updating, appears on the stand-by display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting **OK**.
- To stop updating pattern definition: ▶ Select **Yes**

Updating pattern definition Immediately

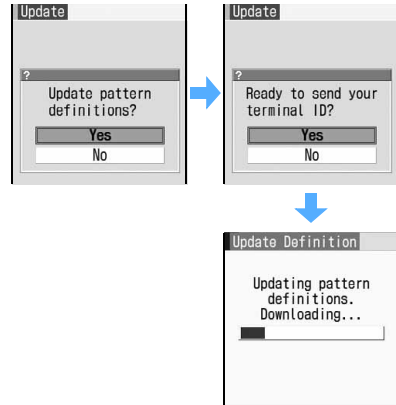
Update Definition

Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to **Disable** or Auto-update fails.

1 **8** **3** **7** **1**

2 Select **Yes** twice

The pattern definition is updated.



3 Press

- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

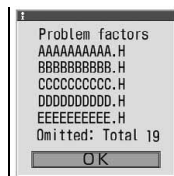
INFORMATION

Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a video-phone call, incoming PushTalk or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.

If the date/time set for an alarm or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating pattern definition and the alarm sounds, but updating is continued. Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements



① Select *Detail* while a warning message is being displayed

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
<p>Warning Level 0</p> <p>Problem detected. Operation may not run properly.</p> <p>OK Detail</p>	<p>OK : Continues processing of the started application.</p> <p>Detail: Lists names of the detected problem elements.</p>
<p>Warning Level 1</p> <p>Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation?</p> <p>Yes No Detail</p>	<p>Yes : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles.</p> <p>No : Continues processing of the started application.</p> <p>Detail: Lists names of the detected problem elements.</p>
<p>Warning Level 2</p> <p>Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation.</p> <p>OK Detail</p>	<p>OK : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles.</p> <p>Detail: Lists names of the detected problem elements.</p>
<p>Warning Level 3</p> <p>Problem detected. Operation may not run properly. Delete data?</p> <p>Yes No Detail</p>	<p>Yes : Deletes data that may cause troubles.</p> <p>No : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles.</p> <p>Detail: Lists names of the detected problem elements.</p>
<p>Warning Level 4</p> <p>Problem detected. Deleting data.</p> <p>OK Detail</p>	<p>OK : Deletes data that may cause troubles.</p> <p>Detail: Lists names of the detected problem elements.</p>

INFORMATION

In case some problem is detected through scan in the i- ppli set as the i- ppli stand-by display and activating i- ppli is stopped, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version



SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D902i meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.352 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.html

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/>
(Japanese only)

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d902i/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual

INDEX.....	488
Quick Reference Manual	492

A

Add Address 234
 Added Service 401
 Adjust volume 66
 After-Sales Service 477
 Alarm Auto Power ON 371
 Alarm Clock 369
 Album 348
 Alert Lighting Setting 145
 All Lock 154
 Anonymous Caller 163
 Answer Machine 73
 Greeting Response Time 75
 Greeting Setting 75
 Play/delete messages 76
 Quick Record Message 74
 Any Key Answer 63
 Arrival Act Setting 400
 Arrival Call Act 399
 AT command 427
 Attachment
 Attaching 241
 Auto-play 275
 Changing/removing 244
 Delete Attachment 258
 Display/download ToruCa 257
 Display/Save Image 254
 Play/Save i-motion 255
 Play/Save Melody 256
 Receive setting (Incoming Msg. Attach.) 275
 Attach/remove battery pack 39
 Auto Answer 387
 Auto Assist Setting 58
 Auto power ON/OFF 369
 Auto-display 217
 Automatic time correction 46
 AV Phone To (Phone to)

B

Bar Code Reader 189
 Battery Icon 144
 Battery Level 43
 Battery pack 39
 Bookmark 205
 Deleting 206
 Display sites by shortcut 206
 Displaying 205
 i-mode Shortcut 206
 Moving/copying 207
 Register from mail 269
 Register from site 205
 Rename folder 205
 Rename title 205
 Sort 207

C

Cache 201
 Calculator 384
 Calendar (Scheduler)
 Call Cost
 Call Cost Limit 383
 Checking 383
 Remove Call Cost Icon 384
 Reset Call Cost 383
 Call Duration
 Checking 382
 Continuous call time 40
 Call Forwarding Service 395
 Call indicator 26
 Call Waiting Service 394
 Caller ID Notification 46

Set for each call 56
 Caller ID Request Service 398
 Caller ID Setting 121
 Camera 168
 Auto focus 173
 Auto timer 183
 Brightness 186
 Color density 186
 Compact light 173
 Compose mail 174
 Continuous shoot 176
 File 171
 Flicker adjustment 187
 Four-frame shooting 176
 Frame 184
 Image size 185
 Lens cover 169
 Macro 183
 Movie Camera 178
 Number of saved still images 171
 One-shot Message 188
 Quality 186
 Recording Setting 180
 Recording time of video 171
 Restore default setting 188
 Scene mode/effect 185
 Shooting screen 170
 Size restrictions 187
 Still Camera 172
 Still Image Setting 180
 Switch in-camera/out-camera 173
 White balance 186
 Zoom 182
 Certificate Download 221
 Certificate Host 223
 Certificate operation 220
 Certificate Setting 220
 Change i-mode Password 203
 Character Encode 204
 Characters entry 436
 Change input modes 437
 Character assignments (Slot Input Method) 451
 Character assignments (5-touch Input Method) 451
 Copying (Copy Character) 442
 Cutting 442
 Deleting 438
 Enter face marks 439
 Enter fixed phrases 439
 Enter pictograms 440
 Enter symbols 440
 Full-screen entry 436
 In-line entry 436
 Input Method Setting 444
 Input prediction function 439
 Kana/Kanji Conversion 437
 KUTEN Code Input 442
 Line feed 438
 Pasting 442
 Quote data 440
 Save Phrase 441
 Save Word 442
 Slot Input Method 443
 5-touch Input Method 437
 Chara-den 334
 Action list 335
 Deleting 351
 Displaying 334
 Downloading 211
 Moving 348
 Record Chara-den 335

Set as video-phone substitute
 image 334
 Settings 337
 Sort 351
 Still Image Setting/Video Setting 337
 Use folder 348
 Video-phone call 83
 View/Edit Detail Info 349
 Charge Alert 130
 Charging 40
 Charging time 40
 Chat Mail
 Broadcast address 281
 Chat Member Setting 278
 Composing/sending 278
 Deleting 281
 Edit chat members 281
 Incoming Chat Mail Setting 282
 Quitting 282
 Receive Chat Mail 280
 Sending 279
 Set personal information 281
 Check i-mode Message 251
 Message Retrieval Setting 272
 Check Messages (by Voice Mail) 393
 Check phone number 47
 Clock Display Format 147
 Close Setting 63
 Color Scheme 142
 Column Search 116
 Communication configuration file 407
 Compact light 27
 Confirm Settings 388
 Connection Timeout Setting 214
 Contact Image 140
 Copying 442
 Custom Menu 378
 Custom Stand-by 137
 Customize Silent Mode 131
 Cutting 442

D

Data communication 404
 Communication configuration file 406
 Connecting 406
 Dialup network 418
 FOMA PC configuration software 406
 Glossary 405
 Setup work 405
 Data link software 466
 Data Transfer Setting 356
 Date and Time Setting 45
 Date To 385
 Deco-mail
 Composing 235
 Template 244
 Delete All Data 389
 Dialing conditions 56
 Display 26
 Guide row 29
 Reading 28
 Task bar 29
 Display Address 263
 Display Light Setting 141
 i- ppli 295
 Display Priority 277
 Display sites by i-mode Shortcut 206

DoCoMo for General Inquiries	399
Driving mode	71
Dual Network Service	398

E

Earphone/microphone jack	27
Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch	
Connecting	27
How to use	386
Earpiece	26
Easy Selector Plus	26
Edit by Slide	368
Edu	297
Electronic money	297
English display	45
English Guidance	399
Enter characters (Characters entry)	
Error Message	471
External connection terminal	27
External Device (for video-phone)	92

F

Face marks	
Entering	439
List	452
FeliCa	312
FirstPass	221
Fixed phrases	
Entering	439
List	452
Registering	441
Flash	197
Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch)	
Focus Mode	35
FOMA card (UIM)	
FOMA PC configuration software	408
Font Size	146
Font Size (for mail)	276
Forward Mail	253
Fwd-Party-Busy Setting	397

G

Group Search	114
Group Setting	112

H

Headset Button Control	387
Headset Switch	387
Hide Voice Mail Icon	394
Host	
Certificate Host	223
ISP Connection Communication	214

I

IC card function	312
IC Card Lock	318
i-channel	308
Channel List	309
Ticker Setting	309
Image	
Adjusting	326
Change brightness and tone	
	324
Change size	323
Clipping	323
Compose mail	320
Created animation	321
Cutting	326
Deleting	351
Displaying	320
Displaying (from mail)	254
Editing	322

Effects	324
Frames	324
Moving/copying	348
Paste Text	326
Reversing/rotating	324
Save from mail	254
Save from site (Save Image)	
Set to stand-by display	321
Settings	327
Shooting	172
Size limitation	326
Sort	351
Stamps	325
View/Edit Detail Info	349
Image & Effect Setting	215
i-melody	210
iMenu	194
Immediate Update	480
i-mode	194
i-mode Arrival Act: PT	103
i-mode FeliCa	312
i-mode Mail (Mail)	
i-mode password	150
Change i-mode Password	203
i-mode Setting	214
i-mode Shortcut	206
i-motion	224
Setting	226
i-motion (in Data Box)	327
Deleting	351
Sort	351
Use album	348
i-motion Mail	231
Playing/saving	255
Inbox	259
In-camera	26
In-car Handsfree	60
Incoming Call Setting	67
Incoming Msg. Alert	218
Incoming Msg. Attach	275
Incoming Msg. Image	140
Incoming Msg. Setting	277
Incoming PushTalk Setting	67
Incoming Videophone Setting	67
Infrared communication	351
INBOX	355
Receive Ir Data	353
Remote control function	355
Send Ir Data	352
Infrared Communication Mode	355
Input Method Setting	444
Input prediction function	439
International call	57
Internet Connection	204
i-shot	230
ISP Connection Communication	
	214
i- ppli	290
Auto Start	300
Auto Start Info Setting	300
Check number of items	304
Create/delete folders	303
Deleting	303
Detail Info	294
Download	291
i- ppli To	301
Light Setting	295
Moving	304
pre-installed i- ppli	295
Protecting	303
Quitting	293
Security Error History	294
Settings	294
Software in Folder	304
Software Info Display	293
Software Information	304
Software Sort	304
Start Failure History	301
Starting	293

Trace display	294
Upgrade	302
Use Bar Code Reader	305
Use Camera	305
Use infrared communication	
	305
Use ToruCa	305
Vibrate Setting	295
i- ppli DX	290
i- ppli Stand-by Display	
Abnormal Exit History	302
Operation	302
Setting	136

K

Kana/Kanji Conversion	437
Key Lock	160
Key Lock Setting	161
Keylock switch	27
Keypad Dial Lock	158
Keypad Sound	130
KUTEN code Input	
Entering	442
List	457

L

Light setting (Display Light Setting)	
Low Battery Alert	44

M

Mail	228
Add Address	234
Attachment	241
Auto Receive	249
Auto-send mail	247
Change read/unread status	265
Check i-mode Message	251
Check number of items	262
Compose from phonebook	113
Compose from schedule	377
Compose Message	232
Copy mail	263
Copy message text	268
Create/delete folders	262
Deco-mail	235
Delete Attachment	258
Delete Mail	266
Display Priority	277
Display Type	276
Display/Save Image	254
Editing	248
Folder list screen	259
Font Size	276
Forward Mail	253
Inbox/Outbox	259
Insert signature	233
List screen	260
List Setting	275
Move Mail	263
Msgs. in Folder	262
Phone Call	268
Play/Save Melody	256
Protect Mail	265
Quick Mail	248
Quick Reply Setting	274
Quick Reply Template	274
Receiving	249
Register data in phonebook	269
Register URL in bookmark	269
Reply to Mail	252
Save Mail	247
Search	264
Search (from phonebook)	114
Search (from schedule)	376
Sort	264
View screen	260
Mail address	228
Display Address	263
Mail Group	
Enter address	233

Setting.....	273
Mail List Setting	275
Mail Reply Format	274
Mail Setting (in FOMA terminal).....	269
Mail Setting (in i-mode Center).....	229
Mail templates	244
Mail To (from mail).....	267
Mail To (from site).....	212
Mail/Call Image Setting.....	139
Make calls (Phone).....	
Melo-deco	240
Melody	337
Compose mail.....	338
Deleting.....	351
List.....	127
Moving.....	348
Playing.....	337
Save from mail.....	256
Save from site.....	210
Set as ring tone.....	338
Settings.....	338
Sort.....	351
Use album.....	348
View/Edit Detail Info.....	349
Member list.....	377
Menu.....	30
Change design.....	144
List.....	446
Setting.....	143
Submenu.....	34
Message i- ppli.....	291
Message R/F.....	216
Auto-display.....	217
Check i-mode Message.....	251
Delete Message.....	220
Display by Type.....	220
Display Priority.....	277
Displaying (Message R/Message F).....	218
Incoming Msg. Alert.....	218
Protect Message.....	219
Receive Message R/F.....	216
Reload images.....	219
Microphone.....	26
miniSD memory card.....	339
Backup.....	344
Check free space.....	343
Copying/moving.....	343
Display data.....	345
Folder structure.....	340
Format.....	347
Inserting/removing.....	342
Scan Card.....	347
Sync Data Info.....	347
miniSD memory card adapter.....	340
miniSD memory card slot.....	27
Missed Call Notice.....	394
Missed call.....	65
Mobile Wallet.....	312
Mobile Wallet compatible i- ppli.....	291
Starting.....	313
Movie Camera (Camera).....	
Movie Memo.....	381
Multiaccess.....	366
Combination.....	461
Multi-address transmission.....	234
Multi Number.....	400
Multitask.....	367
Combination.....	463
Music Player.....	363
Player Setting.....	364
Mute Ring Time Setting.....	164
My Document.....	359
Deleting.....	351
Sort.....	351
Use folder.....	348
My Menu.....	202

My phone number.....	47
My Picture.....	320
Deleting.....	351
Sort.....	351
Use album.....	348

N

Name displays.....	107
Name Search.....	115
Names and functions of parts.....	26
Network security code.....	150
Network Service.....	392
Noise Reduction.....	59
Normal menu.....	30
Notepad.....	385
Notify Swichable Mode.....	91
Nuisance Call Blocking Service.....	397
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal.....	36
Number Search.....	116
NW Search Method.....	388

O

One-key Shortcut.....	300
One-shot Message.....	188
On-hold.....	
On-hold while talking.....	51
Response and Hold.....	69
On-hold Tone.....	70
Open Answer.....	63
Options and related devices.....	465
Outbox.....	259
Out-camera.....	27
Outgoing Call Image.....	139
Outgoing Msg. Image.....	140
Own Number.....	
Displaying.....	47
Registering.....	380

P

Packet communication.....	404
Dialup connection (APN) setup.....	416
Optimization.....	415
Settings.....	410
Pasting.....	442
Pause.....	52
PDF data.....	
Bookmark/mark.....	362
Capture Screen.....	363
Deleting.....	351
Displaying.....	359
Downloading.....	210
Moving/copying.....	348
Settings.....	363
Sort.....	351
View/Edit Detail Info.....	349
Personalized silent mode.....	131
Ph Book No. Search.....	116
Phone.....	
Make calls.....	50
Receive calls.....	60
Set dialing conditions.....	56
Switch to video-phone call.....	53
Phone To (from mail).....	267
Phone To (from site).....	212
Phonebook.....	106
Caller ID Setting.....	121
Change the order.....	119
Check No. of Items.....	124
Check phonebook details.....	117
Copy entered information.....	119
Copy phonebook entry.....	120
Delete Phonebook.....	121
Display in Japanese syllabary.....	114
Edit Phonebook.....	118
Group Setting.....	112

New Entry (to FOMA terminal).....	107
New Entry (to PushTalk).....	97
New Entry (to UIM).....	110
Quick Dial.....	124
Register from mail.....	269
Register from site (Add to Phonebook).....	213
Reject/Accept Call.....	162
Search.....	113
Secrecy Search.....	123
Secret Attribute.....	123
Secret Code Setting.....	122
Specify searching method.....	117
Video-phone Rate Setting.....	122
Pictogram words.....	
Entering.....	439
List.....	453
Pictograms.....	
Entering.....	440
List.....	454
PIM Lock.....	157
PIN1 Code ON/OFF.....	151
PIN1 code/PIN2 code.....	150
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code.....	152
Play Sound.....	467
Play Video.....	466
Power ON/OFF.....	44
Auto Power ON/OFF.....	369
Predict conversion.....	439
Prefix.....	58
Priority Comm Mode.....	68
Privacy Mode Setting.....	159
PT Caller ID Notification.....	101
Public mode (Driving mode).....	71
Public mode (power off).....	72
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key).....	153
PushTalk.....	94
Make calls.....	94
Make calls from group.....	100
Make calls from PushTalk phonebook.....	99
Receive calls.....	96
PushTalk Arrival Act.....	102
PushTalk Auto Answer.....	102
PushTalk button.....	27
PushTalk Close Setting.....	103
PushTalk phonebook.....	
Delete PushTalk Phonebook.....	100
New Entry.....	97
Register into groups.....	98
PushTalk Ring Time.....	102
PushTalkPlus.....	94

Q

Quality Alarm.....	130
Quick Dial.....	124
Quick Mail.....	248
Quick Record Message.....	74
Quick Reference Manual.....	492
Quick Start-up.....	388

R

Random Display Image.....	135
Ranking Search.....	115
Reason for no caller ID.....	61
Receive calls (Phone).....	
Receive Display.....	141
Receive Option.....	250
Setting.....	273
Received Calls.....	64
Delete Received Calls.....	66
Received mail (Mail).....	
Reconnect Alarm.....	59
Redial.....	55
Delete Redial.....	54
Register USSD.....	401
Reject non-Reg. Caller.....	165

Reject nuisance caller	397
Reject/Accept Call	162
Remote Control	400
Remote control function	355
Remote Lock	155
Repairs	399
Reply to Mail	252
Reset	388
Response and Hold	69
Retrieving Image	140
Ring tone	126
Ring Volume Setting	66

S

SAR	485
Save Phase	441
Save Word	442
Scheduler	371
Calendar View Mode	372
Check No. of Items	377
Checking	375
Compose mail	375
Copying/pasting	375
Day Off Setting	372
Deleting	376
Holiday Setting	372
Member list	377
Registration	372
Search mail	376
Secret Attribute	377
When the set time comes	374
Screen Memo	207
Deleting	209
Displaying	208
Protecting	208
Renaming	208
Saving	207
Secrecy Search	123
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook	123
Schedule	377
Secret Code Setting	122
Secret Mode	161
Security code	150
Security scan (Virus Scan Function)	
Select Language	45
Self Mode	156
Send DTMF	81
Sent mail (Mail)	
Service Dialing Number	399
Short Message (SMS)	
Shortcut operations	32
Show All Names	114
Shutter key	27
Signature	272
Silent Mode	131
Simple menu	31
Site	194
Connect to SSL page	199
Display URL of site	202
Display sites	198
Last Visited URL	200
Operating	200
Reloading	202
Scrolling	202
Slot Input Method	443
SMS	232
Check SMS	285
Compose from phonebook	113
Compose SMS	283
Deleting	266
Deleting (from UIM)	288
Delivered report	232
Display Priority	277
Folder list screen	259
Insert signature	283
List screen	260
Quick Mail	248

Receive SMS	284
Save SMS to UIM	286
Setting	285
Sort Criteria	269
View screen	260
Software Update	478
Immediate Update	480
Reserved Update	481
Sort Criteria	269
Sound Recorder	356
Sound Setting	126
Speaker	27
Speakerphone function	
Video-phone call	79
Voice call	51
SSL communication	196
Connecting	199
Stand-by display	44
Stand-by Display Setting	132
Clock Display Format	147
Stand-by time	40
Stand-by Voice Memo	381
Status Message	69
Still Camera (Camera)	
Still image (Image)	
Style Theme	148
Sub Address	59
Submenu	34
Symbols	
Entering	440
List	454

T

Talking Voice Memo	381
TASK key	27
Template	244
Downloading	246
Read Template	245
Save Template	246
Terminal security code	150
Change Security Code	151
Timed pause	53
Tone/Vibration Message Notification	
ToruCa	393
Check information	314
Create/delete folders	316
Deleting	317
Displaying	315
Moving/copying	316
Obtaining	314
Protecting	317
Searching	316
Setting	317
Sort	317
Transmit tone signals (DTMF)	81
Troubleshooting	468
Two-key Shortcut	300

U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	39
Inserting/removing	36
Operation restriction function	37
Register phonebook data	110
Security codes	37
Unblock PIN lock	153
Unsent mail (Mail)	
Unsent messages (folder)	259
URL	
Copying	212
Displaying	202
Entering	204
History	204
Last Visited URL	200
Register in phonebook	214
USB Mode Setting	406

V

Vibrator Setting	129
i- ppli	295
Video-phone	78
Brightness/color density	86
Camera Settings	86
Change images (Image Setting)	
	90
Chara-den	83
Compact light	88
Display settings	88
Flicker adjustment	86
Frame	85
Macro mode	87
Make calls	78
Quality of outgoing/incoming images	84
Rate Setting	122
Receive calls	82
Scene Mode/Effect	85
Send camera-off image	86
Send still image	86
Send tone signals	81
Settings	89
Settings during a call	88
Substitute image setting	90
Switch in-camera/out-camera	
	87
Switch outgoing images	84
Switch to voice call	81
Zoom	87
Videophone Dialing Image	139
Videophone Rate Setting	122
Video/i-motion	
Capture	330
Compose i-motion Mail	328
Custom Edit	331
Deleting	351
Edit by Size	331
Edit Ticker	332
Editing	330
Moving/copying	348
Play album	349
Playing	327
Recording	178
Replay restriction	329
Set bookmark	329
Set to stand-by display	329
Settings	333
Sort	351
View/Edit Detail Info	349
Virus Scan Function	483
Auto-update Setting	484
Scan Version	485
Scanning Setting	483
Update Definition	484
Voice call (Phone)	
Voice Mail Service	392
Voice Memo	381
Volume Setting	66

W

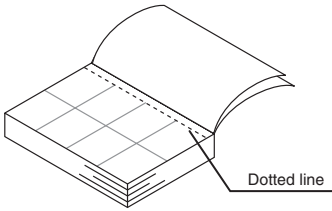
Warranty	477
Web To (from mail)	267
Web To (from site)	212
WORLD CALL	57
WORLD WING	39

Other

186/184 Call	56
3D Sound	127
5-touch Input Method	437
64K data communication	404
Setting	413

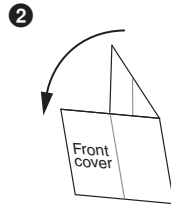
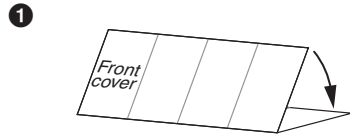
Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.



Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

- Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.
- (In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 151 (toll free)

☎ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

☎ Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 113 (toll free)

☎ Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

☎ Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- For further information, refer to the Nationwide Service Station List* included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

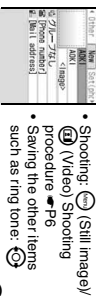
Registering entries in the phonebook

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

- 1 Enter a name **▶** **☎**
- 2 Set each item **▶** **☎**



- 3 Set each item **▶** **☎**



- Shooting: **☎** (Still image/Video) Shooting procedure **▶** P6
- Saving the other items such as ring tone: **☎**

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

- 1 Enter a name **▶** **☎**
- 2 Enter a name **▶** **☎**

- 3 Set each item **▶** **☎**

Registering from the redial data or received call history

- 1 **☎** or **☎**
- 2 Highlight the entry to register **▶** **☎** **☎** **☎**
- 3 **☎** (FOMA terminal phonebook) or **☎** (UIM phonebook)
- To add to the registered entry, select the party to add

- 4 Set each item **▶** **☎**
- 5 For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 6

- 5 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) **▶** **☎**
- 6 **☎** (Override or New entry)

Editing the phonebook entries

- 1 **☎**
- Switching the phonebook: **☎**
- 2 Highlight the entry to edit **▶** **☎** **☎**

- 3 Edit **▶** **☎**

- For the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5
- 4 Enter the phonebook No. (0 to 699) **▶** **☎**
- 5 Select **Override** or **New entry**

Searching the phonebook entries

- 1 **☎** **☎** **☎** **☎**
- Switching the phonebook: **☎**
- 2 **☎** **☎**
- For the UIM phonebook, **☎** to **☎**

Character entry

Entering/converting character (5-touch Input Method)

<Example> Entering "企業"

- 1 Enter characters in Hiragana/kana mode
"き" : **☎** **☎** 2 times **▶** **☎** (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by automatic cursor function.)
"業" : **☎** **☎** 2 times **▶** **☎** **☎**
"上" : **☎** **☎** 3 times **▶** **☎**

"う" : **☎** **☎** 3 times

- Available operation before setting the entered characters
- ☎ Changes characters to two-byte katakana

☎ Canceling entered characters

☎ Changes upper/lower case

☎ Return to a previous character immediately after character entry (example: ... 1 お え う ...)

☎ Adding voiced sound "r" and semi-voiced sound "s" (example: ぼ ぽ ぼ ...)

☎ Inserting characters: Move the cursor to position to insert **▶** Enter characters

☎ Displaying conversion option list: **☎** **☎**

☎ Returning to status before conversion: **☎**

Switching input mode

☎ several times during character inputs

Pressing **☎** and selecting input mode can also switch

Deleting characters

☎ Deleting characters at the cursor (for over a second):

☎ Deleting characters at the cursor position and all the characters at the right of the cursor

☎ Deleting character at the left of the cursor

☎ Deleting all entered characters

☎ Deleting symbols, pictograms and fixed phrases

☎ Entering symbols

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

☎ while entering **▶** Select a symbol **▶** **☎** can also input

Entering pictograms

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

☎ while entering **▶** Select a pictogram **▶** **☎**

Point the camera at the object and **☎** or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

☎ or **☎**

Cut here

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2 Talk with the other party
- 3 Placing call on hold: to cancel
 - Switching the speakerphone on/off:
 - Switching the image to send:
- 4 when you finish the call

Receiving video-phone calls

- 1 A call is received
 - Holding answer:
 - or
- 2 Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making video-phone calls"
- 3 when you finish the call

8

Menu list

Press and input the number of each item.
 <Example> Displaying a sent mail



1 Mail	2 Compose message	3 Chat mail	4 Unsent messages
5 Outbox	6 Check new message	7 SMS	8 Message retrieval
9 SMS	1 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS	3 Sent SMS
4 Read templates	5 Mail setting	6 Incoming chat mail	7 Signature
8 Reply setting	9 Reply format	1 Activate quick reply	2 Mail group

12

i-mode Mail

Number of characters sent/received

Item	One-byte characters	Two-byte characters
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

- 1 (for over a second)
- 2 Select address field Select input method Enter or select address

9

- 3 Select subject field Enter subject
- 4 Select message field Enter message
 - Composing Deco-mail: Select decoration method Enter characters
- 5 Saving mail:

File attachments

- 1 Select attachment field on the mail composition screen
- 2 Select attachment type
 - Shooting and attaching still image: Select *Image* Select *Use still camera*
 - Recording and attaching video: Select *i-motion* Select *Use movie camera*
 - Recording and attaching sound: *Record sound*
- 3 Select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card* Select a folder
- 4 Removing attachment: Highlight attachment field Select Yes

10

- ### Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail
- <Example> Editing unsent mail
- 1 Editing sent mail: Select a folder
 - 2 Select a mail
 - 3 Editing sent mail: Select a mail
 - 4 Edit

Receiving i-mode Mail

- 1 A mail is received
 The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes and the reception result screen is displayed
- 2 or Select a folder Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail



11

3 i-ppii	1 Software list	2 Phonebook & Logs	3 Scheduler	4 Alarm clock
1 i-ppii settings	2 Auto start	3 Phonebook (UMI) new entry	4 PushTalk/phonebook	5 Received calls
3 Software info display	4 Light settings	7 Ans. machine/Voice memo	1 Answer machine	2 Recorded messages
5 Vibrate settings	6 i-ppii shortcuts	3 Record voice memo	4 Voice memos	8 Own number
4 Phonebook	2 Phonobook new entry	1 Image	2 i-motion	3 Melody
3 Phonebook (UMI) new entry	4 Radial	5 My Documents	4 Chara-den	6 Tools
1 Bar code reader	2 Data exchange	1 Send all Ir data	2 Receive Ir data	3 Data exchange settings
4 USB mode settings				

14

6 Tools	3 TonCa	2 TonCa settings
1 TonCa list	5 miniSD card	6 Camera
7 Movie camera	8 Sound recorder	9 Music Player
7 Stationery	1 Scheduler	2 Notepad
3 Alarm clock	4 Calculator	
8 Settings	1 Sounds/Vibrate	2 Set sound
4 Ring volume	1 Ring alert	2 Msg. alert
3 TonCa receive alert	4 Keypad sound	5 Silent mode
6 Set mute ring time	7 Vibrator	8 Charge alert
2 Display	1 Stand-by	2 Select img/i-ppi
3 Set clock	4 Customize display	5 Set i-Channel tlicker
6 Cancel settings		

15

Cut here

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

Activating/deactivating the service

- (Start) or (Stop)
- Select **Yes**

Answering another call

- during a call
- Switching the other parties:
- Making another call**
- during a call Enter phone number
- Switching the other parties:

Ending a call

- if another call is ended
- Call resumption with on-hold person:

24

Bottom of the display

- : During PushTalk calls
- : During accessing the phonebook page on the network
- : Mail storage status in i-mode Center
- : Unread mail status
- : Unread Message R status
- : Unread Message F status
- : i- ppli stand-by display on
- : i- ppli DX stand-by display on
- : i- ppli/i- ppli DX execution
- : During SSL page display
- : Auto-send mail exists
- : Auto-send mail failed exists
- : Secret Mode is set
- : i- ppli Auto Start failed

28

Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

Activating the service

- (Start) or (Stop)
- Select **Yes**
- Select **Yes**
- Enter the forwarding destination phone number
 - Entering the destination from the phonebook:
 - Select **Yes**
- Select **Yes**
- Enter ringing time

Deactivating the service

- (Start) or (Stop)
- Select **Yes**

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

Activating/deactivating the service

- (Start) or (Stop)

25

Bottom of the display

- (Start) or (Stop)
- : Missed calls
- : Recorded messages
- : Voice mail messages
- : Unread mail
- : Unread ToruCa
- : Silent Mode is set
- : Customize Silent Mode is set
- : Ring alert volume is silent
- : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- : Ring alert volume to silent and vibrator for incoming voice call are set at the same time
- : Public mode (Driving mode) is set

29

Services available from FOMA terminal

Activating the service

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged) 8 am to 10 pm	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

26

General Inquiries

- : Answer Machine is set
- : Recorded messages full
- : Key Lock is set
- : Connected with USB cable
- : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode
- : miniSD memory card inserted
- : Reading IUM
- : IC Card Lock is set
- : PIM Lock is set
- : Keypad Dial Lock is set
- : Alarm Clock is set
- : Schedule alarm is set
- : Alarm and schedule alarm are set at the same time
- : Software Update reserved
- : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is failed
- : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition is succeeded

30

Reading display

Top of the display

1-13



- : Battery level
- : Received signal level
- : Self Mode is set
- : During data transfer
- : i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)
- : i-mode communication (during packet communication)
- : During infrared communication
- : Speakerphone function used
- : During communication by hands-free compatible equipment
- : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit

27

General Inquiries

(In English)

<DoCoMo Information Center>

- 0120-005-250 (toll free)**
- : Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
- 0120-800-000 (toll free)**
- : (In Japanese only)

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

- No prefix 151 (toll free)**
- : Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.
- 0120-800-000 (toll free)**
- : Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

- No prefix 113 (toll free)**
- : Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.
- 0120-800-000 (toll free)**
- : Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

- : Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- : For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

28

29

30

31

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn the power off.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use the phone in Public mode (Driving mode).

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.


Consider privacy


 **Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

Functions convenient for public etiquette


You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, or choose some other modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off except for the shutter sound while shooting (Silent Mode).  P131

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode).  P131

Public mode (Driving mode/power off)

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected.  P71, P72


Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing.  P129

Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message.  P73

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

 P392, P395

You can apply to useful services such as “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Blocking Service” and “WORLD CALL” from an i-mode phone or a PC.

From i-mode

iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込(Charges & Application) ▶ ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)

Packet communication charges free

From PC

**My DoCoMo (<https://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))**

- You will need your “network ID” to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your “My DoCoMo ID/password” to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your “network ID” or “My DoCoMo ID/password”, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries
<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

• Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

• For further information, refer to the “Nationwide Service Station List” included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 0 1 6 7 A *

'05.10 (1.1st edition)